



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

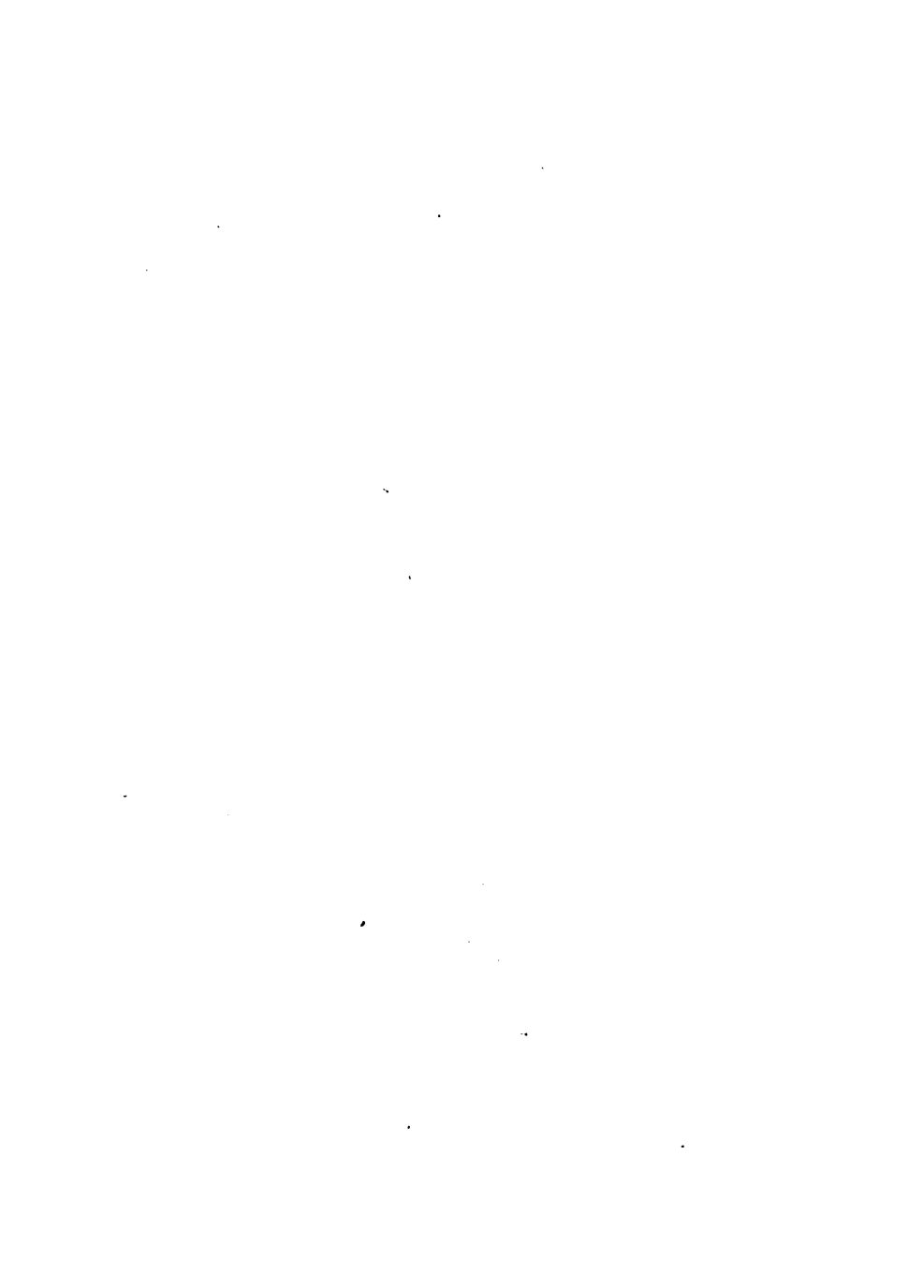


271.27.7  
B

HARVARD COLLEGE  
LIBRARY



FROM THE LIBRARY OF  
**George Lyman Kittredge**  
GURNEY PROFESSOR  
OF ENGLISH LITERATURE  
1917-1941









THE GREAT GRIMSBY SEAL

'SIGILLVM COMUNITATIS GRIMEBYR'

WITH THE FIGURES OF 'GRYEN,' 'HABLOC,' AND 'GOLDEBVRGH'

# THE LAY OF HAVELOK THE DANE

RE-EDITED FROM MS. LAUD MISC. 108 IN THE  
BODLEIAN LIBRARY, OXFORD

BY THE

REV. WALTER W. SKEAT

LITT.D., LL.D., D.C.L., PH.D.

FELLOW OF THE BRITISH ACADEMY

ELRINGTON AND BOSWORTH PROFESSOR OF ANGLO-SAXON IN THE  
UNIVERSITY OF CAMBRIDGE

'Now hold your mouth, *par charitee*,  
Bothe knight and lady free,  
And herkneth to my spelle.'

CHAUCER, C. T. B 2081

OXFORD  
AT THE CLARENDON PRESS

1902



27271.27.7

✓ B



HENRY FROWDE, M.A.  
PUBLISHER TO THE UNIVERSITY OF OXFORD  
LONDON, EDINBURGH  
NEW YORK

# CONTENTS

\* \* THE *frontispiece* represents the seal of Great Grimsby,  
described in the Introduction, § 32.

The facsimile represents a part of fol. 207 (back) of the MS.

Compare ll. 632-53, at p. 24.

	PAGE
INTRODUCTION. § 1. The former edition of 1828. § 2. Later editions. § 3. Description of the MS. § 4. The spelling. § 5. Initial sounds in Anglo-French. § 6. Final sounds. § 7. Restoration of the Middle English spelling. § 8. Further corrections. § 9. Other pecu- liarities. § 10. Nouns; Pronouns; Verbs. § 11. Date of composition. § 12. The dialect of the Poem. § 13. The same (continued). § 14. The Metre. § 15. Speech- waves. § 16. The sixteen Types of Verse. § 17. Elision and Contraction. § 18. The Caesural Pause. § 19. Examples of scansion. § 20. Exceptional lines. § 21. The Story. § 22. The same (continued). § 23. Geffrei Gaimar. § 24. Le Lai d'Havelok. § 25. Peter de Lang- toft. § 26. Robert Manning. § 27. Interpolation in the Lambeth MS. § 28. Relationships between the various versions. § 29. Anlaf Curan. § 30. Later versions. § 31. Local traditions. § 32. The Great Grimsby Seal. § 33. Literature of the subject. § 34. The French versions. § 35. Discussions and criticisms . . . . .	v-lx
THE LAY OF HAVELOK . . . . .	1
NOTES TO 'HAVELOK' . . . . .	103
POSTSCRIPT . . . . .	126
GLOSSARIAL INDEX . . . . .	127
INDEX OF NAMES . . . . .	169



## INTRODUCTION

§ 1. THE English version of the Lay of Havelok, now here reprinted, is one of the few poems that have happily been recovered, after having long been given up as lost. Tyrwhitt, in his Essay on the Language and Versification of Chaucer, has a footnote (no. 51) deploring the loss of the Rime concerning Gryme the Fisher, the founder of Grymesby, Hanelok [*read* Havelok] the Dane, and his wife Goldborough; and Ritson, in his Dissertation on Romance and Minstrelsy (vol. i. p. lxxxviii of his Metrical Romanceſs), makes remarks to the same effect. It was at length, however, discovered by accident in a manuscript belonging to the Bodleian Library, which had been described in the old Catalogue merely as *Vitae Sanctorum*, a large portion of it being occupied by metrical legends of the Saints. In 1828, it was edited for the Roxburghe Club by Sir F. Madden, the title-page of the edition being as follows:—‘The Ancient English Romance of Havelok the Dane, accompanied by the French Text: with an introduction, notes, and a glossary, by Frederick Madden, Esq., F.A.S., F.R.S.L., Sub-Keeper of the MSS. in the British Museum. Printed for the Roxburghe Club, London. W. Nicol, Shakspeare Press, mcccxxviii.’ This volume contains a very complete Introduction, pp. i–lvi; the English version of Havelok, pp. 1–104; the French text of the Romance of Havelok, from a MS. in the Heralds’ College, pp. 105–46; the French Romance of Havelok, as abridged

and altered by Geffrei Gaimar, pp. 147-80; notes to the English text, pp. 181-207; notes to the French text, pp. 208-10; and a glossary, &c., pp. 211-63. But there are sometimes bound up with it two pamphlets, viz. 'Remarks on the Glossary to Havelok,' by S. W. Singer, and an 'Examination of the Remarks,' &c., by the Editor of Havelok. In explanation of this, it may suffice to say that the former contains some criticisms by Mr. Singer, of which a few are correct, but others are ludicrously false; whilst the latter is a vindication of the general correctness of the explanations given, and contains, incidentally, some useful contributions to etymology.

§ 2. Of this first edition in 1828 but few copies were printed; and, as the work was seldom to be met with, a new edition was printed by myself for the Early English Text Society in 1868, with the permission and kind assistance of the first editor. A later edition was issued from the stereotyped plates, with a few corrections and additions, in 1889. An edition by F. Holthausen, with a carefully revised text, was published in London, New York, and Heidelberg in 1901, which I have consulted with much advantage.

§ 3. **Description of the MS.** The unique text of the poem is extant in MS. Laud Misc. 108, in the Bodleian Library, Oxford. It begins on fol. 204, and is written in double columns, each of which contains forty-five lines. It ends on the back of fol. 219, and is immediately followed, in the same handwriting, by the Geste of King Horn, re-edited by Mr. Joseph Hall in 1901; who gives a description of the MS. in his Preface, pp. viii-x. It appears to be a composite MS., made up of three distinct parts. Part I is chiefly occupied by Lives of the Saints, for which see Horstmann's *Early South-English Legendary*, printed by the Early English Text Society in 1887; and the date of the handwriting in

this section is supposed by Mr. Hall to be about A.D. 1290. Part II, containing Havelok and King Horn, is perhaps a little later, and may be dated about A.D. 1310. Part III is of a much later date, and contains the Lives of St. Cecilia and St. Blaise (also printed by Horstmann); St. Alexius, printed by Dr. Furnivall in 1878 (E. E. T. S., no. 69); and a poem called Somer Soneday, printed in *Reliquiae Antiquae*, vol. ii. pp. 7-9; followed by a few other scraps. In the note to l. 2933, at p. 125, I mention Zupitza's conjecture that an older MS., from which the existing copy was made, contained only twenty lines to the page; and Mr. Hall has noted that twenty lines in the copy of King Horn are found to be out of place, which furnishes strong evidence as to the correctness of the suggestion. If so, the MS. must have been made with small pages for the purpose of portability, and would have been well suited for use by a wandering minstrel or reciter of poems. I have an Anglo-French MS., containing some Statutes, in my own possession, having about twenty lines to the page, and the pages measure only 4 inches by  $3\frac{1}{2}$ . The two romances, extending to less than 4,600 lines, would not occupy 120 leaves; and if bound similarly to that just mentioned, would only be  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inch in thickness. A folio is lost between fol. 211 and 212, but no notice of this has been taken in numbering the folios; see p. 53, where fol. 212 should have been fol. 213. A facsimile of fol. 207, back, is given as Plate VII in my 'Twelve Facsimiles of Old English MSS.,' published in 1892; and a portion of the same Plate is reproduced as an accompaniment to the present volume, containing ll. 632-53, which gives a fair idea of the character of the handwriting.

The words are often very close together. The initial letter of every line is written a little way apart from the rest, as in William of Palerne, and other MSS. Both the long and

short *s* (*f* and *s*) are used. The long *s* is in general well distinguished from *f*, and on this account I have taken the liberty of printing both *esses* alike, as my experience in printing the Romans of Partenay proved that the difficulty of avoiding misprints is greater than the gain of representing the difference between them. The chief point of interest is that, as in *early* MSS., the long *s* is sometimes found at the *end* of a word, as in 'uf' in l. 22, and 'if' in l. 23. The following are all the examples of the use of this letter in the first twenty-six lines; fo (4), wictefte (9), stede (10), crist, fchilde (16), Krift, fo (17), fo (19), fchal (21), Krift, uf (22), if (23), stalworpi (24), stalworpefte (25), stede (26). Some difficulty is caused by the use of the Saxon letter *w* (*p*). This letter, the thorn-letter (*þ*), and *y*, are all three made very nearly alike. In general, the *y* is dotted, but the dot is occasionally omitted. Wherever the letter really appears to be a *w*, I have denoted it by printing the *w* as an italic letter. The following are, I believe, the *only* examples of it. *Wit*-drow = withdrew, l. 502; *wit*, 997 (footnote); *we*, 1058; *was*, 1129 (cf. 'him was ful wa,' *Sir Tristram*, l. 2769); *berwen*, 1426 (written 'berwen' in l. 697); *wat* = said (?), 1674 (footnote); *we*, miswritten for *wo* = who, 1914. This evidence is interesting as showing that this letter was then fast going out of use, and I think that we may safely date the final disappearance of this letter from MSS. near the year 1300. As regards the *th*, we may remark that at the end of a word both *þ* and *th* are used, as in 'norþ and suth,' l. 434; sometimes *th* occurs in the middle of a word, as 'sithen,' l. 1238, which is commonly written 'sipen,' as in l. 399. The words *pe*, *pat*, *per*, &c. are hardly ever written otherwise. But the reader may find many instances in which *th* final represents the A. S. *ht* (M. E. *ght*), as in *brouth*, 57, *nouth*, 58, *liith*, 534, *þouth*, 1190, &c.; cf. § 4. The letter *t* is sometimes shortened

so as nearly to resemble *c*, and *c* is sometimes lengthened into *l*. The letters *n* and *u* are occasionally alike, but the difference between them is commonly well marked. The *i* has a long stroke over it when written next to *m* or *n*. On the whole, the writing is sufficiently distinct. The poem is marked out into paragraphs by the use of large letters; and I have introduced a slight space at the end of each paragraph, to show this more clearly. In printing the MS., I denote the expansions of marks of contraction in the usual way, by the use of italics; thus in l. 9, 'man' is printed instead of the form 'mā,' as in the MS.; and the curl denoting *er* is represented by printing 'euere' in l. 17. In l. 6, the dot below the second *e* in 'yedē' signifies that the *e* is mute.

§ 4. **The Spelling.** The spelling appears, at first sight, to be of a very irregular and lawless character, but is easily understood in the light of my discovery (in 1897) that many of our earlier MSS., especially those of the thirteenth century, abound with spellings which can only be understood rightly when we observe that the scribe was of Norman birth, and more accustomed to the spelling of Anglo-French than to that of the native language of the country, which he had acquired with some difficulty, and could not always correctly pronounce. This curious phenomenon, due to the resolute attempt on the part of the Norman to acquire English, is fully explained in my paper on 'The Proverbs of Alfred,' read on May 7, 1897, and printed in the Transactions of the Philological Society for that year (p. 399). I may note, by the way, that one permanent result of the reflex action of Norman upon the pronunciation of English is familiar to most people, viz. the total loss of the guttural *gh* in the pronunciation of standard English, though it is still conscientiously written down. Such a rhyme as that of *light* with *bite* was, for Chaucer, impossible; but the loss of the guttural was so



complete about the year 1400, that it came quite naturally to Lydgate, and to all his successors who employed the standard Midland dialect. With this clue, the spelling of our MS. becomes perfectly intelligible, and the English consonants are so easily recovered, that I have not hesitated to restore the usual Middle-English spelling in a large number of instances, relegating the Anglo-French spellings of the MS. to the bottom of the page, where *every* variation between the printed text and the MS. is carefully recorded, according to the notice at the bottom of p. 1. All words printed between square brackets are either supplied from conjecture to complete the sense (like the 'and' in l. 32), or denote corrections (like 'wihtest' in l. 25), where the MS. reading 'stalworpeste' ruins the metre, and was caught from the line above. The correspondences between the A. F. and M. E. spellings are easily tabulated, and are fully accounted for in the following sections. The comparison is one of no small moment, as it easily explains the numerous eccentricities of MSS. in the twelfth and thirteenth centuries. The matter has not yet received much attention; yet the deviation from the true M. E. spellings in such a text as the 'Old English Homilies' can be counted by the hundred. We have to remember that, when an Anglo-French scribe of the thirteenth century (or earlier) wrote out an English poem, he frequently spelt the words according to *his own* pronunciation, in a way which a native would hardly have employed. The chief peculiarities due to such habits have been enumerated, in the form of canons, in an Appendix to my Notes on English Etymology, at p. 471. I here repeat them for convenience, and show their application to Havelok afterwards.

§ 5. **Initial Sounds in Anglo-French.** To an Anglo-French scribe the difficult initial sounds were *h*, *sh*, *th*, *wh*, *wu* (or *wo*), and *y* (consonant). Of these, *sh*, *th*, *wh*, *wu*, *y*

can hardly be said to exist in Old French, and *h* was very slight. I take them in order.

1. The French initial *h* was weak, the English *h* was strong. Hence arose a confusion, as in *Avelok* for *Havelok*, but *Henglish* for *English*; see § 7. Before 1400 the Norman had learnt his lesson, though he had unsettled the pronunciation of the lower classes.

2. Old French had no initial *sh*. The modern F. *ch* was pronounced by the Norman as *ch* in *church*. In trying to say *sh*, he merely said *s*. Hence he wrote *sal* for *shal*, even in Southern texts. The medial *sh* often appears as *ss*; in the Ayenbite of Inwyty, we even find *ssss*; as in *esssse*, an ash. But before 1400, the Norman had acquired the sound.

3. Old French had no initial *th*. Hence the A. F. scribes adopted the A. S. *thorn*-letter (*þ*) as a new symbol. Some used the *eth*, or crossed *d* (*ð*); but this soon went out of use. The substitution of *t* for *th*, as in *Torp* (Domesday Book) for *Thorþ*, is rare, except after *d* or *t* at the end of the preceding word, as in *at te* for *at the*. But the Normans soon acquired the initial sound; the final *th* took them longer to learn. See canons 14, 15 at p. xiii.

4. The English *wh*, as in modern Northern English, became a mere *w*, as in *wat* for *what* (*hwat*). Many Normans never acquired the sound, so that it has disappeared from Southern English.

5. The Norman could sound *w* before *a*, as in *warrant* (warrant); or before *e*, as in *werre* (war). But not before *u* (sometimes written *o*). Hence we find *ulf*, *wlf*, for *wulf*, wolf. The *w* in this *wlf* was pronounced like the Welsh (vocalic) *w*; and this (I believe) accounts for the Welsh symbol. They unsettled the pronunciation of the lower orders, who still say *'ood* for *wood*.

6. There was no common use of initial *y* (consonant) in

Norman. Hence the spelling *ou* for *you* in many MSS. We all say *itch*, not *yitch*, though the M. E. form was *yicchen*.

7. **Medial Sounds.** The chief one to be noted is *r*. In spite of the strong trill of the *r* in modern French, the evidence suggests that the true English *r* was even stronger, as in Northern English. Burns has *farls* as a dissyllable in his Holy Fair, stanza 7. And this may explain the fact that, in Havelok, the scribe twice writes *arum*, *harum*, instead of *arm* and *harm*; whilst, conversely, the modern Southern English *r* has been so remarkably weakened, that it is commonly almost unheard. Compare the French final *r* in *parler*, *aimer*.

§ 6. **Final Sounds.** They had difficulties with final *gh*, *ght*, *ld*, *lk*, *nd*, *ng*, *nk*, *t*, and *th*.

8. The *gh* was a Norman symbol, to express the sound of A. S. medial or final *h*, sounded like the *ch* in German. But they failed to acquire the sound, so that in modern English we either drop it altogether (usually after a long vowel or in an unstressed syllable, as in *dough*, *borough*), or substitute an *f* after a short vowel (as in *rough*, *tough*); or we turn it into *k* (as in *loch*, or in *elk* for O. Mercian *elh*). We even find *wealcstoda* for *wealhstoda* in late A. S. of the latter half of the eleventh century (Napier's Glosses, 2422); and Anglo-Norman habits reinforced this tendency.

9. *Ght* was a most difficult sound for them; for which *st* was sometimes substituted (but only at an early date). Hence it is sometimes written as *wt* or *t*.

10. Final *ld* was at first difficult; we find *fel* for *feld* (field).

11. Final *lk* was also at first difficult; we find *il* in some MSS., and *ilek* in others, in place of *ilk*.

12. Final *nd* became either *nt* or *n*. *And* is frequently spelt as *ant* or *an*.

13. Final *ng*, *nk* were new to them. We find a curious confusion; as *kinc* for *king*, *dring* for *drink*, *bringhe* for M. E. *bringe*. They unsettled the true pronunciation, so that *shillin* for *shilling* is still common.

14. It is surprising to find that the English *t* sounded differently. I suppose that it sounded to them stronger, with a sort of emphatic splutter when final. Hence we find *neth* for *net*. This final *th* is perfectly distinct from *p* or the modern E. *th*, and signified a *t* followed by an explosive sound; like *nett'*. We even find *thoun* for *town* in some MSS.; like the Irish *Theddy* for *Teddy*.

15. Final *th*, especially in an unaccented syllable, is turned into *d* or *t*. But the sound was fully acquired before 1400.

16. The A. F. *z* represented *ts* (as in German); and even *c* (before *e*) denoted the same sound. Hence *assets* is from A. F. *assez*; and early M. E. *milce* represents *millse*.

§ 7. **Restoration of the Middle English spelling.** Most of the above peculiarities occur in Havelok, and they are easily put right. Thus the word *neth* in l. 752 obviously means 'net,' and would be spelt *net* in any M. E. work written out by an *English* scribe. Hence I print *net* in the text, but *neth* in the footnote and in the Glossary. The number of obvious corrections is large; and the A. F. spellings are curious and instructive. I now give numerous examples.

1. The initial *h* is dropped by the scribe in *haueden*, 163; *Hauelok*, 503; *heben*, 690; *his*, 735; *hosed*, 971; *Hauelok*, 1395; &c. See the footnotes.

A needless *h*, not pronounced, is prefixed to *er*, 15; *euere*, 17, 88; *olde*, 30; *ayse*, 59; *elde*, 128; *ete*, 146; *ore*, 153; *old*, 192; &c. It is very common.

2. *S* is miswritten for *sh* in *fleysh*, 216; *neysh*, 217; *Shal*, 628; *shame*, 1941; *Shule*, 2419; *shulde*, 2835. The usual M. E. *crusshe* actually appears as *cruhsse*, 1992.

3. The case of *th* is discussed under no. 14; p. xv.

4. *W* is miswritten for *hw* (= *wh*) in *Hwo*, 4, 76; *Hwil*, 6; *hwit*, 48; *hwat*, 117; *Hwom*, 197; *Hwan*, 220; *hweper*, 292; *Hwider*, 1139; &c. But the scribe often has *hw* also; writing *Hweper* in 294, in place of *weper* only two lines above; so that he knew the English spelling. Observe also *qu* for *hw*; as in *qual*, 753; *quanne*, 134, 204; *qui*, 1650; which I have left unaltered.

5. The A. F. *w*, considered as a vowel, really meant *uu*, as its name imports. This sound (A. S. *ū*) was written *u* only in early MSS.; the later ones have the regular French *ou*. Hence *Hw* in l. 93 really means *Hū*; whilst in l. 120 we have simply *W* as a spelling of the same word (canon 1). So also *wman*, 174, 281, represents mod. E. 'ooman, i.e. *woman*, and should be written *wuman* in English; *yw* in l. 453 represents *you*, as it rhymes with *nou*. *Wurihe* is written *wurpe*, 434; so also *wulf* becomes *wlf*, 573; *swungen*, *wunden* appear as *swngen*, *wnden*, 226, 546. In l. 464, the spelling *ps* means that *p* has been miswritten for *w* (A. S. *w*), and the latter represents the A. F. *w*, so that the word meant is the A. S. *ūs*, often written *ous*, but usually *us* with the short *u*; see l. 461, only three lines above. In l. 2992, we actually find *hwou* (= *hūū*), in which the symbol for *ū* appears twice over, and in different forms!

6. Canon 6 is not illustrated by Havelok.

7. The English *r* (in Havelok) was very strongly trilled, and sometimes counts for a syllable in the scansion; as in *bor(e)nbake*, 759, 831; *for(e)p*, 810, 821; *Cor(e)mwale*, 884, 2908; *nor(e)p*, 1255; *bor(e)d*, 1722; *car(e)l*, 1789; *er(e)l*, 2861; *p'er(e)ldom*, 2923; hence I have allowed the spellings *boren*, *koren*, to stand in ll. 1878, 1879; as well as *arum*, 1982, 2408; *harum*, 1983, 2409. So also *sembling*, 1018, was pronounced as *sembeling* (in three syllables).

8, 9. The guttural *h* (*gh*) is often wholly ignored; as in *brouw* for *brouht*, 58; *nowt* for *nowht*, 123; *dowter*, 258; *kmit*, 2427. For further remarks, see canon 14 (below).

10, 11, 12, 13. The scribe occasionally reduces final *ld* to *l*; as in *hel* for *held*, 109; *gol* for *gold*, 357; *shel* for *sheld*, 489; *bi-hel* for *bi-held*, 1645.

Also *lk* sometimes appears as *l*; as in *il* for *ilk*, 218, 1644; *Hwilgat* for *Hwilkgat*, 836. Hence the absurd word *kilping*, 1736, is merely a bungled form of the very common *ilk ping*, with the *k* in a position where it could more easily be uttered.

Even *lt* is reduced to *l* in *shal* for *shalt* before a *t*, 1161 (with *shalt* in full, before a vowel, in the very next line); cf. *shal* for *shalt* before *th*, 1273. And *rd* is reduced to *r* once; as in *forthwar*, 731.

Final *nd* appears as *nt* in *ant*, 36; but the *d* is usually lost, as in *an*, 29, 58, 131, 151, &c.; cf. *an'* for *and* in modern English. So also *lon* for *lond*, 340; *spen* for *spend(e)*, 1819.

In a similar way, final *st* once appears as *s*; see *bes* for *best*, 354.

The A. S. *ng* was really sounded as *ngg*, or as the *ng* in E. *finger*, and was only reduced (in M. E.) to the *ng* in *ring* when final. The scribe attempts to show this in a few instances only, writing *bringhe*, *pinghe* for *bringge*, *pingge* in ll. 65, 66. I substitute *ng* for uniformity. In l. 2561 he writes *rang* for *rank*, but we have *bank* in the previous line. Cf. *bringge*, 1381; *puttingge*, 1042.

14. The most characteristic spelling is the frequent use of *th* to express a strongly pronounced final *t*. This *th* is quite distinct from the modern E. *th*, and is therefore never written *þ*. That the F. *t* was weaker or less distinct than the English one is rendered probable by the evidence of modern French; cf. E. *met* with F. *met*.

Examples occur in *with* for *wit*, for *hwit*, white, 48; *puruth* for *purut*, for *purh-ut*, throughout, 52; *nouth* for *nout*, for *nouht*, 58; *nicth* for *nict*, for *niht*, 143; *woth* for *wot*, 213; *leth* for *let*, 252; *neth* for *net*, 808, 1026; *greth* for *gret*, 1025; *weddeth* for *weddet*, more correctly *wedded*, and *beddeth* for *beddet*, more correctly *bedded*, 1127, 1128.

But the most extraordinary variations occur when the scribe has to express *ht* (*gh̃t*). As he denotes the guttural not only by *h* (the most usual symbol), but also by *c* or *ch*, or sometimes suppresses it altogether—whilst at the same time he expresses final *t* either by *t* or *th*—we obtain as the possible varieties of *ht* the following, viz. *ct*, *cht*, *t*, *cth*, *chth*, and *th*, of which all but the fifth form actually occur. Hence we find *thoucte*, 197; *bitaucte*, 206; *awcte*, 207; *mowcte*, 210; *mouchte*, 147; *pouchte* (actually miswritten *pouhte*, by the common confusion of *c* with *t*), 1073; *browt*, 58; *nowt*, 123; *kniit*, 2427; *micth*, 35; *knictth*, 77, 80; *ricth*, 78; *micthe*, 88, 199; *brouth*, 84; *knith*, 87, 90; *mouthe*, 145; *nouth*, 149; &c. In every case I replace this Protean symbol by *ht*, as in A. S. and in the Harleian MS. of King Horn and many other M. E. poems.

15. The final *th* sometimes appears as *d* (for *ð*), as in *haued* for *haueth*, 1372 (cf. l. 1373); *spared* for *spareth*, 2813; but much more frequently as *t*, as in *Herknet*, 1; *wit* for *with*, 19, 52, 113, 144, &c.; this is very common. Conversely we find *quodh* for *quod* in l. 1800; unless indeed *quoth* is intended.

§ 8. **Further corrections.** Beside the above variations, which can all be easily accounted for by considering the difficulties which the scribe had in acquiring or expressing the true English pronunciation, there are many others which are less intelligible. The scribe, for example, frequently omits a final *l*; as in *a* for *al*, 610, 936; *we* for *wel*, 115, 287,

392, 772; *mike* for *mikel*, 960, 1744, 1761, 2336 (but *mikel* in l. 2352; and it rhymes with *swikel*, 1107, and with *fikel*, 1209, 2798). The common mistake of writing *o* for *e* occurs in *wol*, 185; *hoslon* (for *hoslen*), 362; *hwor* (for *hwer* = *hweper*), 1119; *hom*, 1298; *holed*, 2039; conversely, *e* is written for *o* in *eld*, 546; *þere*, 742. The slight curl which signifies *er* is constantly omitted before a final *e*; giving *þe* for *þ(er)e*, 142, 476, 639, &c., better spelt *þer*; so also *ope* for *op(er)e*, better *oper*, 861; *he* for *h(er)e*, better *her*, 1911; *we* for *w(er)e* or *wer*, 2055; unless, indeed, the scribe dropped a final *r* as he sometimes dropped a final *l*. This perhaps arose from carelessness, as we find *Rirth* for *Ricth* (= *Riht*), 37; *wrobberes* for *robberes*, 39 (because preceded by *Wreieres*); *serf* for *self*, 1667; *maude* for *made*, 436. In l. 31, his copy doubtless had *tayn* for *thayn*, the *t* being just like *c*; hence he misread it as *cayn*, and wrote it as *kayn*; which singular error is repeated at l. 1327. He also confuses the symbol *þ* (*th*) with the A. S. *ƿ* (*w*), writing *þi* for *ƿi*, better spelt *hwi*, 2578; and likewise the symbol for long *s* (*f*) with *f*, writing *þhes* (with *f*) for *þhef*, which again is an error for *þef*, 2289; and *slawen* (with *f*) for *flawen*, 2476. He frequently omits an essential final *e*, as in *rim*, *rym*, 2995, 2998; or a necessary final *n*, as in *drawe*, 2477; *þeþe*, 2629; *wreke*, 2849. We find a curious instance of *anticipation*, i.e. the too soon writing down of a coming letter, as in *memē* for *neme*, 2201; and again, of *reminiscence*, or the too late writing down of a letter that has already occurred, as in *Skabbeþ*, 2505; *togidede*, 2972. But the commonest error is the careless omission, sometimes of single letters, sometimes of several, as in *kaue* for *knaue*, 481; *bigge* for *brigge*, 881; *shres* for *sheres*, 857; *goldebou* for *Goldeborw*, 1103, &c.; and even *le* for *let þe*, 1827; *swe* for *swiþe*, 2140; *louen* for *loueden*, 2198; &c. Sometimes there is a letter too much, as in *anileþi* for *anleþi*.



2107; *talevaces* for *talevas*, 2323; *hungred* for *hungre*, 2454; *leuin* for *leun*, 2690. The omission of words (necessary both to the sense and the metre) is rather common; see several instances denoted by the use of square brackets. It will now be readily understood that many emendations have necessarily to be made; and many more have been proposed which I have not always noticed, as there is a tendency on the part of critics to increase their number to too liberal an extent. A few peculiarities were probably intentional; as, e.g., *latus* for *lat us*, 1772; *bihetet* for *bihete it*, 677; *hauedet* for *hauede it*, 714; *yeuenet* (miswritten *youdenet*) for *yeuen it*, 1643; *setes* for *set es*, 784; *donez* for *don es*, 970; see note to l. 1174. The text is, in fact, in several respects faulty; but when the spelling has been partially reformed, and all the more obvious errors corrected, it becomes fairly readable, and the merits of the narrative can be perceived and esteemed.

§ 9. **Other peculiarities.** A few other peculiarities deserve notice. The vowel *u* answers to the modern *ou* in the words *prud*, 302; *suth*, 434; *hus*, 740; *but*, 1040; *spusen*, 1123; cf. *hws* in l. 1141. Mr. Ellis shows, in his *Early English Pronunciation*, chap. v, that in pure specimens of the *thirteenth* century there is no *ou* in such words, and in the *fourteenth* century no simple *u*. This furnishes a ready explanation of the otherwise difficult *sure*, in l. 2005; it is merely the adverb of *sour*, 'sourly' being used in the sense of 'bitterly'; to *bye it bitterly*, or *bye it bittre*, is a common phrase in *Piers Plowman*. Other spellings worth notice occur in *ouerga*, 314; *stra*, 315; *plawe*, 950. There are several instances of words joined together, as *biddi*, 484; *hau*, 2002; *wiltu*, 905; *wenesth*, 1787; *shaltu*, 2186; *wille*, 528; *thenkeste*, 578; *shaltou*, 1800; *sawe*, 338; *latus*, 1772; where the personal pronouns *i*, *þu*, *we*, *us* are added to the verb. Hence, in l. 745, it is very likely that *calleth* is written

for *callet*, i. e. 'call it'; though the rhyme requires *it calle*. In like manner *goddot* is contracted from *God wot*; and *þerl* from *þe erl*; see the Glossary.

§ 10. **Nouns.** As regards the nouns employed, I may remark that the final *e* is almost always sounded in the oblique cases, and especially in the dative case; as in *nedð*, *sledð*, &c. (see ll. 86-105); *willð*, 85; *wisð*, 1713; *ðlissð*, 2187; *cricð*, 2450; cf. the adjectives *lessð*, 1830; *longð*, 2299; also the nominatives *rosð*, 2919; *newð*, 2974. *Frend* is a pl. form; cf. *hend*, 505, 2069, 2444. In the plural, the final *e* is fully pronounced in the adjectives *allð*, 2; *hardð*, 143; *bleikð*, 470; *starkð*, 1015; *fremdð*, 2277; and in many others; cf. the full form *böþen*, 2223. Not only does the phrase *none kines*, of no kind, occur in ll. 861, 1140, but we find the unusual phrase *neuere kines*, of never a kind, in l. 2691; though *neuere* is here almost certainly an error for *none*. Among the numerals, we find not only *þre* (1399), but *þrinne* (four times).

**Pronouns.** The first personal pronoun occurs in many forms in the nominative, as *i*, *y*, *hi*, *ich*, *ic*, *hic*, and even *ihc*; the oblique cases take the form *me*. For the second person, we have *þu*, *þou*, in the nominative, and also *tu*, when preceded by *þat*, as in l. 2903. We may notice also *hijs* for *his*, 47; *he* for *they* (repeatedly); *sho*, 112, *scho*, 126, *sche*, 1721, for *she*; and, in particular, the dual form *unker*, of you two, 1882; and the pl. *es*, 'them,' for which see the Glossary. This *es* or *is* is possibly short for *his*, actually used in the accusative plural, though some equate it to the G. *sie*; see examples in Mätzner, Glossary, ii. 449, col. 2, and the two articles on †*His* in the New Eng. Dict. p. 302, col. 1, of the letter *H*. The most noteworthy possessive pronouns are *minð*, pl. 1365; *þinð*, pl. 620; *his* or *hise*, pl. *hisð*, 34; *urð*, 606; *yours*, 2801; *hirð*, 84, 2918, with which cf. the dat. sing.

*hirè* of the personal pronoun, 300. *Þis* is plural, and means *these*, in l. 1145; but in l. 606 it is short for *þis is*; see the note. As in other old English works, *men* is frequently an impersonal pronoun, answering to the French *on*, and is followed by a singular verb; as in *men ringes*, 390; *men seyt and suereth*, 647; *men fetes*, 2341; *men nam*, 900; *men birþe*, 2101; *men dos*, 2434; cf. *folk sau*, 2410; but there are a few instances of its use with a plural verb, as *men haueden*, 901, *men shulen*, 747<sup>1</sup>. The former is the more usual construction.

**Verbs.** The infinitives of verbs rarely have *y-* prefixed; three examples are *y-here*, 11; *y-lere*, 12; *y-se*, 334. Nor is the same prefix common before past participles; yet we find *i-gret*, 163; *i-groten*, 285; and *i-maked*, 5, as well as *maked*, 23. Infinitives end commonly in *-en* or *-e*, as *riden*, 26, *y-lere*; also in *-n*, as *don*, 117, *leyn*, 718; and even in a vowel, as *flo*, 612; *slo*, 1364; *fle*, 1195. The present singular, 3rd person, of the indicative, ends both in *-es* or *-s*, and *-eth* or *-th*, the former being the more usual. Examples are *longes*, 396, 1443, *haldes*, 1382, *fedes*, 1693, *bes*, 1744, *comes*, 1767, *leues*, 1781, 2105, *glides*, 1851, *þarnes*, 1913, *haues*, 1952, *etes*, 2036, *beres*, 2323, *fetes*, 2341, *bedes*, 2392, *ledes*, 2573, *strenes*, 2983; *dos*, 1913; also *eteth*, 672, *haueth*, 804, *bikenneth*, 1269, *suereth*, *dereth*, 647, 648; *liþ*, 673, *doth*, 1876. The full form of the 2nd person is *-est*, as *louest* (before a vowel), 1663; but it is commonly cut down to *-es*, as *haues*, 688, *etes*, 907, *geles*, 908, *slepes*, 1283, *weldes*, 1359; cf. *dos*, 2390, *slos*, 2706, *mis-gos*, 2707; and this still more marked in rhyme, as *wenes*, 598. The same dropping of the *t* is observable in the past tense, as in *dedes*, 2393, *reftes*, 2394, *feddes* and *claddes*, 2907. The A.S. *meaht*, *miht*,

<sup>1</sup> But in l. 747, *shal men* would read better; and l. 901 should rather be: '*þan men him hauede holpen dune*'; where *hauede* = *haw'de*.

answers to *maght*, 1348; cf. ll. 689, 852, 1219. In the subjunctive mood the *-st* is wanting, as in Anglo-Saxon, and hence the forms *bute þou gonge*, 690, *þat þu fonge*, 856, &c.; cf. *bede*, 668. In the 3rd person, present tense, of the same mood, we have the *-e* fully pronounced, as in *shildè*, 16, *yeuè*, 22, *lesè*, 333, *leuè*, 334, *redè*, 687; and in l. 544, *wreken* should undoubtedly be *wrekè*, since the *-en* belongs to the plural, as in *moten*, 18. The plural of the indicative present commonly ends in *-en*, as, *we hauen*, 2798, *ye witen*, 2208, *þei taken*, 1833; or, very rarely, in *-eth*, as *ye bringeth*, 2425, *he (they) strangleth*, 2584. Sometimes the final *-n* is lost; note *wone*, 1325, *to-deyle*, 2099, *binde*, 2583 (in rhymes). The present tense has often a future signification, as in *eteth*, 672, *etes*, 907, *getes*, 908; and in *beth*, 1260, *bes*, 1744.

NOTE. The rhymes show that the third person singular in *-es* belongs to the original dialect of the poem (examine the examples). It was afterwards copied out in the south of England, by a scribe who frequently turned *-es* into *-eth*. The only examples at the end of a line are *suereth*, *dereth*, 647-8; instead of *sweres*, *deres*.

*Past tense.* Of the third person singular and plural of the past tense the following are selected examples. WEAK VERBS: *hauede*, 770, *sparede*, 898, *yemedè*, 975, *semedè*, 976, *sparkède*, 2144, *þankede*, 2189; pl. *loueden*, 955, *leykeden*, 954, *woundeden*, 2429, *stareden*, 1037, *yemedè*, 2276, *makeden*, 554, *sprauleden*, 475. Also *calde*, 2115, *gredde*, 2417, *herde*, 2410, *kepte*, 879, *fedde*, 786, *ledde*, 785, *spedde*, 756, *clapte*, 1814, *kiste*, 1279; *aute*, 743, *laute*, 744, *bitauhte*, 2212; pl. *herden*, 150, *brenden*, 594, *kisten*, 2162, *ledden*, 1246. Compare the past participles *osed*, 971, *mixed*, 2533, *parred*, 2439, *gadred*, 2577; *refst*, 1367, *wend*, 2138, *hyd*, 1059; *told*, 1036, *sold*, 1638, *wrouth*=*wrouht*, 1352. There are also at least three past participles in *-et*, as *spuset*, 1266, *slenget*, 1923, *greteth*,

2615; to which add *weddeth, beddeth*, 1127; but this *-et* or *-eth* is an A.F. form of *-ed*. In l. 2057, *knawed* seems to represent the modern 'knowned'; see the note.

**Strong Verbs:** third person singular, past tense, *bar*, 815, *bad*, 1415, *yaf* or *gaf*, 218, 315, *spak*, 2389, *kam*, 766 (spelt *cham*, 1873), *nam*, 900, *kneu*, 2468, *hew*, 2729, *lep*, 1777, *let* (spelt *leth*), 2651, *slep*, 1280, *wex*, 281; *drou*, 705, *for*, 2943, *low*, 903, *slow*, 1807, *hof*, 2750, *stod*, 986, *tok*, 751, *wok*, 2093; pl. *beden*, 2774, *youen* or *gouen*, 164, *comen*, 1017 (spelt *keme*, 1208), *nomen*, 2790 (spelt *neme*, 1207), *knewen*, 2149, *lophen*, 1896, *slepen*, 2128; *drowen*, 1837, *foren*, 2380, *lowen*, 1056, *slowen*, 2414, &c. By way of further examples, I may instance the singular forms *bigan*, 1357, *barw*, 2022, *karf*, 471, *swank*, 788, *warp*, 1061, *shon*, 2144, *clef*, 2643, *sau*, 2410, *grop*, 1965, *drof*, 725, *shof*, 892, *fauht* (= *fauht*), 1990; pl. *bigunnen*, 1011, *sowen*, 1055, *gripen*, 1790, *driue* for *driuen*, 1966; also *bunden*, 2436, *scuten*, 2431 (spelt *schoten*, 1864, *shoten*, 1838), *leyen*, 2132, &c. Compare the past participles *boren*, 1878, *youen* or *yeuen*, 1643, *cumen*, 1436, *nomen*, 2265 (spelt *numen*, 2581), *laten*, 1925, *waxen*, 302, *drawen*, 1925, *slawen*, 2000. The two last become *draue*, *slawe* in ll. 1802, 1803.

We should also observe the past tenses *spen* (i. e. *spend'*), 1819; *stirt'*, 812, *citte*, 942, *bere* (subj.), 974, *kipte*, 1050, *flow*, 2502; and the past participles *demd* for *demed*, 2488, *giue* for *giuen*, 2488, *henge*, 1429, *keft*, 2005, *plat*, 2755.

**Imperative Mood.** Examples of the imperative mood singular, 2nd person, are *et*, *sit*, 925, *late*, 1376, *bringge*, 1381; in the plural, the usual ending is *-es*, as in *lipēs*, 2204, *comes*, 1798, *folwes*, 1885, *lokes*, 2292, *bes*, 2246, to which set belong *slos*, 2596, *dos*, 2592; but there are instances of the ending *-eth* also, as in *cometh*, 1885, *yeueþ*, 911, to which add *doth*, 2037, *goth*, 1780; *herknet* (for *herkneth*), 1. Indeed,

both forms occur in one line; as in *Cometh swiþe, and folwes me* (1885).

Of reflexive verbs, we meet with *me dremede*, 1284, *me haueth met*, 1285, *me þinkes*, 2169, *him hungrede*, 654, *him semede*, 1652, *him stondes*, 2983, *him rewede*, 503. The present participles end most commonly in *-inde*, as *fastinde*, 865, *grotinde* (? *gretinde*), 1390, *lauhwinde*, 946, *plattinde*, 2282, *slarinde*, 508; but we also find *gangande*, 2283, *driuende*, 2702. Compare the noun *tiþande*, 2279, which is a Norse form, *tiðindi* (pl.) being the Icelandic for 'tidings.' The suffix *-ing* occurs as a noun-ending *only*, never (that I remember) in the present participle. Examples of it are *greting*, 166, *dreþing*, i. e. slaughter, 2684, *buttinge*, *skirming*, *wrastling*, *putting*, *harping*, *þiping*, *reding*; see ll. 2322-7; also *coruning*, 2948, *ioying*, 2949. Amongst the auxiliary verbs, may be noted the use of *cone*, 622, as the subjunctive form of *canst*; *we mone*, 840, answering to prov. E. *mun*, i. e. *must*. We should particularly observe the use of the comparatively rare verbs *birþ*, it behoves, pt. t. *birde*, it behoved, and *þurte*, he need; for which see the Glossary.

The prefix *to-* is employed in two senses, as explained in the Glossary, s. v. *To-*. In *to-brised*, *to-deyle*, &c., it is equivalent to the German *zer-* and Latin *dis-*; of its other and rarer use, wherein it answers to the German *zu-* and Moeso-Gothic *du-*, there is but *one* instance, viz. in the word *to-yede*, 765, which signifies 'went to'; cf. Germ. *zugehen*, to go to, *zugang* (A. S. *tāgang*), access, approach. There are several instances of the peculiar syntax whereby the infinitive mood active partakes of a passive signification, as in *he made him kesten in feteres*, he caused him to be cast into fetters; l. 81. It may be considered as a phrase in which we should *now* supply the word *men*, and we may interpret it by 'he caused [men] to cast him into fetters and to fasten him securely' ;

for in ll. 1784, 1785, the phrase is repeated in a less ambiguous form. See also l. 86. So also, in ll. 2611, 2612, we must consider *keste, late, sette*, to be in the infinitive mood. This construction is at once understood by comparing it with the German *er liess ihn binden*, he caused him to be bound. In l. 2352, appears the most unusual form *ilker*, written for *ilk here*, i. e. each of them. The word *þrie*, 730, answers to the M. E. adverb *thrie*, thrice, but it must be an error, probably for *yele*; *liues*, 509, is an adverb ending in *-es*, originally a genitive case. *þus-gate* is, according to Dr. Morris, unknown to the Southern dialect; it occurs in ll. 785, 2419, 2586; cf. *hwilgat*, 836.

**Phonology.** The text is too corrupt, and the dialect too mixed, for satisfactory results; except as regards the consonants, which have been already considered. Thus 'both' occurs as *babe*, rhyming with *rabe*, 2594, 2936; as *beþe*, rhyming with *rede*, 360, 1680, which also rhymes with *bede*, 2084; and as *boþe*, rhyming with *wroþe*, 2973 (cf. 2977)<sup>1</sup>. Assonances are common; as in 21, 172, 693, 1303, 1397, &c.

I may add that Havelok contains as many as nine expressions, which seem to refer to *proverbs* current at the time of writing it. See ll. 307, 600, 648, 1338, 1352, 1693, 2036, 2461, 2983.

**§ 11. Date of Composition.** The present poem cannot easily be dated without considering the dialect (see § 12). But we must first of all look at the internal evidence.

Prof. Hales has pointed out (*Folia Litteraria*, p. 30) that the curious reference, in ll. 139, 265, to the extent of England as reaching 'from Roxburgh to Dover,' points to a date when Roxburgh had become a border fortress. But this was not the case till it was seized by Edward I in 1296. In

<sup>1</sup> Holthausen has attempted the correction of the vowel-sounds, but admits that some uncertainty remains. See pp. x and xii of his edition.

l. 1006, there is an allusion to a parliament summoned to meet at Lincoln; and a parliament actually met at that city early in 1301, at which the archbishop of York was present; cf. l. 1178, and see note to l. 1006. There may also be an allusion in the poem to a Friary of Black Monks, founded about 1280; see note to l. 2521. All these things point to a date as late as 1301.

On the other hand, the *Lay* cannot be later than 1303, for it is actually quoted at that date by Robert Manning of Brunne, in his poem entitled *Handlyng Synne*; see notes to ll. 679, 819. And Sir F. Madden has shown that it is expressly alluded to in 1310 by Meistre Rauf de Boun (MS. Harl. 902). This seems to limit the date very closely, to the year 1301 or 1302; and if we were to put the date at 'about 1300,' we should expect to be not far wrong. And such, accordingly, is the date usually assigned to it. ✓

At the same time, I much doubt if this date is at all admissible, except as applied to the particular version of the story which has come down to us; for reasons which will be given in § 12.

§ 12. *The dialect of the poem.* As the poem is full of local interest as regards the city of Lincoln, it is generally agreed that the dialect in which it was originally written was that of Lincolnshire. But to discuss this question is at first sight difficult, owing to the astonishing jumble of dialectal forms which our sole MS. presents. Holthausen's statement is that 'the north-eastern Midland dialect of the original has passed through the hands of at least one northern and one southern scribe, who have mixed it up with their respective idioms'; and he adds that 'the poet seems not to have used a uniform language, but to have inserted, especially in his rimes, the forms of neighbouring dialects.' On the other hand, Mr. Hall (Introd. to *King Horn*, p. xlv) thinks



that the scribe of the Havelok MS. was 'a mechanical copyist who made no consistent attempt to substitute his own dialect for that of the original'; and he adds that 'his own dialect . . . appears to be East Midland with much resemblance to that of Robert of Brunne.'

I have, however, already shown above that, if the latest scribe did not alter the dialect, he very largely altered the spelling under strong Anglo-French influences; unless, indeed, such alterations had *already* been made in the older copy which he had before him, a supposition which agrees with Mr. Hall's suggestion, and is rendered probable by the careless errors noted in § 8. It is likely that our copy is, at least, the fourth in descent from its original; see § 28.

§ 13. If we were to accept the date as being about 1300, and the dialect as that of Lincolnshire, it would follow that the grammar of the *Lay* and that of the *Handlyng Synne* must be practically identical. But we are confronted by the obvious fact that they are nothing of the kind, nor could ever have been so. Compare, for example, ll. 1-100 with the ll. 5575-5674 of *Handlyng Synne*, as given in *Specimens of English*, ed. Morris and Skeat, pp. 50-53. I find that in ll. 1-100 of the *Lay* (omitting examples of final *-en*) there are at least 32 instances in which the scansion of the line is incomplete unless we suppose a final *-e* to be sounded (as e. g. in l. 10, we must read *purt-ē*); and there are at least 66 lines with feminine rhymes, of which all but 10 involve a final *-e*. But in the 100 lines of *Handlyng Synne*, I can only find 18 cases (not at the end of a line) where the scansion requires a final *-e*; and hardly 40 lines with true feminine rhymes, 6 of which involve no final *-e*. In other words, the *Lay* has 88 examples in which the final *-e* constitutes a syllable where Manning has but 52<sup>1</sup>. If we compare

<sup>1</sup> In 100 lines of *The Owl and Nightingale* (in Morris, *Specimens of*

another 100 lines, we shall obtain similar results; and even if my calculations be somewhat inexact, the general conclusion is not much affected. The difference in grammatical usage is very clearly marked. I think it follows that, if the two poems were written in the same dialect, the *Lay* must have been *originally* written at a considerably earlier date; and that it acquired additions and alterations in the process of transmission from one reciter to another. Compare, for example, the following lines from Havelok and from Manning's *Handlyng Synne*, as regards the treatment of final *-e*:—

All-e gret-en swip-e sor-e; *Hav.* 236.

But son-e ded-e hir-e fet-e; 316.

Pin-e cherl-es, pin-e hin-e; 620.

Grim-es son-es alle þre; 1399.

But to þe por' boþ' mek' and kynde; *H. S.* 5692.

Þat þe por' man of hym had; 5730.

And þoght' gret wunder and seþen seyð; 5740.

Unto a cherch-e boþ' þey yede; 5777.

I think we can only conclude that the extant copy shows the poem in quite a late stage, with just a few interpolations in it to bring it up to date<sup>1</sup>. The first draft of the poem must surely have been composed earlier than 1300; but how much earlier I am unable to say. That the dialect was, in the first instance, that of Lincolnshire, is consistent with the fact that we can still detect the characteristic suffix *-es* of the pres. s. indicative as occurring in fifteen unambiguous rhymes (306, 396, 597, 1359, 1443, 1693, 1781, 1851, 1913, 2105, 2323, 2341, 2392, 2573, 2983); and the pl. suffix *-e* at the end of ll. 1325, 2099, and 2583. The prefix *y-* occurs

(English) I find about 150 examples of the final *e*. But this is a southern poem, and perhaps as early as 1250.

<sup>1</sup> Lines 138, 139, 264, 265, can be omitted without injury to the sense. And l. 1176 has to be emended, in order to make ll. 1177-1180 fit in.

before verbs but rarely, as in *Handlyng Synne* (*y-lore*, 5788). See § 10.

§ 14. **The Metre.** In an article on 'The Scansion of English Poetry,' printed in the Phil. Soc. Transactions for 1898, I proposed a natural method of scansion which is much more suitable (in my opinion) for the scansion of our native poetry than the usual one which applies the inappropriate Greek terms 'iamb' and 'trochee' to a Teutonic language. A description of this method is also given in my edition of Chaucer, vol. vi. p. lxxxiv; and I beg leave to repeat it here, as it enables us to see that the lines in *Havelok* are of sixteen distinct types, and saves a great deal of discussion. I have only to add that the system here given is by no means original, but was proposed and very fully illustrated in an anonymous tractate entitled 'Accent and Rhythm, explained by the law of Monopressures. Part I. Edinburgh, 1888.'

§ 15. **Speech-waves.** In English, accent or stress plays a very important part; and for this reason we may consider English speech as made up of a succession of utterances which form, as it were, speech-waves, in which each wave, due to a jet of breath, contains a strong, i. e. a stressed syllable; and this strong syllable may either stand alone (as in the word *lône*); or may be preceded or followed by a weak (or unstressed) syllable (as in the words *ascént*, *cádence*); or may even be both preceded and followed by a weak syllable during the emission of the same jet of breath (as in the word *exténsion*).

This amounts to saying that the words *light*, *alight*, *lighted*, and *alighted* can all be produced in a single speech-wave. But if a word has *two* stresses, it requires *two* impulses to utter it, and really contains *two* speech-waves. Such words are very common; as *cónque-ròr*, *amál-gamàte*, &c., in which

one stress is stronger than the other; and many English words require *three* speech-waves, as *insól-ublí-ty*; or even *four*, as *in-combústi-bíli-ty*. It often happens that the secondary stresses are *very* slight; but the ear should be trained to detect their existence. In order to denote the exact effect produced by the pronunciation of the words *light*, *alight*, *lighted*, and *alighted*, we may use the terms 'tone,' 'ascent,' 'cadence,' and 'extension' already mentioned; which may further, for brevity, be denoted by the initial letters *t, a, c, e*; or (in roman type) *t, a, c, e*.

§ 16. **The sixteen types of Verse.** As it is often desirable to employ other symbols which appeal to the eye more directly, I shall also use the small letter 'b' to denote an unstressed syllable, and the capital letter 'A' to denote a stressed one. Then, as each line contains four stressed syllables, the general scheme for its scansion may be roughly denoted by 'bAbAbAbA.' But it frequently happens that the initial weak syllable is lacking, giving a line which may be denoted by 'AbAbAbA.' Moreover, the final rhyme is often a double or feminine one, in which case we have lines that may be represented by 'bAbAbAbAb'; or by 'AbAbAbAb.'

It is usual to analyse the scansion no further, and to be satisfied with chopping up the lines into 'feet,' as in Latin prosody, which really deals with 'short' and 'long' syllables. But the method above indicated enables us to go much more closely into the structure of the verse, and to distinguish no less than eight varieties of each of the above types; or, if we neglect the subordinate and accidental change from a masculine rhyme to a feminine one, we can still detect eight varieties of each of the principal types above named, viz. bAbAbAbA and AbAbAbA, according to the various ways in which the syllables can be arranged in groups or

speech-waves. Hence the sixteen primary types can be expressed as follows:—

- |                 |                 |
|-----------------|-----------------|
| 1. bA bA bA bA. | 5. bAb A bA bA. |
| 2. bA bA bAb A. | 6. bAb A bAb A. |
| 3. bA bAb A bA. | 7. bAb Ab A bA. |
| 4. bA bAb Ab A. | 8. bAb Ab Ab A. |

These eight types may be still more briefly denoted, as explained above, by the following formulae:—

- |          |          |          |          |
|----------|----------|----------|----------|
| 1. aaaa. | 3. aeta. | 5. etaa. | 7. ecta. |
| 2. aaet. | 4. aect. | 6. etet. | 8. ecct. |

By the simple expedient of dropping the initial weak syllable, we obtain eight new types, as follows:—

- |                 |                 |
|-----------------|-----------------|
| 9. A bA bA bA.  | 13. Ab A bA bA. |
| 10. A bA bAb A. | 14. Ab A bAb A. |
| 11. A bAb A bA. | 15. Ab Ab A bA. |
| 12. A bAb Ab A. | 16. Ab Ab Ab A. |

The shorter formulae are:—

- |           |           |           |           |
|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| 9. taaa.  | 11. teta. | 13. ctaa. | 15. ccta. |
| 10. taet. | 12. tect. | 14. ctet. | 16. ccct. |

These schemes presuppose the lines to have single or 'masculine' rhymes, as in ll. 17, 18, which end with *do* and *to*. But, as a matter of fact, a large proportion of the lines are furnished with double or 'feminine' rhymes, as in ll. 3 and 4, which end with *tel-lè*, *duel-lè*; for the final *e* is invariably pronounced, at the end of a line, as a distinct syllable. But this does not really alter the *type* of the verse. Line 3 is to be read thus: Óf. a tál'. ich yóu. wil télle. This belongs to type 9, with the substitution of an 'extension' for the final 'ascent.' We may denote it by 9 *δ*; where the *δ* reminds us that the rhyme is double.

§ 17. **Elision and Contraction.** It must be remembered that, in Middle English verse, *elision* of a final vowel before *d* beginning with a vowel is extremely common.

Further, in the copy of Havelok here printed, it is tolerably certain that the scribe has frequently written final *-en* in the place of final *-e*, and this *-en* is therefore to be elided in the same way. Thus, in l. 12, the word *mowen* stands for *mowe*, which becomes *mow'* before the following *y*-. Or, if we wish to preserve the *n*, we may suppress the *e*, and call it *mow'n*. But it is dissyllabic in l. 11, where followed by a consonant.

A few other rules are observed, as in other M. E. writings; amongst which the following may be noted.

1. A final *-e* (or often *-en*) is elided not only before a vowel, but before any one of the words beginning with *h* in the following list, viz. *he*, *his*, *him*, *hire* (her), *here* (their), *hem*, *hath*, *hadde*, *haue*, *how*, *heer*. Thus in l. 18, *comen* (for *come*) is merely *com'*, before the word *him*.

2. The endings *-es*, *-ed*, and *-en* or *-e* (before a consonant) usually count as a distinct syllable. Thus we have *burw-es*, 55, *Eng-e-lond-es*, 63; but *wreieres* and *robberes* in l. 39 should be *wreiers* and *robbers*, because the accent does not fall upon the syllable that precedes *-es*; cf. *feter's*, 82. In l. 5 we find the full form *i-mak-ed*; but in ll. 23, 58, *maked* is probably miswritten for *mād*, as in l. 1953; cf. *mad'* (he made) in ll. 38, 39, 41.

3. Many words that have a medial *e* are familiarly contracted; thus *eueri* is *ev'ri*, 8; *eure* is *ev're*, 17, 88, and is often written *eure* on this account, as in 424; cf. *neure*, i. e. *nevre*, in 80, 108. *Havelok* is often *Hav'lok*, as in 5, 7; *oueral* is *ov'ral*, 38, 54; *hauede* is *hav'de* (A. S. *hæfde*), 90, 98; *pouere* is *pov're*, 58, written *poure*, 101; *louede* is *lov'de*, 30, and even *lov'd'*, 71. Such instances are numerous.

4. The final *-e*, properly a distinct syllable, has, as usual, a true grammatical or etymological significance. Thus *mal-e*, 48, represents O. F. *mal-e*, O. H. G. *mal-ha*; and *gom-e*, *trom-e*, 7, 8, represent A. S. *gum-a*, *trum-a*. *God-e*, 1, 28,

is the pl. of the adjective *good*; cf. *riht-wis-e*, 37. In 87, *þe best-e* represents the definite form of the adjective. The adverbial suffix *-e* appears in *hey-e*, 43, *þann-e*, 51; *bald-e-lik-e*, 53, *son-e*, 81. The infinitive of the verb sometimes ends in *-en*, as in *drink-en*, 15; but usually in *-e*, as in *tell-e*, 3, *duel-le*, 4, *fall-e*, 39, *bynd-e*, 41. Even when written with *-en*, it is better to substitute *-e*, as in *biginne*, i.e. *biginn'*, 21; *heng'*, 43; *lurk'*, *crep'*, 68. The pt. t. sing. of weak verbs ends in *-e*; as *þurt-e*, 10; *miht-e*, 42; &c. In l. 22, *yeu-e* (*yev-e*) is the subjunctive form, used as an imperative; cf. *bor-e*, pt. t. s. subj., 45. In these and other similar cases, the rules are much the same as those which explain the scansion of Chaucer, and need not be enlarged upon. In a few cases, the final *-e* seems to have been suppressed, as in *yed'* (before a consonant), 6; where 'ç' signifies a mute 'e.'

§ 18. **The Caesural Pause.** Most of the lines readily admit of a caesural pause, which naturally occurs at the end of the second speech-wave. This often admits of the easy introduction of an extra weak syllable at this point. Thus, in l. 6, we find *was lit-el*, an 'extension' (e), where the metre would otherwise admit only of an 'ascent' (a). And, in l. 2, we find (*after* the pause) *and ál-lē* (e), where the metre would otherwise admit only of a 'cadence' (c). This is a familiar phenomenon in English poetry, and such lines may be denoted by affixing *e* (*extended* group) to the number of the type. Thus l. 2 is really of the type 16 *e*, i.e. (ccct); but with (e) for (c) in the third sound-group. Similarly, l. 6 is really of the type 1 *be*, i.e. (aaaa); but with a feminine rhyme (§ 18), and with (e) for (a) in the second sound-group. It thus becomes perfectly easy to denote the precise type to which any given line belongs.

§ 19. **Examples of Scansion.** A few examples will *make this clearer*.

1 (aaaa). Ex. Ne-fúnd' he-nón þat-déd' hem-shám; 56. To the same type we may reduce ll. 68 (with two elisions of final *-en*, written for *-e*); 216; 288; 479; &c.

1 *ð* (aaaa); with feminine rhyme. Ex. Fil-mé<sup>1</sup> a-cúpp' of-fúl god-ále; 14. So also ll. 49; 60 (with *Mitchel*, really a 'cadence,' in the first sound-group, by the same licence as in 14); 64; 91 (read *he ne* as *hé n'*); 92; 112; 119; 130; 157; 468; &c.

Line 6 belongs to the type 1 *ð e* (§ 18).

2 (aaet). Ex. That-hé ne-wér'n to-sórwe bróuht; 57. So also ll. 74; 108; 115; 149 (taking *nouht-báten* together); 192; 289.

2 *ð* (aaec). Ex. He-wás ful-gód in-év'ri tróme; 8. So also 4 (see note); 27; 28; 65; 86; 99 (taking *non-só-god* together); 133; 188.

2 *e* (aect). Ex. He-déd' him-sóne || to-háuen ríht; 78<sup>2</sup>. So also 144.

2 *ðe* (aec). Ex. Ne-hé ne-móuhte || no-lýpe géte; 147.

3 (aeta). Ex. The-rým is-máked óf Hav'lók; 23<sup>3</sup>. So also 44; 61; 107; 145 (read *hav'* as a monosyllable).

3 *ð* (aete). Ex. The-tál' of-Háv'lok ís y-máked; 5. So also 9; 15; 16 (read *all'*); 25; 39; 41; 87; 94 (*And-ðþ'r he-réft-him*), where the final *-er* in *ðþer* is practically elided (or much slurred over) before the following *he*; 138 (to which a similar remark applies). This is a favourite and flowing type.

4 (aect). Ex. The-king was-hóten A'thel.wóld; 106; 137 (with *A'fter* in the first group).

<sup>1</sup> Or rather, Fil-me (c); by a common licence.

<sup>2</sup> Or: hem sóne t'háuen ríht; type 4.

<sup>3</sup> Or: is-máked || of-Háve.lók; type 2 *e* (aect).



4 *ð* (aecc). Ex. And-ál for-hís-e gód-e wérkes; 34. Cf. 81; 90 (ne-háv'd'-he név're); 100; 128; 132 (Ne-wóld').

5 (etaa). Ex. He-lóv'de Gód with-ál his-míht; 35. Cf. 36; 47; 89; 109; 124.

5 *ð* (etae). Ex. And-hátéd hém so-mán doth-gálle; 40. Cf. 46; 221; 230; 277.

6 (etet). Ex. And-héye hénig' on-gálwe tré; 43. Cf. 117.

6 *ð* (etec). Ex. He-déde mák' and-fúl-wel hólden; 29. Cf. 30; 37; 70; 103; 105 (*wón'th*); 129 (*And-Engelónd*); 139. L. 127 has an additional weak syllable at the beginning (*An'-a-thóusand*).

7 (ecta). Ex. Crist-lát'-us év're só to-dó; 17. So also 55; 136; 143.

7 *ð* (ecte). Ex. And-óv'ral mád'-hem fór to-cálle; 38. So also 53; 88 (*rid'*); 135 (*strónglik.è*).

8 (ecct). Ex. And-hwó-so díd-e wíduen wróng; 79.

8 *ð* (eccc). Ex. To-wrónge mícht-him nó-man brínge; 72. So also 83; 95; 96; 131.

9 (taaa). Ex. Hér' y-shál bigínn' a-rým; 21. So also 116 (*com'*); 123.

9 *ð* (taae). Ex. Óf a-tál' ich-yóu wil-télle; 3. So also 102 (*Fór to-háv'*); 104.

9 *ðe* (teae). Ex. And þe-tále || ye-mów' y-lére; 12. Cf. 113 (*spék' for speke*); 125 (*Shó-n'*).

10 (taet). Ex. þánn' him-tók an-fvel stróng; 114.

10 *ð* (taea). Ex. þát may-ríd' on-éni stéde; 26. So also 71; 85; 93; 97; 120; 126.

11 (teta). Ex. þát we-móten cóm' him-tó; 18. So also 31, 32; 48; 62; 73; 75 (read *þe-fád'rles*); 122; 142.

11 *ð* (tete). Ex. þát ye-mówen nóu y-hére; 11.

12 (tect). Ex. Bén'. dicámus Dómi-nó; 20. So also 22 (taking *wél-god* together); 110 (read *n'háv'd'-he*); 111; 154.

12 *b* (tecc). Ex. Thát he-shólden cómen swípe; 140. So also 146 (*nó-met'*); 156.

13 (ctaa). Ex. Sóne sáys' intl his-hónd; 251. (Not common.) So 462.

13 *b* (ctae). Ex. Lóverd hwát shal-mé to-réde; 118. Cf. 141; 299.

14 (ctet). Ex. Wér'-it clérc or-wér'-it kníht; 77. Cf. 331.

14 *b* (ctec). Ex. Háv'lok wás a-fíl-god góme; 7. So also 42; 54 (*O'v'ral*); 101; 150; 197.

15 (ccta). Ex. Whó-so déd'-hem wróng or-láth; 76. Cf. 80.

15 *b* (ccte). Ex. púrh-ut E'nglond wíth her-wáre; 52. Cf. 33 (*pres't's*).

16 (ccct). Ex. Hérkneth tó-me góde men; 1. Cf. 171. Line 2 is of the type 16 *e*; i.e. it has *and-állē* in place of a 'cadence,' after the caesural pause.

16 *b* (cccc). Ex. pánne mīhte chápmen fáre; 51. Cf. 63 (*E'nge.lóndes*); 66 (*n'óp're*); 98 (*só-god*); 121.

§ 20. A few lines present exceptional difficulties. Thus l. 13 seems to run thus: A't-pe bigínning of-úr-e tále; where *bigínning* occupies the place of a 'cadence' only, owing perhaps to the caesural pause. But the line would be less heavy if we were either to omit *pe* or to read *gínning*. A few other difficult lines are discussed in the Notes.

Considered as a whole, the metre is well varied, and sufficiently good. If the reader finds the discrimination of types too troublesome, he has only to neglect the distinctions between them, and to fall back upon the old formulae bAbAbAbA, or AbAbAbA, to one or other of which (neglect-

ing the feminine rhymes) almost every line in the poem can be ultimately reduced.

§ 21. **The Story.** To trace fully the history of the Lay of Havelok would almost require a volume to itself. All that I can give here is a mere outline. The question has been frequently discussed; for references, see § 35. The story has been influenced by various legends, told of various people. Thus the flame that appeared to issue from Havelok's mouth as he lay asleep (591, 1256) reminds us of Servius Tullius, around whose infant head flames were seen to play in his slumbers (Ovid, *Fasti*, vi. 635).

As to the connexion between the story of Havelok and that of Hamlet (also a famous prince of Denmark), see the discussion in the Introduction (§§ 1, 2) to Hamlet in Iceland, by I. Gollancz. And Dr. Ward, following Storm, has shown that Habloc (which is the spelling of Havelok seen on the Grimsby seal) is a name of Welsh origin which, on account of its similarity, was sometimes transferred to the Scandinavian heroes of the name of Anlaf, a more original form of Olaf. 'The Norse O'lafr, originally Anleifr, corresponds with the A.S. Anláf, the Irish Amlaib, pronounced Aaway, and the Welsh *Abloc*. Thus in the Welsh chronicle *Brut y Tywysogion* (ed. by the Rev. J. Williams ab Ithel, London, 1860), the predecessor of our Anlaf is named *Abloec* (A. D. 942); we find, A. D. 960, the "meibion Abloec," i. e. the sons of Abloc Cuaran; and A. D. 989, the death of Glumaine mab Abloec noticed. And as Abloc is the Welsh form of Anlaf or Olave, thus *Aveloc*—in later English *Havelok*—must be the Anglo-Norman pronunciation of *Abloc*.'—G. Storm (*Engl. Studien*, iii. 534). As was also pointed out by Professor Storm at the same time, the most important hero for our present purpose is Anlaf (or Olaf), son of the Sihtric who married (as his second wife) the sister of king Athelstan,

grandson of Alfred the Great, in the year 925 (A. S. Chron.); see the account of him in the Dict. of National Biography, under the heading Olaf Sitricson. This Anlaf is distinguished from all others by the surname Curan, spelt Cwiran in the A. S. Chron., under the year 949 (MS. E). This surname is Celtic; and Anlaf Curan signifies 'Anlaf with the brogue'; from the Irish and Gael. *cuaran*<sup>1</sup>, explained by Macleod as 'a sock, a brogue of untanned leather or skin, commonly worn with the hairy side outwards'; cf. Welsh *curan*, a buskin. The surname is easily explained from Anlaf's connexion with Ireland. See further in § 20.

This epithet is important, as it is the very one applied to Havelok in the French versions of the story. Gaimar (cf. § 23) spells it Cuheran, and adds (l. 105)—'Cil Cuheran estait quistrun,' i. e. This Cuheran was a scullion, or kitchen-servant; precisely as in our poem, ll. 903-970. The author of the other French version (§ 24) somewhat mistakes the matter, imagining that *Curan* had the *meaning* of 'scullion,' which is not the case<sup>2</sup>. He says (l. 258):—

Cuaran l'appelloient tuit ;  
Car ceo tenoient li Breton  
En lur language quistrun.

i. e. All called him Cuaran; for the Britons, in their language, thus called a scullion. This is, of course, a slip; but the Celtic origin of the name is nevertheless perceived. It does not, however, occur in the English version.

§ 22. The above remarks render it easier to understand

<sup>1</sup> Probably allied to Lat. *cu-tis*, skin, E. *hide*; see Macbain, and Stokes-Fick, p. 89. The primitive Celtic type is \**kouranos*. The Icel. spelling is *kvaran*; see Corpus Poeticum Boreale, ed. Vigfusson and Powell, ii. 111.

<sup>2</sup> In modern Gaelic and Irish, *cearn* means not only 'a corner,' but also 'a kitchen.' Perhaps this helped on the mistake.

how the story grew up. It may very well have been founded on a Welsh original, as expressly asserted below. And it received accretions from various sources, the chief one, from an historical point of view, having regard to Anlaf Sihtricson, surnamed Curan, as noted above; who, by the way, was frequently confused with his cousin of the same name, Anlaf Godfreyson; see *Two Saxon Chronicles*, ed. Plummer, ii. 145. I now subjoin a detailed account of the oldest versions of the story.

§ 23. **Geffrei Gaimar.** The story appears in two Anglo-French versions, both derived from an earlier source that is now lost; for each contains circumstances that are not mentioned in the other, though there is often a close agreement. The older of these is probably that contained in ll. 37-818 (ed. T. Wright) of the poem entitled *L'Estorie des Engles*, written by Geffrei Gaimar, apparently between the years 1147 and 1151<sup>1</sup>. In one place (l. 41) he cites Gildas as his authority, but no safe conclusion can be drawn from this vague reference. In another place (l. 758) he mentions a feast given by Havelok—'si cum nus dit la verai estoire'—i.e. as the true history tells us. There are three MS. copies of Gaimar's version of the story, of which perhaps the best is the Royal MS. (Bibl. Reg. 13. A. xxi) in the British Museum; the two others belong respectively to the Dean and Chapter of Durham (its mark being C. iv. 27) and to the Dean and Chapter of Lincoln (its mark being H. 18). The Royal MS. was printed in full by Mr. T. Wright for the Caxton Society in 1850. Portions of it have also been printed by M. Michel, in his *Chroniques Anglo-Normandes*, 8vo., Rouen, 1835; by Sir F. Madden, in his edition of *Havelok* (as above); and by Mr. Petrie in 1848, for which

<sup>1</sup> Lines 1-36 really belong to another book by Gaimar, viz. his translation of *The Brut*, from Geoffrey of Monmouth.

see *Monumenta Historica Britannica*, vol. i. p. 764. Notwithstanding the close resemblance between the story as told by Gaimar and the English *Lay*, most of the names of the chief actors are different. Thus, in Gaimar, king Athelwold is *Adelbricht*; his daughter Goldborough is *Argentille*, and Earl Godrich is *Edelsie*. King Birkabeyn is *Gunter*; Godard is *Edelf*; and Ubbe is *Sigar*. Only the names of Havelok and Grim remain the same.

It is also worth noting that Gaimar, after mentioning how Cynric succeeded his father Cerdic (in A.D. 534, according to the A. S. Chronicle), goes on to say that the Danes had been in Norfolk ever since the time when Havelok was king (l. 897). This absurd statement is to be explained by the fact that he actually confused the Constantine, king of the Scots, father-in-law of Anlaf (or Olaf) Sihtricson (§ 21), with the legendary British king Constantine, who succeeded king Arthur, as he himself tells us, at a much earlier period. For he states expressly that Adelbricht and Edelsie (mentioned above) were kings in Britain when Constantine was chief king; 'and this Constantine was the nephew of Arthur who had the sword named Caliburc'; l. 45. This extraordinary confusion of names easily accounts for Gaimar's placing the story about 400 years before its time, as well as for the wonderful statement in MS. Cotton, Calig. A. 2, fol. 107, back (see § 30, 1), that, on account of Haveloke of Denmarke, the Danes laid claim to England 'per cccc. annos postea.' And hence it is that when Gaimar mentions 'Anlas Quiran,' i. e. Anlaf Curan, in his proper chronological place (l. 3550) as seizing Northumberland and holding it for three years, he is evidently ignorant of his connexion with the hero of our Lay.

§ 24. *Le Lai d'Havelok*. This Anglo-French version likewise belongs to the twelfth century, and gives a similar

story, with some variations. There are two MS. copies, of which one belongs to the collection made by Sir T. Phillipps, and the other is known as the Arundel MS. (or the Norfolk MS.), and is preserved in the Heralds' College, where it is marked E. D. N. no. 14. It was printed in Sir F. Madden's edition of *Havelok*, pp. 105-146; in an octavo volume by M. Michel, Paris, 1833; in the Appendix to T. Wright's edition of *Gaimar*; and by Sir T. D. Hardy (§ 34). In l. 18 we are told that Haveloc was surnamed Cuaran; and in l. 21 that the Britons made a lay about him: 'Q'un lai en firent li Breton.' In this version, like the former, the story is wrongly made to refer to the time of king Arthur. I here subjoin a brief sketch of its contents.

The Britons made a lay concerning King Havelok, who is surnamed Cuaran. His father was Gunter, King of the Danes. Arthur crossed the sea, and invaded Denmark. Gunter perished by the treason of Hodulf, who gained the kingdom, and held it of Arthur. Gunter had a fine castle, where his wife and son were guarded, being committed to the protection of Grim. The child was but seven years old; but ever as he slept, an odorous flame issued from his mouth. Hodulf sought to kill him, but Grim prepared a ship, and furnished it with provisions, wherein he placed the queen and the child, and set sail from Denmark. On their voyage they encountered pirates ('out-laghes'), who killed them all after a hard fight, excepting Grim, who was an acquaintance of theirs, and Grim's wife and children. Havelok also was saved. They at last arrived at the haven, afterwards named 'Grimesbi' from Grim. Grim there resumed his old trade, a fisherman's, and a town grew up round his hut, which was called Grimsby. The child grew up, and waxed strong. One day Grim said to him, 'Son, you will never thrive as a fisherman; take your brothers with you, and seek service amongst the King's servants.' He was soon well apparelled, and repaired with his two foster-brothers to Nicole [Lincoln]. Now at that time there was a king named Alsie, who ruled over all Nicole and Lindesie<sup>1</sup>; but the country southward was governed by another king, named Ekenbright, who had married Alsie's sister Orewen. These two had one

<sup>1</sup> *The northern part of Lincolnshire is called Lindsey.*

only daughter, named Argentille. Ekenbright, falling ill, committed Argentille to the care of Alsi, till she should be of age to be married to the strongest man that could be found. At Ekenbright's death, Alsi reigned over both countries, holding his court at Nicole. Havelok, on his arrival there, was employed to carry water and cut wood, and to perform all menial offices requiring great strength. He was named Cuaran, which means—in the British language—a scullion. Argentille soon arrived at marriageable age, and Alsi determined to marry her to Cuaran, which would sufficiently fulfil her father's wish—Cuaran being confessedly the strongest man in those parts. To this marriage he compelled her to consent, hoping thereby to disgrace her for ever. Havelok was unwilling that his wife should perceive the marvellous flame, but soon forgot this, and ere long fell asleep. Then had Argentille a strange vision—that a savage bear and some foxes attacked Cuaran, but dogs and boars defended him. A boar having killed the bear, the foxes cried for quarter from Cuaran, who commanded them to be bound. Then he would have put to sea, but the sea rose so high that he was terrified. Next she beheld two lions, at seeing which she was frightened, and she and Cuaran climbed a tree to avoid them; but the lions submitted themselves to him, and called him their lord. Then a great cry was raised, whereat she awoke, and beheld the miraculous flame. 'Sir,' she exclaimed, 'you burn!' But he reassured her, and, having heard her dream, said that it would soon come true. The next day, however, she again told her dream to a chamberlain, her friend, who said that he well knew a holy hermit who could explain it. The hermit explained to Argentille that Cuaran must be of royal lineage. 'He will be king,' he said, 'and you a queen. Ask him concerning his parentage. Remember also to repair to his native place.' On being questioned, Cuaran replied that he was born at Grimsby; that Grim was his father, and Saburc his mother. 'Then let us go to Grimsby,' she replied. Accompanied by his two foster-brothers, they came to Grimsby; but Grim and Saburc were both dead. They found there, however, a daughter of Grim's, named Kelloc, who had married a tradesman of that town. Up to this time Havelok had not known his true parentage, but Kelloc thought it was now time to tell him, and said: 'Your father was Gunter, the King of the Danes, whom Hodulf slew. Hodulf obtained the kingdom as a grant from Arthur. Grim fled with you, and saved your life; but your mother perished at sea. Your name is HAVELOK. My husband will convey you to Denmark, where you must inquire for a lord named "Sigar l'estal"; and take with you my two brothers.' So Kelloc's husband conveyed them to



Denmark, and advised Havelok to go to Sigar and show himself and his wife, as then he would be asked who his wife is. They went to the city of the seneschal, the before-named Sigar, where they craved a night's lodging, and were courteously entertained. But as they retired to a lodging for the night, six men attacked them, who had been smitten with the beauty of Argentille. Havelok defended himself with an axe which he found, and slew five, whereupon the sixth fled. Havelok and his party fled away for refuge to a monastery, which was soon attacked by the townsmen who had heard of the combat. Havelok *mounted the tower*, and defended himself bravely, *casting down a huge stone on his enemies*<sup>1</sup>. The news soon reached the ears of Sigar, who hastened to see what the uproar was about. Beholding Havelok fixedly, he called to mind the form and appearance of Gunter, and asked Havelok of his parentage. Havelok replied that Grim had told him he was by birth a Dane, and that his mother perished at sea; and ended by briefly relating his subsequent adventures. Then Sigar asked him his name. 'My name is Havelok,' he said, 'and my other name is Cuaran.' Then the seneschal took him home, and determined to watch for the miraculous flame, which he soon perceived, and was assured that Havelok was the true heir. Therefore he gathered a great host of his friends, and sent for the horn which none but the true heir could sound, promising a ring to any one who could blow it. When all had failed, it was given to Havelok, who blew it loud and long, and was joyfully recognized and acknowledged to be the true King. Then with a great army he attacked Hodulf the usurper, whom he slew with his own hand. Thus was Havelok made King of Denmark.

But after he had reigned four years, his wife incited him to return to England. With a great number of ships he sailed there, and arrived at Carleflure<sup>2</sup>; and sent messengers to Alsi, demanding the inheritance of Argentille. Alsi was indeed astonished at such a demand as coming from a scullion, and offered him battle. The hosts met at Theford<sup>3</sup>, and the battle endured till nightfall without a decisive result. But Argentille craftily advised her lord to support his dead men by stakes,

<sup>1</sup> Hence the obvious origin of the legend of 'Havelok's stone,' and the local tradition about Grim's casting down stones from the tower of Grimsby church. See § 31.

<sup>2</sup> Possibly Saltfleet, suggests Mr. Haigh. Such, at least, is the position required by the circumstances.

<sup>3</sup> In the Durham MS. it is Tiedfort, i.e. Tetford, not far from Horn-castle, in Lincolnshire.

to increase the apparent number of his army<sup>1</sup>; and the next day Alsí, deceived by this device, treated for peace, and yielded up to his former ward all the land, from Holland<sup>2</sup> to Gloucester. Alsí had been so sorely wounded that he lived but fifteen days longer. Thus was Havelok king over Lincoln and Lindsey, and reigned over them for twenty years. Such is the lay of Cuaran.

§ 25. **Peter de Langtoft.** The next mention of Havelok is in the Anglo-French Chronicle of Peter de Langtoft, of Langtoft in Yorkshire, who died early in the reign of Edward II, and whose Chronicle closes with the death of Edward I. Here the only trace of the story is the mention of 'Gountere le pere Hauelok, de Danays Ray clamez'—Gunter, father of Havelok, called king of the Danes. He identifies this Gunter with the Danish invader defeated by Alfred the Great, who in the A.S. Chronicle is called Godrum. See the edition by T. Wright (Rolls Series), i. 318.

§ 26. **Robert Manning, of Brunne.** It is convenient to consider next (though somewhat out of chronological order) the translation of Peter Langtoft (§ 25, above) made by Robert Manning, of Brunne or Bourne in Lincolnshire, and completed in the year 1338. Manning is the well-known author of the poem entitled *Handlyng Synne*, written in 1303; and he was well acquainted with our poem, as he quotes it or imitates it at least three times; see notes to ll. 679, 819 (pp. 109, 112 below). The later portion of Manning's translation was printed at Oxford by T. Hearne in 1725, in 2 vols.; and the first part (in shorter lines) has since been edited, for the Master of the Rolls, by Dr. Furnivall. When Manning comes to the above passage in Langtoft,

<sup>1</sup> This is an important parallel to a story told about Amleth (Hamlet) in the *History* by Saxo Grammaticus, bk. iv. 'He resorts to a device to increase the apparent number of his men. He puts stakes under some of the dead bodies of his comrades, to prop them up,' &c.—Gollancz, *Hamlet* in Iceland, p. xxviii.

<sup>2</sup> A name given to the S. E. part of Lincolnshire.

he translates the line in § 25 by 'Hauelok fader he was, Gunter was his name'; where Hearne prints the former name as 'Hanelok.' Then follows the usual account, how Gunter (Godrum) made peace with Alfred, and submitted to be baptized, A.D. 878. After which we have the following interpolated passage, written by Manning on his own account: See ed. Hearne, i. 25:—

Bot I haf grete ferly, that I fynd no man,  
That has written in story, how Hauelok this lond wan.  
Noither *Gildas*, no Bede, no Henry of Huntinton,  
No William of Malmesbiri, ne Pers of Bridlynton,  
Writes not in their bokes of no kyng Athelwold,  
Ne Goldeburgh his douhtere, ne Hauelok not of told,  
Whilk tyme the were kynges, long or now late,  
Thei mak no menyng whan, no in what date.  
Bot that thise *lowed men vpon English tellis*,  
Right story can me not ken, the certeynte what spellis.  
Men sais in Lyncoln castelle ligges ȝit a stone,  
That Hauelok kast wele forbi euer ilkone.  
& ȝit the chapelle standes, ther he weddid his wife,  
Goldeburgh the kynges douhter, *that saw is ȝit rife*.  
& of Gryme a fisshere, *men redes ȝit in ryme*,  
That he bigged Grymesby Gryme that ilk tyme.  
Of alle stories of honoure, that I haf thorgh souht,  
I fynd that no compiloure of him tellis ouht.  
Sen I fynd non redy, that tellis of Hauelok kynde,  
Turne we *to that story, that we writen fynde*.

There cannot exist the smallest doubt, that by the 'Ryme' here mentioned 'that lowed men vpon English tellis,' the identical English Romance, now before the reader, is referred to. We see also that, in 1338, the traditions respecting Havelok at Lincoln were so strongly preserved, as to point out various localities to which the story had affixed a name; and similar traditions connected with the legend, as we shall find hereafter, existed also at Grimsby. The doubts expressed by the Chronicler, as to their authenticity, or the authority of the 'Ryme,' are curious, but only of value so far as they *prove that he was ignorant of the existence of a French*

Romance on the subject, or of its reception in Gaimar's historical poem.

§ 27. **Interpolation in the Lambeth MS.** 'But (says Sir F. Madden) on consulting the Lambeth copy of Rob. of Brunne, in order to verify the passage as printed by Hearne from the Inner Temple MS., we were not a little surprised to ascertain a fact hitherto overlooked, and indeed unknown, viz. that the Lambeth MS. (which is a folio, written on paper, and imperfect both at the beginning and close) does not correspond with the Edition, but has evidently been revised by a later hand, which has abridged the Prologues, omitted some passages, and inserted others. The strongest proof of this exists in the passage before us, in which the Lambeth MS. entirely omits the lines of Rob. of Brunne respecting the authenticity of the story of Havelok, and in their place substitutes an abridged outline of the story itself, copied apparently from the French Chronicle of Gaimar<sup>1</sup>. The interpolation is so curious, and so connected with our inquiry, as to be a sufficient apology for introducing it here.'

Forth wente Gounter & his folk, al in to Denemark,  
 Sone fel ther hym vpon, a werre styth & stark,  
 Thurgh a Breton kyng, th<sup>t</sup> out of Ingeland cam,  
 & asked the tribut of Denmark, th<sup>t</sup> Arthur whylom nam.  
 They wythseide hit schortly, & non wolde they zelde, 5  
 But rather they wolde dereyne hit wyth bataill y[n] the felde.  
 Both partis on a day, to felde come they stronge,  
 Desconfit were the Danes, Gounter his deth gan fonge.  
 When he was ded they schope brynge al his blod to schame,  
 But Gatferes doughter the kyng, *Eleyne* was hure name, 10  
 Was kyng Gounteres wyf, and had a child hem bytwene,  
 Wyth wham scheo scapede vneth, al to the se with tene.  
 The child hym highte HAUELOK, th<sup>t</sup> was his moder dere,  
 Scheo mette with Grym atte hauene, a wel god marinere, 14  
 He hure knew & highte hure wel, to helpe hure with his might,

<sup>1</sup> *Not* really from Gaimar, but from a source to which Gaimar had access. See § 28.

To bryng hure saf out of the lond, wythinne th<sup>t</sup> ilke night.  
 When they come in myd se, a gret meschef gan falle,  
 They metten wyth a gret schip, lade wyth outlawes alle.  
 Anon they fullen hem apon, & dide hem mikel peyne, 19  
 So th<sup>t</sup> wyth strengthe of their assaut, ded was quene Eleyne.  
 But ȝyt ascapede from hem Grym, wyth Hauelok & other fyue,  
 & atte the hauene of Grymesby, ther they gon aryue.  
 Ther was brought forth child Hauelok, wyth Grym & his fere,  
 Right als hit hadde be ther own, for other wyste men nere,  
 Til he was mykel & mighti, & man of mykel cost, 25  
 Th<sup>t</sup> for his grete sustinaunce, nedly serue he most.  
 He tok leue of Grym & Seburc, as of his sire & dame,  
 And askede ther blessinge curteysly, ther was he nought to blame.  
 Thenne drow he forth northward, to kynges court Edelsie, 29  
 Th<sup>t</sup> held fro Humber to Rotland, the kyngdam of Lyndesye.  
 Thys Edelsy of Breton kynde, had Orewayn his sister bright  
 Married to a noble kyng, of Northfolk Egelbright.  
 Holly for his kyngdam, he held in his hand  
 Al the lond fro Colchestre, right in til Holand.  
 Thys Egelbright th<sup>t</sup> was a Dane, & Orewayn the quene, 35  
 Hadden gete on Argill, a doughter hem bytwene.  
 Sone then deyde Egelbright, & his wyf Orewayn,  
 & therfore was kyng Edelsye bothe joyful & fayn.  
 Anon their doughter & here Eyr, his nece dame Argill,  
 & al the kyngdam he tok in hande, al at his owene will. 40  
 Ther serued Hauelok as quistron, & was y-cald Coraunt,  
 He was ful mykel & hardy, & strong as a Geaunt.  
 He was bold curteys & fre, & fair & god of manere,  
 So th<sup>t</sup> alle folk hym louede, th<sup>t</sup> anwest hym were.  
 But for couetise of desheraison of damysele Argill, 45  
 & for a chere th<sup>t</sup> the kyng sey, scheo made Coraunt till,  
 He dide hem arraye ful symplely, & wedde togydere bothe ;—  
 For he ne rewarded desparagyng, were manion ful wrothe.  
 A while they dwelt after in court, in ful pore degre, 49  
 The schame & sorewe th<sup>t</sup> Argill hadde, hit was a deol to se.  
 Then seyde scheo til hure maister, of whenne sire be ȝe ?  
 Haue ȝe no kyn ne frendes at hom, in ȝoure contre ?  
 Leuer were me lyue in pore lyf, wythoute schame & tene,  
 Than in schame & sorewe lede the astat of quene.  
 Thenne wente they forth to Grymesby, al by his wyues red, 55  
 & founde th<sup>t</sup> Grym & his wyf weren bothe ded.  
 But he fond ther on Aunger, Grymes cosyn hend,  
 To wham th<sup>t</sup> Grym & his wyf had teld word & ende.  
 How th<sup>t</sup> hit stod wyth Hauelok, in all manere degre,  
 & they hit hym telde & conseilled, to drawe til his contre, 60  
*Tasaye what grace he mighte fynde, among his frendes there,*

& they wolde ordeyne for their schippyng, and al th<sup>t</sup> hem nede were.

When Aunger hadde y-schiped hem, they seilled forth ful swythe,

Ful-but in-til Denemark, wyth weder fair & lithe.

Ther fond he on sire Sykar, a man of gret pousté, 65

Th<sup>t</sup> hey styward somtyme was, of al his fader fe.

Ful fayn was he of his comyng, & god help him behight,

To recouere his heritage, of Edulf kyng & knyght.

Sone assembled they gret folk, of his sibmen & frendes,

Kyng Edulf gadered his power, & ageyn them wendes. 70

Desconfyt was ther kyng Edulf, & al his grete bataill,

& so conquered Haulok his heritage saunz faille.

Sone after he schop him gret power, in toward Ingelond,

His wyues heritage to wynne, ne wolde he nought wonde.

Th<sup>t</sup> herde the kyng of Lyndeseye, he was come on th<sup>t</sup> cost, 75

& schop to fighte wyth hym sone, & gadered hym gret host.

But atte day of bataill, Edelsy was desconfit,

& after by tretys gaf Argentill hure heritage al quit.

& for scheo was next of his blod, Haulokes wyf so feyr,

He gaf hure Lyndesey after his day, & made hure his Eyr. 80

& atte last so byfel, th<sup>t</sup> vnder Haulokes schelde

Al Northfolk & Lyndeseye, holy of hym they helde.

MS. Lamb. 131, leaf 76.

§ 28. Relationships between the various versions of the story. We have now seen that the chief versions of the story are, first, that given by *Gaimar* (see § 23); secondly, *Le Lai d'Havelok* (§ 24); thirdly, the *English Lay* here printed; and fourthly, the *Lambeth interpolation* (§ 27). The relationships between these four versions have been discussed by Kupferschmidt (see § 35), and more recently by E. K. Putnam, who has re-examined Kupferschmidt's conclusions. Mr. Putnam shows that we may arrange the versions as follows.

Denoting the original version (now lost) by X, we find that the *English Lay* (denoted by E) is derived from it in a form which does *not* immediately follow either G (*Gaimar*), L (*Le Lai*), or I (*the Interpolation*). Further, that I is *not* immediately from G (as Kupferschmidt supposed), though

it closely resembles it ; but that G, L, and I are all derived from Y, a lost French version in rhymed couplets, which is itself derived from X.

Again, we have seen that E cannot have been derived *immediately* from X, except perhaps as regards the principal contents of the story. There must have intervened, at the very least, a MS. which we may call  $E_1$ , probably written in the Lincolnshire dialect, and if so, belonging rather to the earlier than the later part of the thirteenth century ; and secondly, a MS. which we may call  $E_2$ , almost certainly written in the South of England by a Norman scribe ; and thirdly, a MS. which we may call  $E_3$ , which may likewise have been a copy by a Norman scribe, but written in Lincolnshire and adding a few local interpolations to bring it up to date, perhaps as late as 1301. Of this, E seems to have been an unintelligent copy, made not many years afterwards by a somewhat careless scribe who tried to copy what he had before him. At this rate, the mutual relationships of all the versions may be thus represented.

$$X - \begin{cases} Y \text{ ——— } \begin{cases} G \\ L \\ I \end{cases} \\ E_1 - E_2 - E_3 - E \end{cases}$$

The source or sources of X are of course unknown ; but it was probably founded upon various legends and historical events ; and of these the most important seems to have been an account of the romantic life of Anlaf Sihtricson (§§ 21, 29) ; who was certainly confused with Anlaf Godfreyson his cousin, and also with Gudorm or Guthorm, the famous Danish king who became Alfred's godson. A very brief account of this Anlaf is all that can here be given ; see the Dict. of National Biography and Gollancz, *Hamlet in Iceland*, p. xlv.

§ 20. **Anlaf Curan.** This Anlaf was the son of Sihtric (O. N. Sigtryggr), a Viking chief who came to Dublin in 888, gained and lost the kingship of Dublin, married the sister of the Saxon king Æthelstan in 924, and died in 925; Anlaf being the son of a former wife. Æthelstan drove out of Northumbria Godfrey, the brother of Sihtric, Anlaf the son of Godfrey, and Anlaf Curan, Godfrey's nephew. Anlaf Curan repaired to the court of Constantine III, king of Scotland, whose daughter he subsequently married. In 937, a league was formed against Æthelstan by Constantine, the two Anlafs, and others; but their army was defeated by the Saxon king at Brunanburh; see the exultant song upon the occasion preserved in the A. S. Chronicle. Nevertheless, Anlaf Curan again came to York in 940 or 941, and was received as king by the Northumbrians and the Danes of Mercia and East Anglia, and by Wulfstan, Archbishop of York (cf. l. 1178). He was again driven out of Northumbria in 944, but returned in 949<sup>1</sup>, and was again king for three years, till he was driven out, for the last time, in 952. His subsequent career as king of Dublin came to an end in 980, when he was utterly defeated at Tara by Malachy II; but escaped and became a monk at Iona, where he died in 981. One of the stories about him is that he visited Æthelstan's camp in the disguise of a minstrel (Rob. of Gloucester, l. 5510). 'There can be no doubt,' says Mr. Gollancz, 'that the romance of Havelok Cuheran is little more than a romance of the life of Anlaf Curan, or rather of the many legends fathered upon him, some belonging to ancient story, some derived from various episodes in Hiberno-Anglo-Danish history. The romance

<sup>1</sup> '944. Her Eadmund cyning . . . aflymde ut . . . Anlaf Syhtrices sunu . . . '949. Her com Anlaf Cwiran on Northymbra land.'—A. S. Chron.



must have originally been developed among a Welsh-speaking population, for Abloec or Abloyc (with voiced *b*, i.e. Avloc; cf. Habloc, the form on the Grimsby seal) is the name given to Anlaf in the oldest Welsh annals<sup>1</sup>. Abloec is a native Welsh name, transferred to Anlaf owing to similarity of sound. Hence Anlaf Tryggvason, king of Norway (995-1000), is likewise called Haneloc [Haueloc] in the Chronicle of England, l. 797, in Ritson's *Metr. Romances*, ii. 303; and again, one of these Anlafs appears as 'the king of Denmarke, *Auelocke*' in the ballad of Guy and Colebrande (Percy Folio MS., ii. 528).

§ 30. **Later versions.** The various forms of the story *later* than the English Lay (with the exception of the Lambeth interpolation, § 27) are discussed by Sir F. Madden, but are not of much consequence. It seems to me sufficient to mention them. They are as follows.

(a) *Le Bruit Dengleterre*, or *Le Petit Bruit*, compiled in 1310 by Meistre Rauf de Boun for Henry de Lacy, earl of Lincoln. This actually cites the English Lay as *l'estorie de Grimesby*; and the author substitutes king Athelwold (cf. Havelok, l. 106) for the English king Eadred, who succeeded Eadmund in 946. A copy of the above Chronicle is extant in MS. Harl. 902.

(b) A Genealogy of the British and Saxon Kings, from Brutus to Edward II, entitled *La Lignee des Bretons et des Anglais*, &c. It identifies Athelwold (as above) with Æthelbald of Wessex, who died in 860. It occurs in the same MS. as *Le Lai d'Havelok* (§ 24).

(c) A metrical *Chronicle of England*; printed by Ritson, *Metrical Romances*, ii. 270. There are two copies; one in the Auchinleck MS., and the other in MS. Reg. 12. C. xii in the British Museum. The author seems to identify Havelok

<sup>1</sup> See *War of the Gaedhil*, ed. J. H. Todd (1867), p. 283.

with Olaf Tryggvason, who invaded England in 994, as he says that 'Haueloc . . sloh the kyng Achelred,' i.e. Æthelred, who died in 1016. See § 29.

(d) The prose Chronicle called *The Brute*, the foundation of 'Caxton's Chronicle,' which was printed by Caxton in 1480. It follows the French versions. There is a French text of this in MS. Reg. 20. A. 3; also in MS. Cotton, Domit. A. x; and in MS. Harl. 200. MS. Harl. 2279 contains the English version, much resembling Caxton's Chronicle. Cf. MS. Harl. 63, which contains the same Chronicle, in an abbreviated form.

(e) The story appears in *some* interpolated copies of the Latin text of Higden's Polychronicon; see MSS. Harl. 655; Cotton, Jul. E. 8; Reg. 13. E. 1. In an earlier form it occurs in MS. Cotton, Domit. A. 2.

(f) It occurs in a Chronicle in French prose called the *Scala Cronica*, or *Scale Chronicon*, composed about 1355-1362 by Thomas Gray. This was printed from MS. Corp. Chr. Coll. Cam. 132 by Stevenson for the Maitland Club in 1836. The passage relative to Havelok is translated in Leland, *Collectanea*, vol. i. pt. 2. p. 511.

(g) It also occurs in the *Eulogium Historiarum*, ed. Haydon, 1860, vol. ii. p. 378; written about 1366.

(h) Also in the history by Henry de Knyghton; borrowed from *Le Bruit Dengleterre*; see (a) above.

(i) A brief *Chronicle* contained in MS. Cotton, Calig. A. 2. At fol. 107b is the passage referred to above (§ 23):— 'Ethelwolde, qui generavit filiam de (*sic*) Haueloke de Denmarke, per quem Danes per cccc. annos postea fecerunt clameum Anglie.' Some omission after the word *de* has turned this into nonsense, but we find here the claim of the Danes to the English crown by right of descent from Havelok. The remark is evidently introduced to account for the extra-

ordinary leap from the time of Arthur to that of Athelstan, due to Gaimar's confusion of Constantine of Britain with Constantine III of Scotland (§ 23). So also in MS. Harl. 63 (see (d) above) the king of Denmark sends to king Æthelstan — 'to witte wheder he wold fynde a man to fight with Colbrande for the righte of the kyngdom Northumbre, that the Danes had claymed before by the title of kyng Haueloke, that wedded Goldesburghe the kyngis daughter of Northumbre'; fol. 19. See § 29.

(k) *Caxton's Chronicle*; see (d) above.

(l) As suggested by Caxton's Chronicle, the poet Warner introduced a ballad into his poem called Albion's England (bk. iv. ch. 20), which refers to the story, but in no very direct manner. This ballad was reprinted in Percy's *Reliques of Ancient Poetry*, with the title 'Argentile and Curan.' A sort of paraphrase of this appears in a poem by William Webster, written in 1617 in six-line stanzas; entitled 'The most pleasant and delightful historie of Curan, a prince of Danske,' &c. Fabyan, in his Chronicle, ed. Ellis, 1811, p. 82, alludes to the story as 'a longe process'; he considers it as unauthentic, and says—'I passe it over.'

§ 31. **Local traditions.** We find that Camden briefly alludes to the story in a contemptuous manner (p. 353; ed. 8vo, Lond. 1587); but Gervase Holles is far from being disposed to regard it as fabulous. 'In his MSS. collections for Lincolnshire' (says Sir F. Madden) 'preserved in MS. Harl. 6829, he thus speaks of the story we are examining<sup>1</sup> :—

And it will not be amisse, to say something concerning y<sup>e</sup> Common tradition of her first founder Grime, as y<sup>e</sup> inhabitants (with a Catholique faith) name him. The tradition is thus. *Grime* (say they) a poore Fisherman (as he was launching into y<sup>e</sup> Riuer for fish in his little boate vpon Humber) espyed not

<sup>1</sup> 'His account has been printed in the *Topographer*, V. i. p. 241, sq. 8vo, 1789. We follow' (says Sir F. Madden) 'the MS. itself, p. 1.'

far from him another little boate, empty (as he might conceaue) which by y<sup>e</sup> fauour of y<sup>e</sup> wynde & tyde still approached nearer & nearer vnto him. He betakes him to his oares, & meetes itt, wherein he founde onely a Childe wrapt in swathing clothes, purposely exposed (as it should seeme) to y<sup>e</sup> pittylesse [rage] of y<sup>e</sup> wilde & wide Ocean. He moued with pittie, takes itt home, & like a good foster-father carefully nourisht itt, & endeaououred to nourishe it in his owne occupation: but y<sup>e</sup> childe contrarily was wholly deuoted to exercises of actiuity, & when he began to write man, to martiall sports, & at length by his signall valour obteyned such renowne, y<sup>t</sup> he marryed y<sup>e</sup> King of England's daughter, & last of all founde who was his true Father, & that he was Sonne to y<sup>e</sup> King of Denmarke; & for y<sup>e</sup> comicke close of all; that *Haueloke* (for such was his name) exceedingly aduanced & enriched his foster-father Grime, who thus enriched, builded a fayre Towne neare the place where Hauelocke was founde, & named it Grimesby. Thus say some: others differ a little in y<sup>e</sup> circumstances, as namely, that Grime was not a Fisherman, but a Merchant, & that Hauelocke should be preferred to y<sup>e</sup> King's kitchin, & there liue a longe tyme as a Scullion: but however y<sup>e</sup> circumstances differ, they all agree in y<sup>e</sup> consequence, as concerning y<sup>e</sup> Towne's foundation, to which (sayth y<sup>e</sup> story) Hauelocke y<sup>e</sup> Danish prince, afterward graunted many immunityes. This is y<sup>e</sup> famous Tradition concerning Grimsby w<sup>ch</sup> learned Mr. Cambden gives so little credit to, that he thinkes it onely *illis dignissima, qui anilibus fabulis noctem solent protrudere.*

And again, after showing that *by* is the Danish for *town*, and quoting a passage about Havelock's father being named Gunter, which may be found in Weever (Ancient Funeral Monuments, fol. Lond. 1631, p. 749), he proceeds: 'that Hauelocke did sometymes reside in Grimsby, may be gathered from a great blew Boundry-stone, lying at y<sup>e</sup> East ende of Briggowgate, which retaines y<sup>e</sup> name of *Hauelock's-Stone* to this day. Agayne y<sup>e</sup> great priuiledges & immunityes, that this Towne hath in Denemarke aboue any other in England (as freedome from Toll, & y<sup>e</sup> rest) may fairely induce a Beleife, that some preceding favour, or good turne called on this remuneration. But lastly (which prooffe I take to be *instar omnium*) the Common Seale of y<sup>e</sup> Towne, & that

a most auncient one,' &c. [Here follows a description of the seal.]

'The singular fact,' adds Sir F. Madden, 'alluded to by Holles, of the Burgesses of Grimsby being free from toll at the Port of Elsineur, in Denmark, is confirmed by the Rev. G. Oliver, in his *Monumental Antiquities of Grimsby*, 8vo, Hull, 1825, who is inclined from that, and other circumstances, to believe the story is not so totally without foundation.' There is also an absurd local story that the church at Grimsby, which has now but one turret, formerly had four, three of which were kicked down by Grim in his anxiety to destroy some hostile vessels. The first fell among the enemy's fleet; the second dropped in Wellowgate, and is now Havelock's stone; the third fell within the churchyard, but the fourth his strength failed to move. Perhaps amongst the most interesting notices of the story are the following words by Sir Henry Havelock, whose family seems to have originally resided in Durham. His own account, however, is this: 'My father, William Havelock, descended from a family which formerly resided at Grimsby in Lincolnshire, and was himself born at Guisborough in Yorkshire<sup>1</sup>.' So that the name of *Havelock* is famous still.

§ 32. **The Grimsby seal.** The last evidence for the legend is the still-existing seal of the corporation of Great Grimsby. The copy of this seal, as it appears in the present edition, is due to the courtesy of J. Hopkin, Esq., of Grimsby, and I here subjoin a description of it, communicated by him, which was first printed, in a slightly different form, in *Notes and Queries*, 2nd Series, vol. xi. p. 41; see also p. 216.

'The ancient Town Seal of Great Grimsby is engraven on a circular piece of brass not very thick; and on the back,

<sup>1</sup> Quoted in Brock's Biography of Sir H. Havelock, 1858; p. 9.

which is rather arched, is a small projecting piece of brass, placed as a substitute for a handle, in order when taking an impression the more easily to detach the matrix from the wax. This seal is in an excellent state of preservation, and is inscribed in Saxon characters "Sigillvm Comunitatis Grimebye" and represents thereon Gryme ("Gryem") who by tradition is reported to have been a native of Souldburg in Denmark, where he gained a precarious livelihood by fishing and piracy; but having, as is supposed, during the reign of Ethelbert<sup>1</sup>, been accidentally driven into the Humber by a furious storm, he landed on the Lincolnshire Coast near Grimsby, he being at this time miserably poor and almost destitute of the common necessities of life; for Leland represents this "poor fisschar" as being so very needy that he was not "able to kepe his sunne Cuaran for poverty." Gryme, finding a capacious haven adapted to his pursuits, built himself a house and commenced and soon succeeded in establishing a very lucrative Trade with Norway, Sweden, and Denmark. Other Merchants having in process of time settled near him, attracted by the commercial advantages offered by this excellent Harbour, they jointly constructed convenient appendages for extensive Trade, and the colony soon rose into considerable importance, and became known at an early period by the name of Grimsby. For not only was Grimsby constituted a borough so early as the seventh century, but Peter of Langtoft speaks of it as a frontier Town and the boundary of a Kingdom erected by the conquests of Egbert in the year 827, which he states included all that portion of the Island which lay between "the maritime Towns of Grymsby and Dover." So that even at that period, Grimsby must have been a place of peculiar strength and importance. Gryme is represented on the seal as a man of gigantic stature with comparatively short hair, a shaven chin, and a moustache, holding in his right hand a drawn sword and bearing on his left arm a circular shield with an ornate boss and rim. The sleeveless tunic above his under-vest is most probably the panzar or panzara of the Danes. Between his feet is a conic object, possibly intended for a helmet, as it resembles the chapelle-de-fer worn by William Rufus on his Great Seal, and which in the laws of Gula is distinguished as the Steel hufe. On the right hand of Gryme stands his protégé Haveloc ("Habloc"), whom, during one of his mercantile excursions soon after his arrival in Lincolnshire, Gryme had the good fortune to save from imminent danger of Shipwreck, and who proved to be the Son of Gunter, King of Denmark, and who was

<sup>1</sup> Æthelbryht of Kent reigned from about 565 to 616.

therefore conveyed to the British Court, where he subsequently received in marriage Goldburgh, the Daughter of the British Sovereign. Above Gryme is represented a hand, being emblematical of the hand of providence by which Haveloc was preserved, and near the hand is the star which marks the point where the inscription begins and ends. Haveloc made such a favourable representation of his preserver at the British and Danish Courts, that he procured for him many honours and privileges. From the British Monarch Gryme, who had already realized an abundance of wealth, received a charter, and was made the chief governor of Grimsby; and the Danish Sovereign granted to the Town an immunity (which is still possessed by the Burgesses of Grimsby) from all Tolls at the Port of Elsinour. Gryme afterwards lived in Grimsby like a petty prince in his Hereditary Dominions. Above Haveloc is represented a crown and in his right hand is a battle-axe, the favourite weapon of the Northmen, and in his left hand is a ring which he is presenting to the British Princess Goldburgh ("Goldebvrgh"), who stands on the left side of Gryme and whose right hand is held towards the Ring. Over her head is a Regal Diadem, and in her left hand is a Sceptre. Sir F. Madden states that it is certain that this seal is at least as old as the time of Edward I (and therefore contemporaneous with the MS.) as the legend is written in a character which after the year 1300 fell into disuse, and was succeeded by the black letter, or *Gothic*.

### § 33. Literature of the subject.

EDITIONS. (1) By Sir F. Madden, 1828; see § 1. (2) By Rev. W. W. Skeat (E. E. T. S.), (a) 1868; (b) 1889; see § 1. (3) By F. Holthausen, in the Series of Old and Middle English Texts edited by L. Morsbach and F. Holthausen, London, 1901; pp. xii, 101.

EXTRACTS. Extracts from the Lay have been printed in the following—(1) R. P. Wülcker, *Altenglisches Lesebuch*, Halle a. S., 1874; contains ll. 2052–2265; Part I. p. 81, with notes at p. 161. (2) *Specimens of Early English*, by R. Morris, Part I, (a) Oxford, 1882; (b) Oxford, 1885; contains ll. 339–748, at pp. 222–236, with notes (a) at p. 352, (b) at p. 356. (3) *An Old and Middle English Reader*, by G. E. Maclean, New York, 1893; contains ll. 1–183 at

pp. 85-90, with notes at p. lvi. (4) J. Zupitza, *Alt- und mittelhochdeutsches Übungsbuch*; 3rd ed., Wien, 1884; 5th ed., Wien and Leipzig, 1897; contains ll. 1-183.

A modern English version of the Lay, by Miss E. Hickey, has just been published (1902) in London; for the Catholic Truth Society.

The results of a collation of the E. E. T. S. edition are given by Hupe, in *Anglia*, vol. xiii. p. 194. I regret that I overlooked this, as it suggests a few corrections which I have missed. In particular, Hupe notes that the MS. has 'þ' where I have printed 'th' in the following instances, viz. þat, 104; þoucte, 197; wrþe, 434; þenkeste, 578; þan, 627; þoucte, 691; þouthe, 790; þe, 1131, 1201; þer offe, 1377. At l. 912, *for yow read* you. The only variations of importance between his reading of the MS. and my own are that he reads 'troud' instead of 'croud' in l. 2338, in which case, *troud* might mean 'trowed, believed'; but it gives a very bad rhyme, and I believe the right reading to be *croð*. Again, in l. 2862, he thinks there is an abbreviation which is to be read as 'trou'; but it is plainly 'tro.'

EMENDATIONS AND NOTES. The text is frequently corrupt; so that it has been necessary to make emendations in several places. The following critics have contributed to their number, and there is a danger that such conjectures may be endlessly increased.

J. Zupitza; in the *Zeitschrift für deutsches Alterthum*, vol. xix. 124, also in *Anglia*, vol. i. 468; further, in *Anglia*, vii. 145.

F. Stratmann; in *Englische Studien*, vol. i. 423; vol. v. 377.

H. Hupe; in *Anglia*, vol. xiii. 197; and see the preceding remarks in the same, beginning at p. 186.



E. Kölbing; in Eng. Studien, vol. xvi. 299; vol. xvii. 297; vol. xix. 146.

W. Heuser; in Eng. Studien, vol. xxvii. 391.

F. Holthausen; in Anglia, vol. xv. 499; vol. xvii. 441; and in An English Miscellany, Oxford, 1900; p. 176.

L. Morsbach; in Eng. Studien, vol. xxix. 368.

**§ 34. French Versions.** The known French versions are that of Gaimar and Le Lai d'Havelok.

EDITIONS OF GAIMAR. (1) By Sir F. Madden, 1828; see § 1. (2) By Petrie, in Monumenta Historica Britannica; London, 1848; i. 764. (3) By T. Wright (Caxton Society), London, 1850. (4) By Sir T. Duffus Hardy and C. F. Martin; in Rerum Britannicarum mediæ aevi scriptores, vol. i; London, 1888. See § 23.

EDITIONS OF LE LAI D'HAVELOC. (1) By Sir F. Madden, 1828; see § 1. (2) By F. Michel, Paris, 1833. (3) By T. Wright (as above). (4) By Sir T. Duffus Hardy and C. F. Martin (as above); i. 290. See § 24.

**§ 35. Discussions and Criticisms.** The following are the chief references, in chronological order.

A. J. Ellis: Early Eng. Pronunciation, part ii; London, 1869; p. 470.

F. Ludorff: Ueber die Sprache des alteng. Lay Havelok; Münster, 1873 (dissertation of Giessen).

G. Storm; in Eng. Studien, 1880; vol. iii. p. 533; reprinted from Christiana Videnskabselskabs Forhandlinger, 1879. (An excellent article, identifying Havelok or Anlaf Curan with Anlaf Sihtricson.) See § 21.

M. Kupferschmidt: Die Haveloksage bei Gaimar und ihr Verhältniss zum Lai d'Havelok; pr. in E. Böhmer's Romanische Studien, vol. iv; Bonn, 1879-1880, p. 411. (A notice

of this in Romania, ix. 480, says that, of the two French versions, neither is derived from the other; that Gaimar's text is the older; and that their common original is also the source of the English Lay. See § 28.)

Ten Brink: *Early Eng. Literature*, tr. by H. M. Kennedy, vol. i; London, 1883. See bk. ii. § 5.

H. L. D. Ward: *Catalogue of Romances in . . . the British Museum*; London, 1883; vol. i. p. 423. (A very useful article.)

L. Hohmann: *Ueber Sprache und Stil des altengl. Lai Havelok*; Marburg, 1886. (He considers Ludorff's dissertation inaccurate and insufficient. In *Anglia*, xiii. 186, Hupe shows that Hohmann also has made several mistakes.)

H. Morley: *English Writers*, vol. iii; London, 1888. (Contains a very full abstract of the story; pp. 267-276.)

J. W. Hales: a letter in *The Athenaeum*, Feb. 23, 1889; repr. in *Folia Litteraria*, London, 1893; p. 30.

P. Wohlfeil: *The Lay of Havelok the Dane*; Leipzig, 1890. (Kölbing is of opinion that this dissertation tells us nothing new; see *Eng. Studien*, xvi. 299, note.)

A. Brandl: in *Paul's Grundriss*; vol. ii. part 1, p. 644. (Very brief.)

G. Wittenbrinck: *Zur Kritik und Rhythmik des altengl. Lais von Havelok: wissenschaftliche Beigabe zum Osterprogramm 1891 des Gymnasium Arnoldinum zu Burgsteinfurt*. (See the interesting and useful notice of this by E. Kölbing, in *Eng. Studien*, xvi. 299.)

A. Ahlström: *Studier i den fornfranska lais-litteraturen*; a dissertation published at Upsala, 1892. ('See especially pp. 32 and 119; and compare Freymond in *Volksöller's*

Kritischer Jahresbericht über die Fortschritte der roman. Phil. iii. 2 ; p. 163.—Holthausen.)

Twelve Facsimiles of Old English Manuscripts ; edited by W. W. Skeat ; Oxford, 1892. (Plate VII represents fol. 207, back ; ll. 632-721. In the transcription, read 'grey pede' in l. 706.)

R. Wülker : Geschichte der engl. Literatur ; Leipzig, 1896 ; p. 644. (A popular account.)

I. Gollancz : Hamlet in Iceland ; London, 1898. Introduction ; § III. (Should be consulted.)

E. K. Putnam : The Lambeth Version of Havelok ; Baltimore, 1900. Pp. 1-19. (See § 28.)

Anna H. Billings : A Guide to the Middle English Metrical Romances ; New York, 1901. Discusses 'Havelok the Dane' ; § 3, pp. 15-24. (A useful summary of results.)

Dictionary of National Biography ; article on Olaf Sitricson in vol. 42.

The Geste of Kyng Horn ; edited by Joseph Hall, M.A. Oxford, 1901. (Describes the MS. ; pp. viii-x.) And see p. 126 of the present volume.

---

My thanks are due to my friend Professor Hales for various hints ; to J. Hopkin, Esq. (see p. liv) ; and to Mr. Gollancz. I have also derived much assistance from the edition by Professor Holthausen, and from the criticisms enumerated above.

CAMBRIDGE,

August, 1902.

manuscript  
incubation

# INCIPIT VITA HAUELOK

QUONDAM

## REX ANGLIE ET DENEMARCHIE

**H**ERKNETH to me, gode men, [Fol. 204, col. 1.]

Wiues, maydnes, and alle men, —

Of a tale ich you wil telle,

Hwo-so it wile here, and þer-to duelle.

þe tale of Hauelok is i-maked;

Hwil he was litel, he yedę ful naked.

Hauelok was a ful god gome,

He was ful god in eueri trome,

He was þe wihtest man at nede

þat þurte ride on ani stede.

þat ye mowen nou y-here,

And þe tale ye mowen y-lere.

At þe biginning of vre tale,

Fil me a cuppe of ful god ale;

And [y] wilę drinken, er y spelle,

þat Crist vs shilde alle fro helle!

Krist late vs euere so to do

þat we moten comen him to;

And, with-þat it mote ben so,

[Wherever corrected forms are given in the text, the exact forms in the MS. are quoted in the footnotes.]

- |                      |   |              |
|----------------------|---|--------------|
| 1. Herknet.          | 3. tale þat ich (þat is <i>superfluous</i> ); wile. | 4. Wo.       |
| 5. is of hauelok.    | 6. Wil.   | 9. wicteste. |
| 15. I supply y; her. | 17. heuere so for to.                               | 19. wil.     |

*Benedicamus domino!*

20

Here y schal biginnen a rym,

Krist us yeue wel god fyn!

The rym is maked of Hauelok,

A stalworpi man *in* a flok;

He was þe [wihtest] man at nede

25

þat may riden on ani stede.

IT was a king bi are dawes,

þat *in* his time werę gode lawes

He dede maken, and ful wel holden;

Him louęde yung, him louęden olde,

30

Erl and barun, dreng and thayn,

Kniht, [and] bondeman, and swain,

Wydues, maydnes, prestes and clerkes,

And al for hise gode werkes.

He louęde god with al his miht,

35

And holi kirke, and soth, and riht;

Riht-wise men he louede alle,

And oueral made hem forto calle;

Wreieręs and robberęs made he falle,

And hated hem so man doth galle;

40

Vtlawes and theues made he bynde,

Alle that he mihte fynde,

And heye hengen on galwe-tre;

For hem ne yede gold ne fe.

In þat time a man þat bore

45

[Wel fifty pund, y wot, or more,]

Of rede gold up-on his bac,

[Fol. 204, col. 2.]

25. stalworpeste (*read* wihtest, *as in* l. 9). 29. an. 30.  
 Hym; louede holde. 31. kayn (!). 32. Knict. 35. micth.  
 36. ant rich. 37. Rirth (!). 39. wrobberes (!). 42.  
 micthe. 46. *Supplied from conjecture; cf. ll. 653, 787.*  
 47. red; hys.

In a male hwit or blac,  
 Ne funde he non þat him misseyde,  
 N[e] hond on [him] with iuele leyde. 50  
 Þanne mihte chapmen fare  
 Þurhut Englund with here ware,  
 And baldelike beye and sellen,  
 Oueral þer he wilen dwellen,  
 In gode burwes, and þer-fram 55  
 Ne funden he non þat dede hem sham,  
 Þat he ne weren to sorwe brouht,  
 And pouere maked, and browht to nouht.  
 Þanne was Engeland at aye;  
 Michel was svich a king to preyse, 60  
 Þat held so Engeland in grith!  
 Krist of heuene was him with.  
 He was Engelandes blome;<sup>74</sup>  
 Was non so bold [þe] lond to rome,  
 Þat durste upon his [menie] bringe 65  
 Hunger, ne [othere] wicke þinge.  
 Hwan he feleðe hise foos,  
 He made hem lurken, and crepen in wros:  
 Þei hidden hem alle, and helden hem stille,  
 And diden al his herte wille. 70  
 Riht he loueðe of alle þinge,  
 To wronge nicht him no man bringe,  
 Ne for siluer, ne for gold:—  
 So was he [of] his soule hold.  
 To þe faderles was he rath, 75

48. with. 50. N with iuele on hond leyde; *but see* l. 994.  
 51. micthe. 52. þuruth; wit. 57. weren sone to (*omit*  
 sone); brouht. 58. An; browt; nouth. 59. athayse (*sic*).  
 61. englund. 64. *I supply* þe. 65. *I supply* menie; bringhe.  
 66. here (*but read* othere); þinghe. 69. þe (*for* þel). 71.  
 Ricth. 74. *I supply* of.

Hwo-so dede hem wrong or lath,  
 Were it clerç, or were it kniht,  
 He dede hem sone to hauen riht;  
 And hwo-[so] dide widuen wrong,  
 Were he neure kniht so strong 80  
 Þat he ne made him sone kesten  
 In feteres, and ful faste festen;  
 And hwo-so dide maydne shame  
 Of hire bodi, or brouht in blame,  
 Bute it were bi hire wille, 85  
 He made him sone of limes spille.  
 He was þe beste kniht at nede  
 Þat euere mihte riden on stede,  
 Or wepne wagge, or folc vt lede;  
 Of kniht ne hauēde he neuere drede, 90  
 Þat he ne sprong forth so sparke of glede,  
 And lete him [knaue] of hisē hand-dede,

[Fol. 204 b, col. 1.]

Hu he coupe with wepne spede;  
 And oþer he reſte him hors or wede,  
 Or made him sone handes sprede, 95  
 And 'louerd, *mercil*' loude grede.  
 He was large, and no wiht gned;e;  
 Hauēde he [neure] so god brede,  
 Ne on his bord *non* so god shrede,  
 Þat he ne wolde þorwith fede 100  
 Poure þat on fote yede;  
 Forto hauen of him þe mede  
 Þat for vs wolde on rode blede,

76. Wo.      77. knieth.      78. rich.      79. wo; didē.  
 80. knieth.      82. And in feteres ful.      83. wo.      84. brouth.  
 86. Ke (!).      87. Ke waste; knith.      88. heuere micthe.      90.  
 knith.      92. I supply knawe.      93. Hw.      97. wicth.      98.  
*non* (read neure).      99. ð (for non).      100. þorwit.

Crist, that al kan wisse and rede  
 þat euere woneth in ani þede.

105

¶ Þe king was hoten Apelwold,  
 Of word, of wepne he was bold;  
 In Engeland was neure kniht,  
 þat betere held þe lond to riht.  
 Of his bodi ne hauēde he eyr  
 Bute a mayden swiþe fayr,  
 þat was so yung þat sho ne couþe  
 Gon on fote, ne speke with mouþe.  
 þan him tok an iuel strong,  
 þat he wel wiste, and under-fond,  
 þat his deth was comen him on:  
 And seyde, 'Crist, hwat shal y don?  
 Louerd, hwat shal me to rede?  
 I wot ful wel ich haue mi mede.  
 Hu shal nou mi douhter fare?  
 Of hire haue ich michel kare;  
 Sho is mikel in mi þouht,  
 Of me self is me riht nowht.  
 No selcouth is, þouh me be wo;  
 Sho ne kan speke, ne sho kan go.  
 Yif scho couþe on horse ride,  
 And a thousand men bi hire syde;  
 And sho werē comen in-til elde,  
 And Engeland sho couþe welde;  
 And don of hem [þat] hire werē queme,  
 And hire bodi couþe yeme,

110

115

120

125

130

- |                                       |  |                                    |             |
|---------------------------------------|--|------------------------------------|-------------|
| 108. knieth.                          | 109. hel; rich.                              | 113. wit.                          | 115. we(l); |
| fong; <i>but read fond; see note.</i> | 117. wat.                                    | 118. wat.                          |             |
| 119. woth.                            | 120. W (= Hw = Hu).                          | 122. þouth.                        | 123.        |
| riht nowt.                            | 124. þou.                                    | 127. <i>Perhaps omit And (H.);</i> | thousande.  |
| 128. helde.                           | 130. don hem of þar; ( <i>read þat G.</i> ). | 131. an.                           |             |



Ne wolde me neuere iuele like,  
 Ne þouh ich were *in* heuene-rike!

QUAANE he hauede þis pleinte maked,  
 þer-after stronglike [he] quaked. 135  
 He sende writes sone on-on  
 After his erles euere-ich on; [Fol. 204 b, col. 2.]  
 And after his̅e baruns, riche and poure,  
 Fro Rokesburw al into Douere,  
 That he shulden comen swiþe 140  
 Til him, that was ful vnblife,  
 To þat stede þer he lay  
 In harde bondes, niht and day.  
 He was so faste with yuel fest,  
 þat he ne mouhte haue no rest; 145  
 He ne mouhte no mete ete,  
 Ne he ne mouhte no lype gete;  
 Ne non of his iuel coupe red;  
 Of him ne was nouht buten ded.

ALLE þat þe writes herden 150  
 Sorful and sori til him ferd̅en;  
 He wrungen hondes, and wepen sore,  
 And yerne preyden Cristes ore,  
 þat he [wolde] turnen him  
 Vt of þat yuel þat was so grim! 155  
 þanne he weren comen alle  
 Bifor þe king into the halle,  
 At Winchēstre þer he lay:

133. Me þou; riche; (cf. ll. 2400, 2804). 142. þe (!). 143.  
 nichth. 144. wit. 145, 146. mouthe. 146. hete.  
 147. mouchte. 148. þat coupe (*I omit þat*). 149. nouth.  
 151. an. 153. hore. 154. *I supply* wolde.

'Welcome,' he seyde, 'be ye ayl  
Ful michel þank[e] kan [y] yow 160  
That ye arē comen to me now!'

QUAENE he weren alle set,  
And þe king hauēden i-gret,  
He greten, and gouleden, and gouen hem ille,  
And he bad hem allē ben stille; 165  
And seyde, 'þat greting helpeth nouht,  
For al to dede am ich brouht.  
Butē nou ye sen þat i shal deye,  
Nou ich willē you alle preye  
Of mi douhter þat shal be 170  
Yure leuēdi after me,  
Hwo may yemen hire so longe,  
Boþen hire and Engelonde,  
Til þat she wuman [be] of elde,  
And þat she mowe [hir] yemen and welde?' 175  
He ansuerēden, and seyden an-on,  
Bi [Iesu] Crist and bi seint Ion,  
That þerl Godrigh of Cornwayle  
Was trewe man, with-uten faile;  
Wis man of red, wis man of dede, 180  
And men hauēden of him mikel drede.  
'He may alper-best hire yeme, [Fol. 205, col. 1.]  
Til þat she mowe wel ben quene.'

PE king was payed of that rede;  
A wel fair cloth bringen he dede, 185  
And þer-on leyde þe messebok,

163. aueden.	166. nouth.	167. brouth.	168. nov.
170. douthen.	172. Wo.	174. wman; supply be (Z.).	
179. wit.	175. þa; supply hir (H.).	177. Supply Iesu (E.).	
	182. hire alper-best.	184. Rede.	185. wol.

þe caliz, and þe pateyn ok/ *l*  
 þe corporaus, þe messe-gere;  
 þer-on he garte þe erl suere,  
 þat he sholde yemen hirę wel, 190  
 With-uten lac, with-uten tel,  
 Til þat she were tuelf winter old,  
 And of speche were bold;  
 And þat she couþe of curteysye  
 [Don,] and speken of luue-drurye; 195  
 And til þat she louen mouhte  
 Hwom so hirę to gode thouhte;  
 And þat he shulde hire yeue  
 þe [hexte] man þat mihte liue,  
 þe beste, fayreste, the strangest ok:— 200  
 þat dede he him sweren on þe bok.  
 And þanne shulde he Engeland  
 Al bitechen in-to hirę hond.

QUANNE þat was sworn on [þis] wise,  
 þe king dede þe mayden arise, 205  
 And þe erl hirę bitauhte,  
 And al the lond he euere awhte  
 [Of] Engelande, eueri del;  
 And preide, he shulde yeme hirę wel.

ÞE king ne mowhte don no more, 210  
 But yerne preyęde Godes ore;  
 And dede him hoslen wel and shriue

191. wit. 192. For tuelf perhaps read twenti; see l. 259 (if so, omit þat); bold. 194. couþe. 195. Gon (read Don).  
 196. mithe(!); see l. 257. 197. Wom; thoucte. 199. beste (read hexte, as in l. 1080); micthe. 204. Ouanne (!); his (read þis). 206. bitaucte. 207. awcte. 208. I supply Of. 210. mowcte.

I wot, fif hundred siþe and fue; 215  
 And ofte dede him sore swinge,  
 And with hondes smerte dinge;  
 So þat þe blod ran of his fleysh,  
 þat tendre was, and swiþe neysh. . . .  
 And sone gaf it euere-ilk del;  
 He made his quiste swiþe wel.  
 Hwan it was yeuen, ne mihte men finde 220  
 So mikel men mihte him in winde, (so much as men might in  
 Of his in arke, ne in chiste; him in)  
 In Engelond, þat noman wiste:  
 For al was yeuen, faire and wel,  
 þat him was leued no catel. 225

**P**AVNE he hauede ben ofte swungen,  
 Ofte shriuen, and ofte dungen, [Fol. 205, col. 2.]  
 'In manus tuas,' loude he seyde,  
 Er þat he þe speche leyde;  
 To Iesu Crist bigan to calle, 230  
 And deyede biforn his heyemen alle.  
 þan he was ded, þeþe mihte men se  
 þe meste sorwe that mihte be;  
 þer was sobbing, siking, and sor,  
 Handes wringing, and drawing bi hor. 235  
 Alle greten swiþe sore,  
 Riche and poure þat þeþe wore;  
 And mikel sorwe haueden alle,  
 Leuedyes in boure, knihtes in halle.

213. woth; siþes.      214. An.      215. wit.      216. fleys.  
 217. neys. Some lines appear to be wanting here, such as—  
     'He pouhte his quiste þan to make,  
     His catel muste he wel bitake,' &c.  
 Z. transposes ll. 218, 219.      218. il.      220. Wan; gouen; michte.  
 221. michte.      224. youen.      226. swngen.      229. Her.  
 232, 233. michte.      238. An.      239. knichtes.

UAN þat sorwe was somdel laten, 240  
 And (he) haueden longe graten,  
 Belles deden he sone ringen,  
 Monkes and prestes messe singen;  
 And sauteres deden he manie reden,  
 þat God self shulde his soule leden 245  
 Into heuene, biforn his sone,  
 And þer with-uten ende wone.  
 þan he was to þe erþe brouht,  
 þe riche erl ne foryat nouht,  
 þat he ne dede al Engeland 250  
 Sone sayse intil his hond;  
 And in þe castels let he do  
 þe knihtes he mihte tristen to;  
 And alle þe Englis dede he sweren,  
 þat he him shulden god fey beren; 255  
 He yaf alle men þat god [him] þouhte,  
 Liuen and deyen til þat [he] mouhte,  
 Til þat þe kinges dowhter wore  
 Tuenti winter old, and more.

ÞAVNE he hauede taken þis oth 260  
 Of erles, baruns, lef and loth,  
 Of knihtes, cherles, fre and þewe,  
 Iustises dede he maken newe,  
 Al Engeland to faren þorw,  
 Fro Douere into Rokesborw. 265  
 Schiréues he sette, bedels, and greyues,  
 Grith-sergeans, with longe gleyues,

247. wit uten hende. 248. brouth. 249. nouth. 252. leth.  
 253. knictes; michte. 254. swere (*see* l. 255). 255. he shulden  
 him ghod. 256. *I supply* him; þouhte. 257. him (*read* he);  
 mouhte. 258. dowter. 259. hold. 262. knictes. 267. wit.

To yemen wilde wodes and papes  
 Fro wicke men, that wolde don scapes;  
 And forto hauen alle at his cri,  
 At his wille, at his merci;  
 Þat non him durste ben ageyn, [Fol. 205 b, col. 1.]  
 Erl ne barun, kniht ne sweyn.  
 Wislike, for sothe, was him wel  
 Of folc, of wepne, of catel.  
 Soplike, in a litel prawe,  
 Al Engeland of him stod awe;  
 Al Engeland was of him adrad  
 So is þe best<sup>est</sup>e fro þe gad.

ÞE kinges douhter gan [to] priue,  
 And wex þe fayrest wuman on liue.  
 Of alle þewes was she wis,  
 Þat gode weren, and of pris.  
 Þe mayden Goldeboru was hoten;  
 For hire was mani a ter igroten.

QUANNE þe Erl Godrich him herde  
 Of þat mayden, hu wel she ferde;  
 Hu wis sho was, hu chaste, hu fayr,  
 And þat sho was þe rihte eyr  
 Of Engeland, of al þe rike:—  
 Þo bigan Godrich to sike,  
 And seyde, 'Hweper she sholde be  
 Quen and leuēdi ouer me?  
 Hweper sho sholde al Engeland,

272. durste ben him. 273. knict. 274. soth. 276.  
 te (!). 278. adred, altered to adrad. 279. his. 280. douthter  
 igan; read douhter gan to H. 281. wman. 282. w (!); for was.  
 87. hw we he ferde (!). 288. Hw; w (for 2nd hu); hw. 289.  
 the. 292. weper.

And me, and mine, *hauen in* hire hond?     295  
 Dapeit hwo it hire thaue!  
 Shal sho it *neuere* more haue.  
 Sholde ic yeue a fol, a þerne,  
 Engeland, þouh sho it yerne?  
 Dapeit hwo it hire yeue     300  
 Euere-more hwil i liue!  
 Sho is waxen al to prud,  
 For gode metes, and noble shrud,  
 Þat ic haue youen hire to ofte;  
 Ic haue yemed hire to softe.     305  
 Shal it nouht ben als sho þenkes:  
 "Hofe maketh fol man ofte *blenkes*."  
 Ich haue a sone, a ful fayr knaue,  
 He shal Engeland al haue.  
 He shal [ben] king, he shal ben sire,     310  
 So brouke i *euere* mi blake swire!'

**H**WAN þis *trayson* was al þouht,  
 Of his oth ne was him nouht.  
 He let his oth al ouer-ga,  
 Þerof ne yaf he nouht a stra;     315  
 But sone dede hire fete,  
 Er he wolde eten ani mete,     [Fol. 205 b, col. 2.]  
 Fro Winchéstre, þer sho was,  
 Also a wicke *traytúr* Iudas;  
 And dede leden hire to Doure,     320  
 Þat standeth on þe seis oure;  
 And þerinne dede hire fede  
 Poureluke in feble wede.

299. þou.	302. alto.	304. hic; ofte.	305. Hic.
306. nouth.	310. I supply ben.	312. þouth.	313.
nouth.	315. nouth.	317. heten.	322. þerhinne.

Ʒe castel dede he yemen so  
 Ʒat non ne mihte comen hire to 325  
 Of hire frend, with [hir] to speken,  
 Ʒat euere mihte hire bale wreken.

OF Goldeboru shul we nou laten,  
 Ʒat nouht ne blinneth forto *graten*  
 Ʒet sho liggeth in prisoun: 330  
 Iesu Crist, that Lazarun  
 To liue brouhte fro dede bondes,  
 He lese hire with hise hondes;  
 And leue sho mo[te] him y-se  
 Heye hangen on galwe-tre, 335  
 Ʒat hire hauēd in sorwe brouht,  
 So as sho ne misdede nouht! ✓

SAY we nou forth in ure spellē!  
 In Ʒat time, so it bifellē,  
 Was in Ʒe lond of Denemark 340 ✓  
 A riche king, and swyƷe stark.  
 Ʒe name of him was Birkabeyn,  
 He hauēde mani kniht and sueyn,  
 He was fayr man, and [swiƷe] wiht,  
 Of bodi he was Ʒe beste kniht 345  
 Ʒat euere mihte leden ut here,  
 Or stede on ride, or handlen spere.  
 Ʒre children hauēde he bi his wif,  
 He hem louēde so his lif.

325. michte.	327. heuere michte.	329. nouth.	332.
oucte.	333. wit.	334. mo (!); see l. 406 (Z.).	336.
outh.	337. nouth.	338. Sawe nou; hure.	340. lon.
2. Ʒ (for Ʒe).	343. knicht.	344. I supply swiƷe (see l. 1651);	
cth.	345. knichth.	346. michte; uth.	347. onne.
	348. hauede; read hauede he H.		348.



He hauȝde a sone [and] douhtres two, 350  
 Swiȝe fayre, as fel it so.  
 He ȝat wile non forbere,  
 Riche ne poure, king ne kaysere,  
 Deth him tok ȝan he best wolde  
 Liuen, but hyse dayes were fulde; 355  
 ȝat he ne mouhte no more liue,  
 For gold ne siluer, ne for no gyue.

**H**WAN he ȝat wiste, rape he sende  
 After prestes fer and hende,  
 Chanounes gode, and monkes beȝe, 360  
 Him for to wisse, and to rede;  
 Him for to hoslen, and forto shriue, [Fol. 208, col. 1.]  
 Hwil his bodi were on liue.

**H**WAN he was hosled [wel] and shriuen,  
 His quiste maked, and for him gyuen, 365  
 His knihtes dede he alle site;  
 For ȝorw hem he wolde wite  
 Hwo mihte yeme hisȝ children yunge,  
 Til ȝat he kouȝen speken with tunge;  
 Speken and gangen, on horse riden, 370  
 Knihtes and sweynes bi herȝ siden.  
 He spoken ȝer-of, and chosen sone  
 A riche man [ȝat,] under mone,  
 Was ȝe trewest, [as] he wende,  
 Godard, ȝe kinges oun frende; 375

354. bes (f). 356. moucte. 357. gol. 359. an.  
 360. boȝe. 361. forthm to (the *hm* being expuncted); Rede.  
 362. hoslon an. 364. Insert wel H. 366. knictes. 368.  
 micte. 369. wit. 371. Knictes an. 372. offe.  
 373. --- under; read ȝat under Z. 374. ȝat he; read as he Z.

And seyden, he mouchte hem best loke,  
 Yif þat he hem vndertoke,  
 Til hise sone mouhte bere  
 Helm on heued, and leden vt here,  
 In his hand a spere stark, 380  
 And king ben maked of Denemark.  
 He wel trowede þat he seyde,  
 And on Godard handes leyde ;  
 And seyde, ' Herę bi-teche i þe  
 Mine children alle þre, 385  
 Al Denemark, and al mi fe,  
 Til þat mi sone of elde be ;  
 But þat ich wille, þat þou suere  
 On auter, and on messe-gere,  
 On þe belles þat men ringes, 390  
 On messe-bok þe prest on singes,  
 Þat þou minę children shalt wel yeme,  
 Þat hire kin be ful wel queme,  
 Til mi sone mowe ben kniht ;  
 Þanne biteche him þo his riht, 395  
 Denemark, and þat þertil longes,  
 Casteles and tunes, wodes and wonges.'

GODARD stirt up, and swor al þat  
 Þe king him bad, and siþen sat 400  
 Bi þe knihtes, þat þer ware,  
 Þat wepen alle swiþe sare  
 For þe king þat deide sone :  
 Iesu Crist, that makede mone  
 On þe mirke niht to shine,

376. Mouchte.  
 92. we (l).  
 oo. knictes.

378. Mouthe.  
 394. knicth.  
 404. nith.

387. helde.  
 395. Ricth.

388. þo.  
 398. an.

Wite his soule fro helle pine; 405  
 And leue þat it mote wone  
 In heuenę-riche with Godes sone! [Fol. 206, col. 2.]

H WAN Birkabeyn was leyd in graue,  
 þe erl dede sone takę þe knaue,  
 Hauelok, þat was þe eir, 410  
 Swanborow, his sister, Elfred, þe [fair,  
 And in þe castel dede hem do,  
 þer non ne mihte hem comen to  
 Of here kyn, þer þei sperd wore;  
 þer he greten ofte sore, 415  
 Boþe for hunger and for kold,  
 Or he weręn þre winter old.  
 Feblelike he gaf hem clopes,  
 He ne yaf a note of [alle] hise opes;  
 He hem [ne] clopedę riht, ne fedde, 420  
 Ne hem dedę richelike be-bedde.  
 þanne Godard was sikerlike  
 Vnder God þe moste swike,  
 þat eure in erþe shaped was,  
 With-uten on, þe wike Iudas. 425  
 Hauē he þe malisun to-day  
 Of alle þat eure speken may!  
 Of patriarke, and of pope,  
 And of prest with loken kope,  
 Of monękes and hermites boþe! 430  
 And of þe leue holi rode  
 [þar] God him-selue ran on blode!

411. helþed þe toþer (*which will not rhyme*); read þe fair; cf. ll. 605-6. 412. he hem; omit he. 413. michte. 414. wore; but see l. 237. 417. hold. 419. I supply alle. 420. I supply ne; rith. 421. ne dede; omit ne. 428. patriark. 430, 431, 432 rhyme together; holi rode written over an erasure. 432. þat.

Crist him warie with his mouth !  
 Waried wurthe he of norþ and suth !  
 Of alle men, þat speken kunne, (can) 435  
 Of Crist, þat made mone and sunne !  
 Þanne he hauēde of al þe lond  
 Þe folk al tilled in-til his hond,  
 And alle hauēden sworn him oth,  
 Riche and poure, lef and loth, 440  
 Þat he sholden hisē wille freme,  
 And þat he shulden him nouht grēme,  
 He þouhte a ful strong trechery,  
 A trayson and a felony,  
 Of þe children forto make : 445  
 Þe deuel of helle him sone take !

**H**WAN þat was þouht, onon he ferde  
 To þe tour þer he worēn sperde,  
 þer he greten for hunger and cold :  
 Þe knaue, þat was sumdel bold, 450  
 Kam him ageyn, on knes him sette,  
 And Godard ful feyre he þer grette. [Fol. 206 b, col. 1.]  
 And Godard seyde, 'What is you?  
 Hwi grete ye and goulē nou?'  
 'For us hungreth swiþe sore :— 455  
 Seyden, he wolden [hauen] more :—  
 'We ne hauē to ete, ne we ne haue  
 Herinne neyther kniht ne knaue!  
 Þat yeuēth us drinken, ne no mete,  
 Haluēdel þat we moun ete. 460

433. warie him.	434. wrthe.	435. Offe; man.	436.
maude.	438. Al þe folk.	442. shulde; nouth.	443.
þouthe.	447. þouth.	453. wat; yw.	456. I supply
hauen.	457. hete.	458. knith.	

Wo is us þat we werēn born!  
 Weilawei! nis it no korn  
 þat men mihte maken of bred?  
 Us hungreth [so], we arēn ney ded.'

GODARD herde here wa, 465  
 Ther-of yaf he nouht a stra,  
 But tok þe maydnes bothe samen,  
 Al-so it were up-on his gamen;  
 Al-so he wolde with hem leyke,  
 þat werēn for hunger grene and bleike. 470  
 Of boþen he [shar] on-two here protes,  
 And sipen [karf] hem alto grotes.  
 þer was sorwe, hwo so it sawe,  
 Hwan þe children bi þe wawe  
 Leyen and spraleden in þe blod: 475  
 Hauelok it saw, and þer-bi stod.  
 Ful sori was þat seli knaue,  
 Mikel dred he mouhte haue;  
 For at hisē herte he saw a knif,  
 For to reuen him hisē lyf. 480  
 But þe knaue, þat litel was,  
 He kneledeþ bifore þat Iudas,  
 And seyde, 'Louerd, merci nou!  
 Manrede, louerd, bidði you!  
 Al Denemark i wilē you yeue, 485  
 To þat forward þu latē me liue;  
 Here i wile on boke swere,  
 þat neure more ne shal i bere

463. michte. 464. þs (for ws = us); see l. 455: supply so. 466.  
 offe; nouth. 468. hiis. 471. karf; read shar (as in l. 1413);  
 karf belongs to l. 472, where I supply it. 473. wo. 474.  
 þ (for þe). 476. þe (for þere = þer). 478. mounthe. 481.  
 kaue (!). 482. bifor. 483. nov. 487. hi.

Ayen þe, louerd, sheld ne spere,  
 Ne oþer wepne that may you dere. 490  
 Louerd, haue merci of me!  
 To-day i wilę fro Denemark fle,  
 Ne neuere more comen ageyn:  
 Sweren y wolę, þat Bircabein  
 Neuere yete me ne gat:— 495  
 Hwan þe deucl herde þat,  
 Sum-del bigan him forto rewe; [Fol. 206 b, col. 2.]  
 With-drow þe knif, þat was lewe  
 Of þe seli children blod.  
 Þer was miracle fair and god, 500  
 Þat he þe knaue nouht ne slou,  
 But for rewnesse him with-drow.  
 Of Hauelok rewede him ful sore,  
 [Al-þouh] he wolde þat he ded wore,  
 But-on þat he nouht with his hend 505  
 Ne drepe him [mouhte], þat fule fend!  
 Þouhte he, als he him bi-stod,  
 Starinde als he were wod:  
 'Yif y late him liues go,  
 He mihte me wirchen michel wo. 510  
 Grith ne get y neuere mo,  
 He may [me] waiten for to slo;  
 And yf he were brouht of liue,  
 And mine children wolden thriue,  
 Louerdinges after me 515  
 Of al Denemark mihten he be.

489. shel.

501. nouth.

w (p), not þ.

505. nouth wit.

510. michte.

micten.

490. wepne bere; omit bere.

502. fo (sic); wit, where the initial letter is an A.S.

503. auelok.

506. nouth; read mouhte.

512. I supply me.

496. hede.

504. And þoucte; read Al-þouh.

507. þoucte.

513. brout.

516.

God it wite, he shal ben ded,  
 Wile i taken non oper red;  
 I shal do casten him in þe se,  
 Þer i wilę þat he drenched be; 520  
 Abouten his hals an anker god,  
 þat he ne flete in the flod.  
 Þer anon he dede sende  
 After a fishere, þat he wende  
 þat [he] wolde al his wille do, 525  
 And sone anon he seyde him to:  
 'Grim, þou wost þu art mi þral;  
 Wiltu don mi wille al  
 þat i wilę [nou] bidden þe,  
 To-morwen [i] shal maken þe fre, 530  
 And auhte þe yeuen, and riche make,  
 With-þan þu wilt þis [knaue] take,  
 And leden him with þe to-niht,  
 þan þou sest þe mone-liht,  
 In-to þe se, and don him þer-inne; 535  
 Al wile [i] taken on me þe sinne.'  
 Grim tok þe child, and bowd him faste,  
 Hwil þe bondes mihte laste,  
 þat weren of ful stronge line:—  
 þo was Haelok in ful strong pine. 540  
 Wiste he neuere er hwat was wo:  
 Lesu Crist, þat makedę go [Fol. 207, col. 1.]  
 þe halte, and þe doumbe speke,  
 Haelok, þe of Godard wreke!

519. she (i); read se. 520. drench. 525. Supply he.  
 528. Wile; see 681. 529. Supply nou. 530. Supply i. 531.  
 aucte. 532. child; read knaue. 533. nicht. 534. se (sic)  
 Mone lith. 536. Supply i. 538. miete. 539. strong.  
 540. For ful strong read stronge. 541. her wat. 542. to go;  
 om. to H. 543, 544. speken, wreken (with n in later hand).

**H**WAN Grim him hauȝde faste bounden, 545  
 And siȝen in an old cloth wounden, . .  
 A keuel of clutes, ful un-wraste,  
 Þat he [ne] mouhte speke, ne fnaste,  
 Hwere he wolde him bere or lede.  
 Hwan he hauȝde don þat dede, 550  
 [As] þe swike him [bad], he yede,  
 Þat he schulde him forth [lede]  
 And him drenchen in þe se—  
 Þat forwardȝ [þan] makȝden he.  
 In a poke, ful and blac, 555  
 Sone he caste him on his bac,  
 And bar him hom to hise cleue,  
 And bi-taucte him dame Leue,  
 And seyde, 'Wite þou þis knaue,  
 Al-so thou [wilt] mi lif [nou saue]; 560  
 I shal him drenchen in þe se,  
 For him sholȝ we ben maked fre,  
 Gold hauen ynou, and oȝer fe;  
 Þat hauȝth mi louerd bihoten me.'

**H**WAN dame [Leue] herde þat, 565  
 Vp she stirte, and nouht ne sat,  
 And caste þe knaue so harde adoune,  
 Þat he crakedȝ þer his croune  
 Ageyn a gret ston, þer it lay:  
 Þo Hauelok mihtȝ sei, 'Weilaweil 570  
 Þat euere was i kinges bern—

546. eld; wnden. *A line or two lost; see note.* 548. *Supply*  
 ne; mouthe. 551. Hwan (*read* As); hauede; *read* bad. 552.  
*Supply* lede (*see* l. 533). 553. drinchen (*see* l. 583). 554. *Supply*  
 þan. 557. Ant. 560. with; *read* wilt G.; *supply* nou; haue;  
*read* saue H. 561. dreinchen him (*see* l. 553). 564. hauet.  
 565. *Supply* Leue. 566. nouth. 567. adoun so harde. 568.  
 þat hise croune he þer crakede. 570. micte.



þat him ne hauðe grip or ern,  
 Leoun or wulf, wuluine or bere,  
 Or oþer best, þat wolde him dere !'  
 So lay þat child to middel niht, 575  
 þat Grim bad Leue bringen liht,  
 For to don on [him] his cloþes :  
 'Ne thenkestu nowht of mine oþes  
 þat ich haue mi louerd sworn ?  
 Ne wile i nouht be [nou] forloren. 580  
 I shal him beren to þe se,  
 þou wost þat [so bi-]houes me ;  
 And i shal drenchen him þer-inne ;  
 Ris up swiþe, and go þu binne,  
 And blou þe fir, and liht a kandel :'  
585  
 Als she shulde hiþe cloþes handel  
 On forto don, and blawe þe fir, [Fol. 207, col. 2.]  
 She saw þer-inne a liht ful shir,  
 Also briht so it werþ day,  
 Aboutþe þe knaue þer he lay. 590  
 Of hiþe mouth it stod, a stem,  
 Als it were a sunnebem ;  
 Also liht was it þer-inne  
 So þer brenden cerges inne.  
 'Iesu Crist !' [quath] dame Leue, 595  
 'Hwat is þat liht in ure cleue !  
 [Ris] up, Grim, lokþ hwat it menes,  
 Hwat is þe liht [hereþ], as þou wenes ?'  
 He stirten boþe up to the knaue—

573. wlf wluine.	575. nichth.	576. lict.	577. Supply
him.	578. thenkeste nowt.	580. nouth ; supply nou.	581.
beren him.	582. Supply so bi.	584. an.	585. lith.
þer (for þe).	588. lith.	589. brith.	593. lith.
595. wat ; read quath, as in l. 606.		596. lith ; vre.	597. Sir
(for Ris) and loken (em. and) ; wat.		598. lith ; supply here.	

'For man shal god wille haue'— 600  
 Vnkeueleðen him, and swiþe unbounden,  
 And sone anon [upon] him funden,  
 Als he tiruðen of his serk,  
 On his riht shuldre a kynne-merk; *mark of pedigree*  
 A swiþe briht, a swiþe fair: 605  
 'Goddot!' quath Grim, 'þis ure eir  
 þat shal [ben] louerd of Denemark,  
 He shal ben king, strong and stark;  
 He shal haue*n* in his hand  
 Al Denemark and Engeland; 610  
 He shal do Godard ful [gret] wo,  
 He shal him hangen, or quik [do] flo;  
 Or he shal him al quik [do] graue,  
 Of him shal he no *merci* haue.'  
 þus seide Grim, and sore gret, 615  
 And sone fel him to þe fet,  
 And seide, 'Louerd, haue *merci*  
 Of me, and Leue, þat is me bi!  
 Louerd, we ari*n* boþe þine,  
 þine cherles, þine hine. 620  
 Lowerd, we shole*n* þe wel fede,  
 Til þat þu conne riden on stede,  
 Til þat þu conne ful wel bere  
 Helm on heued, sheld and spere.  
 He ne shal neuere, sikerlike, 625  
 Godard, wite, þat fule swike.  
 þoru oþer man, louerd, than þoru þe  
 Shal i neuere freman be.

602. *Supply* upon. 604. rith. 605. brith. 606. þis=  
 þis is (*read* ur-ē). 607. *Supply* ben. 610. A (*for* Al). 611.  
*Supply* gret H. 612, 613. *I supply* do; cf. l. 519. 622, 623.  
 cone. 625, 626. neuere wite; *but* wite belongs to l. 626, where *I*  
*insert it.* 628. Sal.

Pou shalt me, louerd, fre [man] maken,  
 For i shal yemen þe, and waken; 630  
 Þoru þe wile i [mi] fredom haue.  
 Þo was Haueloc a bliþe knaue; [Fol. 207 b, col. 1.]  
 He sat him up, and crauedþ bred;  
 And seide, 'ich am [wel] ney ded,  
 Hwat for hunger, hwat for bondes 635  
 Þat þu leidest on min hondes;  
 And for [þe] keuel at þe laste,  
 Þat in mi mouth was þrist [so] faste.  
 Y was þer-with so harde prangled,  
 Þat i was þer-with ney [y]-strangled.' 640  
 'Wel is me þat þu maght ete:  
 Goddot!' quath Leue, 'y shal þe fete  
 Bred and chese, butere and milk,  
 Pastees and flaunes; al with suilk  
 Sholþ we sone þe wel fede, 645  
 Louerd, in þis mikel nede;  
 Soth is, þat men seyth and suereth:  
 "þer God wilþ helpen, nouht ne dereth."

PAVNE sho hauþde brouht þe mete,  
 Haueloc anon bigan to ete 650  
 Grundlike, and was ful bliþe;  
 Couþe he nouht his hunger miþe.  
 A lof he et, y wot, and more,  
 For him hungredþ swiþe sore.  
 Pre dayes þer-biforn, i wene, 655

629. <i>Sup. ly man.</i>	631. <i>Supply mi.</i>	634. <i>Supply wel.</i>
635. wat.	637. <i>Supply þe.</i>	638. <i>Supply so.</i>
(for þere = þer).	640. þe (for þere = þer);	639. þe
641. mayth hete.	642. Goddoth.	strangled ( <i>cf.</i> ll. 5, 163).
it is ( <i>om.</i> it); seyt.	643. an (for 1st and).	647.
nouth; Miþe.	648. nouth.	649. brouth.
	653. het; woth.	652.

**Y**owas havelok abhwe hmanne  
**H**e sat him up and aauede beed  
**A**nd seide ich am neyded  
**H**war for hunger war for woundes  
**Y**at yule cutte on myn hondes  
**A**nd for beuel at ye laste  
**Y**at in mi mouth was yust aate  
**Y**was ye woth to hande prangled  
**Y**at was ye woth ney strangled  
**W**el ic me yat yu mayth here  
**G**oddoth quath leue yshal yefete  
**B**red an chere butere and milk  
**P**astres and flaunet al woth sulke  
**S**hole we cone ye wel fede  
**I**ouerd myc mikel nede  
**S**oth it is yat me seyt and suereth  
**Y**er god wile helpe nouth nedereþ  
**H**ane so hauede vouth ye mete  
**H**avelok anon biga to ete  
**G**undlike and was ful blayn  
**E**oure le nouth his hunger þat  
**A**lof be ter y woth and more

THE LAY OF HAVELOK; LINES 632-653

*From MS. Laud Misc. 108; fol. 207, back*



Et he no mete, þat was wel sene.  
 Hwan he hauȝde eten, and was fed,  
 Grim dede maken a ful fayr bed;  
 Vncloþede him, and dede him þer-iȝne,  
 And seyde, 'Slep, sone, with michel wiȝne! 660  
 Slep wel faste, and dred þe nouht,  
 Fro sorwe to ioie art þu brouht.'  
 Sone so it was liht of day,  
 Grim it under-tok, þe wey  
 To þe wicke traitour Godard, 665  
 þat was [of] Denemark stiward,  
 And seyde, 'Louerd, don ich haue  
 þat þou me bede of þe knaue;  
 He is drenched in þe flod,  
 Abouten his hals an anker god; 670  
 He is witer-like ded,  
 Eteth he neure more bred;  
 He lip drenched in þe se:—  
 Yif me gold [and] oþer fe,  
 þat y mowe riche be; 675  
 And with þi chartre make [me] fre;  
 For þu ful wel bi-hetet me, [Fol. 207 b, col. 2.]  
 þanne i laste spak with þe.'  
 Godard stod, and lokȝde on him  
 þoruh-like, with eyne grim; 680  
 And seyde, 'Wiltu [nou] ben erl?  
 Go hom swiþe, fulȝ drit-cherl;  
 Go heþen, and be euere-more  
 þral and cherl, als þou er wore.

661. nouth. 662. brouth. 663. lith. 666. *Supply* of  
 H; denemak a (*om.* a). 674. *Supply* and; cf. l. 1223. 676.  
*Supply* me. 677. bi-hetet = bi-hete it. 678. last. 680.  
 þoruth. 681. *Supply* nou.

Shaltu haue non oper mede ; 685  
 For litel [shal] i do þe lede  
 To þe galues, so God me rede !  
 For þou hauęs don a wicke dede.  
 Þou maght stonden her to longe,  
 Butę þou swiþe heþen gonge.' 690

**G**RIM thouhte to late þat he ran  
 Fro þat traytour, þat wicke man ;  
 And þouhte, 'hwat shal me to rede?  
 Wite he him [liues], he wile [us] beþe  
 Heye hangen on galwe-tre : 695  
 Betere us is of londę to fle,  
 And berwen boþen ure liues,  
 And mine children, and mine wiues.'  
 Grim solde sone al his corn,  
 Shep with wolfe, net with horn, 700  
 Hors, and swin, [and geet] with berd,  
 Þe gees, þe hennes of þe yerd ;  
 Al he solde, þat ouht douhte,  
 þat he eue selle mouhte,  
 And al he to þe peni drou. 705  
 Hię ship he greyþedę wel inow,  
 He dede it tere, and ful wel pike,  
 þat it ne doutedę sond ne krike ;  
 Þer-inne [he] dide a ful god mast,  
 Stronge kables, and ful fast, 710  
 Ores gode, and ful god seyl ;

685. Shal (*read* Shaltu). 686. *Supply* shal; ig (*with g expuncted*).  
 689. Mait (*for* maght). 690. eþen. 691. þoucte. 692. þa  
 (*for and* þat). 693. þoucte wat. 694. onliue; *read* liues (*see* l. 509)  
 H; *supply* us H. 700. wit; neth wit. 701. *Supply* and  
 geet; wit. 703. outh douthę. 704. moucte. 707. an.  
 709. *Supply* he. 711. an.

Þer-inne wantede nouht a nayl,  
 Þat euere he sholdē þer-inne do :  
 Hwan he hauēdet greyþed so,  
 Hauelok þe yunge he dede þer-inne, 715  
 Him and his wif, hiſe ſones þrinne,  
 And hiſe two douhtres, þat faire wore ;  
 And ſone dede leyn in an ore,  
 And drou him to þe heye ſe,  
 Þere he miht alþer-beſte fle. 720  
 Fro londe wore~~n~~ he bote a mile,  
 Ne were [it] neuere but ane hwile, [Fol. 208, col. 1.]  
 Þat it ne gan a wind to riſe  
 Out of þe north, men calleth ' biſe,'  
 And drof hem intil Engeland, 725  
 Þat al was ſipen in his hond,  
 His, þat Hauelok was þe name ;  
 But or, he hauēde michel ſhame,  
 Michel ſorwe, and michel tene,  
 And [yete] he gat it al bidene ; 730  
 Als ye ſhulē~~n~~ nou forthward [lere],  
 Yf that ye wilen þer-to here.

I<sup>N</sup> Humber Grim bigan to lende,  
 In Lindēſeye, riht at þe north ende.  
 Þer ſat his ſhip up-on þe ſond, 735  
 But Grim it drou up to þe lond ;  
 And þere he made a litel cote  
 To him [and hiſ], and to hiſe flote.

712. nouth. 714. haue~~det~~ = haue~~d~~e it. 717. doutres.  
 718. dede he (*I omit* he). 720. mith ; beſt. 722. *Supply* it.  
 723. bigan ; Riſe. 730. þrie ; *read* yete H. 731. forthwar ;  
 here (*read* lere) ; cf. ll. 12, 1640. 734. Riht. 735. is.  
 738. *Supply* and hiſ ; *and ſo in* l. 741.



Bigan he þere for to erde,  
A litel hus to maken of erþe,  
So þat he [and his] wel wore  
Of here herboru *herborwed* þore;  
And for þat Grim þat place auhte,  
þe stede of Grim þe name lauhte;  
So þat Grimesbi [it] calle  
[He] þat þer-of speken alle;  
And so shule<sup>n</sup> men it calle<sup>n</sup> ay,  
Bituene þis and domesday.

G RIM was fisherę swiþe god,  
 And mikel couþe on the flod ; 750  
 Mani god fish þer-inne he tok,  
 Boþe with net, and [ek] with hok.  
 He tok þe sturgium, and þe qual,  
 And þe turbut, and lax with-al,  
 He tok þe sele, and [ek] þe el ; 755  
 He spedde ofte swiþe wel :  
 Keling he tok, and tumberel,  
 Hering, and þe makerel,  
 Þe butte, þe schulle, þe þornbake :  
 Gode paniers dede he make, 760  
 On til him, and oþer þrinne  
 Til hiș sones, to beręn fish inne,  
 Vp o-londe to selle and fonge ;  
 Forþar he neyþer tun, ne gronge,  
 Þat he ne to-yede with his ware ; 765

739. erpe; *read* erde (*see note*). 741. þore were; *read* wore  
(*as in* l. 504). 742. þere; *read* þore (*from* l. 741); *cf.* l. 922.  
743. aute. 744. laute. 745. calleth alle; *read* it calle.  
746. Supply He; *offe*. 747. callen it. 752. neth; *supply* ek.  
755. Supply ek; *hwel* (*for* hel = el = eel). 759. Butte; þornebake  
(*pronounced* þornebak); *cf.* l. 832. 764. neyþe (l).

Kam he neuere hom hand-bare,  
 þat he ne brouhte bred and sowel [Fol. 208, col. 2.]  
 In his shirte, or in his couel;  
 In his poke benes and korn:—  
 Hisę swink ne hauęde he nowht forlorn. 770  
 And hwan he tok þe gretę laumprei,  
 Ful wel he coupe þe rihte wei  
 To Lincólne, þe gode boru;  
 Ofte he yede it þoru and þoru,  
 Til he hauęde [al] wel sold, 775  
 And þer-fore þe penies told.  
 Þanne he com þenne, he wereþ bliþe,  
 For hom he brouhte fele siþe  
 Wastels, simenels with þe horn,  
 Hisę pokes fulle of mele and korn, 780  
 Netes flesh, shepes, and swines;  
 And hemp to maken of gode lines,  
 And stronge ropes to hisę netes;  
 In þe se he ofte setes.

**P**US-GATE Grim him fayre ledde. 785  
 Him and his genge wel he fedde  
 Wel twelue winter, oþer more:  
 Hauelok was war þat Grim swank sore  
 For his mete, and he lay at home:  
 Thouhte [he], 'ich am nou no grome; 790  
 Ich am wel waxen, and wel may eten  
 More þan euere Grim may geten.  
 Ich ete more, bi God on liue,

767. broucte. 770. nowt. 772. we (!); rithe. 775.  
 wol (read al). 778. brouthe. 780. an. 784. se weren  
 (om. weren): setes = set es. 787. twelf. 789. hom; see l. 822.  
 790. Thouthe; supply he; grom.

✓ Pan Grim and hise children fue!  
 It ne may nouht ben þus longe, 795  
 Goddot! y wile with [hem] gange,  
 For to leren *sum* god to gete;  
 Swinken ich wolde for mi mete.  
 It is no shame forto swinken;  
 Þe man þat may wel eten and drinken 800  
 [þar] nouht ne haue but on swink long;  
 To liggen at hom it is ful strong.  
 God yelde him, þer i ne may,  
 Þat hauēth me fed [un]to þis day!  
 Gladlike i wile þe paniers bere; 805  
 Ich wot, ne shal it me nouht dere,  
 Þey þer be izne a birpenę gret  
 Al so heui als a net.  
 Shal ich neuere lengerę dwelle,  
 To-morwen shal ich forth pelle.' 810

ON þe morwen, hwan it was day,  
 He stirt up sone, and nouht ne lay;  
 And cast a panier on his bac, [Fol. 208 b, col. 1.]  
 With fish giuēled als a stac;  
 Also michel he bar him one 815  
 So he foure, bi mine mone!  
 Wel he it bar, and solde it wel,  
 Þe siluer he brouhte hom ilk del;  
 [Of] al þat he þer-fore tok  
 With-held he nouht a ferþingęs nok. 820  
 So yede he forth ilke day,

794. an. 795. nouth. 796. þe; read hem (or þem).  
 801. þat; read þar H; nouth. 803. ine (for i ne). 804.  
 to; read unto. 806. woth; nouth. 808. neth. 812.  
 nouth. 814. giuēled; see note. 816. Cf. ll. 1711, 1972.  
 818. brouthe; il. 819. Supply Of H. 820. nouth.

Þat he neuere at home lay.  
 So wolde he his mester lere.— (*seemeth*)  
 Bifel it so, a [ful] strong dere  
 Bigan to rise of korn of bred, 825  
 That Grim ne couþe no god red,  
 Hu he sholde his meiné fede;  
 Of Hauelok hauþe he michel drede:  
 For he was strong, and wel mouhte ete  
 Morþ þanne euere mouhte he gete; 830  
 Ne he ne mouhte on þe se take  
 Neyþer lenge, ne þornbake,  
 Ne non oþer fish þat douhte  
 His meyné feden with, he mouhte. ✓  
 Of Hauelok he hauþe kare, 835  
 Hwilkgat þat he mihte fare;  
 Of his children was him nouht,  
 On Hauelok was al hisþ þouht,  
 And seyde, 'Hauelok, dere sone,  
 I wene that we deye mone 840  
 For hunger, þis dere is so strong,  
 And ure mete is ūten long.  
 Betere is þat þu heñne gonge  
 Þan þu here dwelle longe;  
 Heþen þow maght gangen to late; 845  
 Thou canst ful wel þe rihte gate  
 To Lincólne, þe gode boru,  
 Þou hauþst it gon ful ofte þoru;  
 Of me, ne is me nouht a slo.  
 Betere is þat þu þider go, 850

824. *Supply* ful H. 827. Hw. 829. mouthe. 830.  
 heuere mouthe. 831. mouthe. 832. *Pronounced* þorenbak;  
*cf.* l. 759. 833. douthe. 834. mouthe. 836. Hwilgat;  
 micthe. 837, 838. nouth; þouth. 842. hure; H. *has eten* (MS.  
 ūten). 845. mayt. 846. ricthe. 847. borw. 849. nouth.

For þer is mani god man inne,  
 þer þou maght þi mete winne.  
 But wo is me! þou art so naked,  
 Of mi seyl y woldę werę maked  
 A cloth, þou mihtest iŋne gongen, 855  
 Sone, no cold þat þu ne fonge.'

**H**E tok þe sheres offþe nayl, [Fol. 208 b, col. 2.]

And made him a couel of þe sayl,  
 And Hauelok dide it sone on;  
 Hauęde [he] neyþer hosen ne shon, 860  
 Ne none kinnes oþer wede;  
 To Lincólne barfot he yede.  
 Hwan he kam þer, he was ful wil,  
 Ne hauęde he no frend to gangen til;  
 Two dayes þer fastinde he yede, 865  
 Þat non for his werk wolde him fede;  
 Þe þridde day he herde calle:  
 'Bermen, bermen, hider forth alle!  
 [Poure þat on fote yede]  
 Sprongen forth so sparke [of] glede. 870  
 Hauelok shof dun[e] nyne or ten  
 Riht amideward þe fen,  
 And stirte forth to þe kok,  
 [þer the erles mete he tok]  
 Þat he bouhte at þe brigge: 875  
 Þe bermen let he alle ligge,  
 And bar þe mete to þe castel,  
 And gat him þere a ferþing wastel.

852. mayt (*cf.* l. 1348). 854. þe were (*I omit þe*). 855.  
 mihtest. 857. shres (1). 860. *Supply* he (*cf.* l. 864).  
 861. kines oþe (*sic*). 863. þe (*for þere = þer*). 867. herde  
 (*cf.* l. 887). 869. *Supplied from* l. 101. 870. on; *read of* (*as in*  
 l. 91). 872. Riht amidewarde. 874. *Supplied*. 875. bouhte.

**P**ET oper day he kepte ok  
 Swipe yerne þe erles kok, 880  
 Til þat he say him on þe brigge,  
 And bi him mani fishes ligge.  
 Þe erles mete hauðe he bouht  
 Of Cornwaile, and kalde oft:  
 'Bermen, bermen, hider swipe!' 885  
 Hauelok it herde, and was ful bliþe  
 Þat he herde 'bermen' calle; .  
 Alle he made hem dune falle  
 Þat in his gate yeden and stode,  
 Wel sixtene laddes gode. 890  
 Als he lep þe kok [un-]til,  
 He shof hem alle upon an hyl;  
 Astirte til him with his rippe,  
 And bigan þe fish to kippe.  
 He bar up wel a carte-lode 895  
 Of segges, laxes, of playces brode,  
 Of grete laumprees, and of eles;  
 Sparede he neyþer tos ne heles  
 Til þat he to þe castel cam,  
 Þat men fro him his birþenē nam. 900  
 Þan men hauðen holpen him doune  
 With þe birþene of his croune,  
 Þe kok [bi] stod, and on him low,  
 And þouhte him stalworþe man ynow, [Fol. 209, col. 1.]  
 And seyde, 'Wiltu ben with me?' 905  
 Gladlike wile ich feden þe;  
 Wel is set þe mete þu etes,  
 And þe hire þat þu getes.'

879. kepte he. 881. bigge (!). 883. herles; bouth. 884.  
 mwalie (for Corenwaile). 888. made he; dun. 901. doun.  
 12. croun. 903. Supply bi. 904. þoute. 905. wit.

'GODDOT!' quoth [Hauelok], 'leue sire,  
 Bidde ich you non oper hire; 910  
 But yeueþ me inow to ete,  
 Fir and water y wilę yow fete,  
 Þe fir blowe, and ful welę maken;  
 Stickes kan ich breken and kraken,  
 And kindlen [ek] ful wel a fyr, 915  
 And maken it to brennen shir;  
 Ful wel kan ich oleuen shides,  
 Eles to-turuen of herę hides;  
 Ful wel kan ich dishes swilen,  
 And don al þat ye euere wilen.' 920  
 Quoth þe kok, 'Wile i no more;  
 Go þu yunder, and sit þore,  
 And y shal yeue þe ful fair bred,  
 And make þe broys in þe led.  
 Sit now down and et ful yerne: 925  
 Dapeit hwo þe mete werne!'

HAUELOK sette him dune anon,  
 Also stille als a ston,  
 Til he hauęde ful wel eten;  
 Þo hauęde Hauelok fayre geten. 930  
 Hwan he hauęde eten inow,  
 He kam to þe welle, water up-drow,  
 And filde þer a michel so;  
 Bad he non ageyn him go;  
 Bi-twen his hondes he bar it in, 935  
 Al him one, to þe kichin.

909. Soddot; he (*read h' = hauelok*). 913. an. 915.  
*Supply ek.* 918. to turuen (*sic*). 927. dun. 933. þe  
 (*for pere = þer*). 935. But bi-twen (*om.* But); barit. 936.  
 A (*for Al*).

Bad he non him water fete,  
 Ne fro brigge to bere þe mete.  
 He bar þe turues, he bar þe star,  
 Þe wode fro the brigge he bar; 940  
 Al that euere shulden he nytte,  
 Al he drow, and al he kitte;  
 Wolde he neuere hauen rest,  
 More þan he were a best.  
 Of alle men was he mest meke, 945  
 Lauhwinde ay, and bliþe of speke;  
 Euere he was glad and bliþe,  
 His sorwe he couþe ful wel miþe.  
 It ne was non so litel knaue, . . . [Fol. 209, col. 2.]  
 For to leyken, ne forto plawe, 950  
 Þat he ne wolde with him pleye:  
 Þe children that yeden in þe weie  
 Of him he deden al her wille,  
 And with him leykeden herę fille.  
 Him louþeden alle, stille and bolde, 955  
 Knihtes, children, yunge and olde;  
 Alle him louþeden þat him sowen,  
 Bopen heye men and lowe.  
 Of him þe word ful wide sprong,  
 Hu he was mikel, hu he was strong, 960  
 Hu fayr man God him hauþede maked,  
 But-on þat he was alrest naked:  
 For he ne hauþede nouht to shride,  
 But a kouel ful unride,  
 Þat [was] ful, and swiþe wicke, 965

937. to fete (*om.* to). 938. bigge (!); *cf.* l. 940. 942. citte.  
 949. *Perhaps two lines are lost here.* 951. wode (*for* woldte).  
 952. yden (!). 953. he (*for* here = her). 956. Knictes; holde.  
 958. heyemen; *cf.* ll. 2431, 2471. 959. ful wide þe word. 960.  
 Hw; mike (!); hw. 961. Hw. 963. nouth. 965. Supply was.



Was it nouht worth a fir-sticke.  
 þe cok bigan of him to rewe,  
 And bouhte him cloþes, al spannewe;  
 He bouhte him boþe hosen and shon,  
 And sone dide him dones on. 970  
 Hwan he was cloþed, hosod, and shod,  
 Was non so fayr under God,  
 þat euere yete in erþe were,  
 Non þat euere moder bere;  
 It was neuere man þat yemede 975  
 In kineriche, þat so wel semede  
 King or cayser forto be,  
 þan he was shrid, so semede he;  
 For þanne he weren alle samen  
 At Lincólne, at þe gamen, 980  
 And þe erles men woren alle þore,  
 Was Hauelok bi þe shuldren more  
 þan þe meste þat þer kam:  
 In armes him noman [ne] nam  
 þat he doune sonę ne caste; 985  
 Hauelok stod ouer hem als a mast.  
 Als he was heie, [so] he was strong,  
 He was boþe stark and long;  
 In Engelond [was] non hișe per  
 Of strengþe þat euere kam him ner. 990  
 Als he was strong, so was he softe;  
 þey a man him misdede ofte,  
 Neuere more he him [misseyde],  
 Ne hond on him with yuele leyde. [Fol. 209 b, col. 1.]

966. nouth.      968. bouthe.      969. bouthe.      971. osed.  
 976. kinneriche.      981. al.      982. þan was; omit þan H.  
 984. Supply ne.      987. al he; read so he; cf. l. 991. 987 ends  
 with long; 988 ends with strong (cf. l. 1063).      989. Supply was.  
 993. misdede; read misseyde E.; see ll. 49, 1688.

Of bodi was he mayden clene; <sup>1 chaste and</sup> 995 ✓  
 Neuere yete in game, ne in grene,  
 With hire ne wolde [he] leyke ne lye,  
 No more þan it were a strie.  
 In þat time al Engelond  
 þerl Godrich hauēde in his hond, 1000  
 And he gart komen into þe tun  
 Mani erl, and mani barun;  
 And alle [men] þat liues were  
 In Engelond, þanne were þere,  
 þat þey hauēden after sent 1005  
 To ben þer at þe parlement.  
 With hem com mani champion,  
 Mani with ladde, blac and brown;  
 And fel it so, þat yunge men,  
 Wel abouten nine or ten, 1010  
 Bigunnen þere for to layke:  
 Þider komen stronge and wayke;  
 Þider komen lesse and more,  
 þat in þe borw þanne werē þore;  
 Chaumpiouns, and starke laddes, 1015  
 Bondemen, with here gaddes,  
 Als he comen fro þe plow;  
 þere was sembling i-now!  
 For it ne was non horse-knaue,  
 þouh þei sholden in honde haue, 1020  
 þat he ne kam þider, þe leyk to se:  
 Biforn herē fet þanne lay a tre,  
 And putten with a mikel ston

996. *Read* Neuere in gardine (Kölbing). 997. *wit* (pit); *read*  
 With; *for* hire *read* hore (Kölbing); *supply* he. 999. *hengelond*.  
 1003. *Supply* men. 1004. *england*; *wer*. 1007. *chābioun* (*sic*).  
 1009. *An*. 1011. *þe* (*for þere*). 1012. *komen* *boþe*; *om.* *boþe*.  
 1015. *Chaumpiouns*. 1020. *þo*. 1023. *putten*; *read* *putten*; cf. l. 1023.

Þe starke laddes, ful god won.  
 Þe ston was mikel, and ek gret, 1025  
 And al so heui so a net;  
 Grund-stalwurpe ~~man~~ he sholde be  
 Þat mouhte it liften to his kne;  
 Was þer neyþer clerc, ne prest,  
 Þat mihte it liften to his brest: 1030  
 Þerwith putten the chaumpiouns  
 Þat þider comen with þe barouns.  
 Hwo-so mihte putten þore  
 Biform a-noþer, an inch or more,  
 Wore he yung, [or] wore he old, 1035  
 He was for a *kempe* told.  
 Al-so þei stoden, and ofte staræden,  
 Þe chaumpiouns, and ek the ladden,  
 And he maden mikel strout [Fol. 209 b, col. 2.]  
 Abouten þe alþerbeste bout, 1040  
 Hauelok stod, and lokede þer-til;  
 And of puttingge he was ful wil,  
 For neuere yete ne saw he or  
 Putten the stone, 'or þanne þor.  
 Hisē mayster bad him gon þer-to, 1045  
 Als he couþe þer-with do.  
 Þo hisē mayster it him bad,  
 He was of him [ful] sore adrad;  
 Þerto he stirte sone anon,  
 And kipte up þat heui ston, 1050  
 Þat he sholde putten wiþe;  
 He putte, at þe firste siþe,

1025. greth.     1026. neth.     1027. -wriþe.     1028. mouthe  
 liften it.     1030. mithe liften it.     1031. þerwit; chaunpiouns.  
 1033. mithe.     1035. *Supply* or; hold.     1037. þe (*for* þei); an;  
*for* streden *read* gradden (K.).     1038. chaunpiouns.     1040. but.  
 1048. *Supply* ful H.     1051. puten.

Ouer alle þat þer wore,  
 Twelue fote, and sumdel more. ✓  
 Þe chaumpiouns þat [þat] put sowen, 1055  
 Shuldreden he ilc oþer, and lowen;  
 Wolden he no more to putting gange,  
 But seyde, 'we dwellen her to longe!'  
 Þis selkouth mihte nouht ben hyd,  
 Ful sone it was ful loude kid 1060  
 Of Hauelok, hu he warp þe ston  
 Ouer þe laddes euerilkon;  
 Hu he was fayr, hu he was long,  
 Hu he was wiht, hu he was strong; typ.  
 Þorhut England yedę þe speke, 1065  
 Hu he was strong, and ek [ful] meke;  
 In the castel, up in þe halle,  
 Þe knihtes speken þer-of alle,  
 So that Godrich it herde wel  
 Þer speken of Hauelok, eueri del, 1070  
 Hu he was strong man and hey,  
 Hu he was strong, and ek [ful sley],  
 And þouhte Godrich, 'þoru þis knaue  
 Shal ich Engeland al haue, \*  
 And mi sone after me; 1075  
 For so i wile þat it be.  
 King Apelwald me dide swere  
 Vpon al þe messe-gere,  
 Þat y shulde his douhter yeue

1054. Twel. 1055. chaumpiouns; *supply* þat. 1058. *we*  
 (pe). 1059. mithe nouth. 1061. hw. 1063. Hw; hw.  
 1064. Hw; with hw. 1065. þoruth; speche; *read* speke, *as in*  
 l. 946. 1066. Hw; *supply* ful. 1068. knithes. 1070. þe (*for*  
 þere = þer). 1071. Hw. 1072. Hw; *for* strong *read* fayr H.;  
 ek fri (!); *read* ek ful sley; *see* l. 1084. 1073. þouthte. 1077.  
 The king (*om.* The). 1079. shude; doutl.

þe hexte [man] þat mihte liue, 1080  
 þe beste, þe fairest, þe strangest ok;  
 þat gart he me sweren on þe bok.  
 Hwerę mihte i finden ani so hey  
 So Hauelok is, or so sley? [Fol. 210, col. 1.]  
 þouh y souhte heþen in-to Ynde, 1085  
 So fayr, so strong, ne mihte y finde.  
 Hauelok is þat ilke knaue  
 þat shal Goldeborw haue.  
 þis þouhte [he] with trechery,  
 With traysoun, and with felony; 1090  
 For he wende, þat Hauelok wore  
 Sum cherles sone, and no more;  
 Ne shulde he hauen of Engellond  
 Onlepi forw in his hond  
 With hire, þat was þer-of [þe] eyr, 1095  
 þat boþe was god and swiþe fair.  
 He wende, þat Hauelok wer a þral,  
 þer-þoru he wende hauen al  
 In Engelond, þat hire riht was;  
 He werse was þan Sathanas 1100  
 þat Iesu Crist in erþe shop:  
 Hanged worþe he on an hok! *1100*

AFTER Goldeborw sone he sende,  
 þat was boþe fayr and hende,  
 And dide hire to Lincólne bringe, 1105  
 Belles dede he ageyn hire ringen,  
 And ioie he made hire swiþe mikel,  
 But nepeles he was ful swikel.

1080. *Supply* man; *see* l. 199 (H.); *mithe*. 1083. *mithe*.  
 1085. þou; southe. 1086. *mithe*. 1089. þouthe; *supply* he.  
 1090. wit. 1095. *S* *pply* þe. 1099. rith. 1100. was werse;  
*see* l. 1134. 1103. *§* *sldebow*.

He seyde, þat he sholde hire yeue  
 þe fayrest man that mihte liue. 1110  
 She answerede, and seyde anon,  
 Bi [Iesu] Crist, and bi seint Iohan,  
 þat hire sholde noman wedde,  
 Ne noman bringen hire to bedde,  
 But he were king, or kinges eyr, 1115  
 Were he neuere man so fayr.

GODRICH þe erl was swiþe wroth  
 þat she swor [þer] swilk an oth,  
 And seyde, 'Hweþer þou wilt be  
 Quen and leuēdi ouer me? 1120  
 þou shalt haue a gadeling,  
 Ne shalt þou haue non oþer king;  
 þe shal spusen mi cokes knaue,  
 Shalt þou non oþer louerd haue.  
 Dapeit þat þe oþer yeue 1125  
 Euere-more hwil i liue!  
 To-morwe sholen ye ben weddet,  
 And, maugre þin, to-gidere beddet.'  
 Goldeborw gret, and was hire ille, [Fol. 210, col. 2.]  
 She woldē ben ded bi hire wille. 1130  
 On the morwen, hwan day was sprungen,  
 And day-belle at [þe] kirke rungen,  
 After Hauelok sente þat Iudas,  
 þat werse was þanne Sathanas:  
 And seyde, 'Mayster, wiltu wif?' 1135  
 'Nay,' quoth Hauelok, 'bi my lif!

1110. mithe. 1112. Supply Iesu; cf. l. 1101. 1114. to  
 hire; read hire to H. 1118. I supply þer. 1119. hwor;  
 read hweþer; cf. ll. 292, 294. 1124. Ne shalt; omit Ne.  
 1127. To mowe ye sholen; weddeth. 1128. beddeth. 1129.  
 was (pas). 1132. Supply þe; as in l. 1355. 1135. wilke.

Hwat sholde ich with wiue do?  
 I ne may hire fede, ne cloþe, ne sho.  
 Hwider sholde ich wimman bringe?  
 I ne haue none kinnes þinge. 1140  
 I ne haue hus, y ne haue cote,  
 I ne haue stikke, y ne haue sprote,  
 I ne haue neyþer bred ne sowel,  
 Ne cloth, but of an old whit couel.  
 Þis cloþes, þat ich onne haue, 1145  
 Arȝn þe kokes, and ich his knaue.  
 Godrich stirt up, and on him dong  
 [With dintes swiþe hard and strong,]  
 And seyde, 'But þou hire take  
 Þat y wolȝ yeuen þe to make, 1150  
 I shal hangen þe ful heye,  
 Or y shal pristen ut þin eie.'  
 Hauelok was one, and was adrad,  
 And grauntede him al þat he bad.  
 Þo sende he after hire sone, 1155  
 Þe fayrest wymman under mone;  
 And seyde til hire, [fals] and slike,  
 Þat wicke þral, þat foule swike:  
 'But þu þis man [wel] under-stonde,  
 I shal flemen þe of londe; 1160  
 Or þou shalt to þe galwes renne,  
 And þer þou shalt in a fir brenne.'  
 Sho was adrad, for he so þrette,  
 And durste nouht þe spusing lette;  
 But þey hire likedȝ swiþe ille, 1165

1137. wif. 1139. Wider. 1140. kines. 1141. hws.  
 1142. Ne i; omit Ne (H.). 1144. hold with. 1148. *Supplied*.  
 1152. vth; beie. 1153. odrat; see ll. 1048, 1163. 1157.  
*Supply fals.* 1159. *Supply wel H.* 1161. shal. 1164. nouth.

[Sho] þouhte, it was Godes wille :  
 God, þat makes growen þe korn,  
 Formede hire wimman to be born. ✓  
 Hwan he hauȝde him don, for drede,  
 þat he sholde hire spusen and fede, 1170  
 And þat she sholde til him holde,  
 þer weren penies picke tolde,  
 Mikel plenté upon þe bok :  
 He ys hire yaf, and she [is] tok.  
 He weren spused fayre and wel, [Fol. 210 b, col. 1.]  
 þe messe he dede, [and] eueridel 1176  
 þat fel to spusing, a god clerk,  
 þe erchebishop ut of Yerk,  
 þat kam [þer] to þe parlement,  
 Als God him hauȝde þider sent. 1180

H WAN he togydere in Godes lawe  
 [Weren], þat folc ful wel it sawe,  
 He ne wisten hwat he mouhten,  
 Ne he ne wisten hwat hem douhte, ( *was good for them* )  
 þer to dwellen, or þenne to gonge. 1185  
 þer ne wolden he dwellen longe ;  
 For he wisten, and ful wel sawe,  
 Godrich hem hatede, þe deuel him awe !  
 And yf he dwelleden þer ouht— *in time*  
 þat fel Hauelok ful wel on þouht— 1190  
 Men sholde don his leman shame,  
 Or elles bringen in wicke blame ;

1166. Supply Sho; þouthe. 1167. to growen; om. to. 1169. don him. 1174. as; read is H. 1176. deden; read dede, and supply and H. 1177. and; read a Z; clek (!). 1178. uth. 1179. Supply þer. 1181. he weren; transfer weren to l. 1182 H. 1182. þat þe folc; I omit þe. 1183. mouthen. 1184. wat; douthe. 1188. þat godrich; I omit þat; hawe. 1189. outh. 1190. þouth.



Þat were him leuerę to ben ded.  
 For-þi he token anoper red,  
 Þat þei sholden þenne fle 1195  
 Til Grim, and til hiſe ſoneſ þre;  
 Þer wenden he alþer-beſte ſpede, (~~þat~~ - to þre)  
 Hem forto cloþe, and for to fede.  
 Þe lond he token under fote,  
 Ne wiſten he non oþer bote, 1200  
 And helden ay the rihte [sti]  
 Til he komen to Grimesby.  
 Þanne he komęn þere, þanne was Grim ded,  
 Of him ne hauęden he no red;  
 But hiſe children alle fyue 1205  
 Alle weren yet on liue;  
 Þat ful fayre ayeyn hem neme,  
 Hwan he wiſten þat he keme,  
 And maden ioie swiþe mikel,  
 Ne weręn he neuere ayeyn hem fikel. 1210  
 On kneſ ful fayre he hem ſetten,  
 And Hauelok swiþe fayre gretten,  
 And ſeyden, 'Welkomę, louerd dere!  
 And welkomę be þi fayre fere!  
 Blessed be þat ilke þrawe 1215  
 Þat þou hirę toke in Godeſ lawe!  
 Wel is uſ we ſen þe on lyue,  
 Þou maght uſ boþe ſelle and yeue;  
 Þou maght uſ boþe yeue and ſelle,  
 (With-þat þou wilt here dwelle. [Fol. 210 b, col. 2.]  
 We hauen, louerd, alle gode, 1221  
 Hors, and net, and ſhip on flode,

1197. beſt to ſpede; *read* beſte ſpede. 1201. riþe (= rithe =  
 rihte); *sti* *erased* (*but ſee* l. 2618). 1207, 1210. ayen. 1217.  
*hns.* 1218. mithe. 1219. mayt. 1222. neth.

Gold, and siluer, and michel auhte,  
 þat Grim ure fader us bitawhte. ✓  
 Gold, and siluer, and oþer fe 1225  
 Bad he us bi-taken þe.  
 We hauen shep, we hauen swin,  
 Bi-leue her, louerd, and al be pin!  
 þou shalt ben louerd, þou shalt ben syre,  
 And we sholen *seruen* þe and hire; 1230  
 And ure sistres sholen do  
 Al that euere biddes sho;  
 He sholen hire cloþes washen and wringen,  
 And to hondes water bringen;  
 He sholen bedden hire and þe, 1235  
 For leuēdi wilē we þat she be.  
 Hwan he þis ioie hauēden maked,  
 Sithen stikes broken and kraked,  
 And þe fir brouht on brenne,  
 Ne was þer spared gos ne henne, 1240  
 Ne þe ende, ne þe drake,  
 Mete he deden plentē make;  
 Ne wantedē þere no god mete,  
 Wyn and ale deden he fete,  
 And maden hem [ful] glade and bliþe, 1245  
 Wesseyl he ledden fele siþe.

● N þe niht, als Goldēborw lay,  
 Sory and sorwful was she ay,  
 For she wende she were bi-swike,  
 þat she werē yeuen un-kyndelike. 1250

1223. auchte. 1224. bitawchte. 1229. þo. 1231. hure.  
 1233. cloþen; *read* cloþes, as in l. 2458. 1239. brouth. 1241.  
 hende. 1245. made; *supply* ful. 1246. ledden he. 1247. niht.  
 1250. shere, *evidently miswritten for* she were.

O niht saw she þer-inne a liht,  
 A swiþe fayr, a swiþe bryht,  
 Al so briht, al so shir  
 So it were a blase of fir.  
 She lokede norþ, and ek south, 1255  
 And saw it comen ut of his mouth,  
 Þat lay bi hire in þe bed :  
 No ferlike þouh she were adred !  
 Þouhte she, 'Hwat may this bi-mene !  
 He beth heyman yet, als y wene, 1260  
 He beth heyman er he be ded : '—  
 On hise shuldre, of gold red  
 She saw a swiþe noble croiz,  
 Of an angel she herde a uoyz :

'GOLDEBORW, lat þi sorwe be; [Fol. 211, col. 1.]  
 For Hauelok, þat hauēþ spuset þe, 1266  
 [Is] kinges sone and kinges eyr;  
 Þat bikeneth þat croiz so fayr.  
 It bikenneth, þat he shal  
 Denemark hauē, and Englonð al; 1270  
 He shal ben king, strong and stark,  
 Of Engelonð and Denemark;  
 Þat shalt þu with þin eyne sen,  
 And þou shalt quen and leuēdi ben !'

P ANNE she hauēde herd the steuene 1275  
 Of þe angel ut of heuene,  
 She was so fele sipes blithe

1251. nith; lith.      1252. bryth.      1253. brith.      1255. nop.  
 1258. pou.      1259. pouthe; wat.      1267. He; read Ia.  
 1269. more þat; om. more H.      1273. shal; wit.      1274. þo.  
 1276. uth.

þat she ne mihte hirę ioie mythe;  
 But Hauelok sone anon she kiste,  
 And he slep, and nouht ne wiste 1280  
 Hwat þat aungel hauęde seyð.  
 Of his slep a-non he brayd,  
 And seide, 'Lemman, slepes þou?  
 A selkuth drem me dremedę nou.

HERKNE nou hwat me haueth met: 1285  
 Me þouhte y was in Denemark set,  
 But on on þe moste hil  
 þat euere yete kam i til.  
 It was so hey, þat y wel mouhte  
 Al þe werd se, als me þouhte. 1290  
 Als i sat up-on þat lowe,  
 I gan Denemark for to awe,  
 þe borwes and þe castles stronge;  
 And mine armes weręn so longe,  
 That i fadmede, al at ones, 1295  
 Denemark, with mine longe bones;  
 And þanne y woldę mine armes drawe  
 Til me, and [þouhte hem] for to [awe],  
 Al that euere in Denemark liuęden  
 On mine armes faste clyuęden; 1300  
 And þe stronge castles alle  
 On knes bigunnen for to falle,  
 þe keyes fellen at mine fet:—  
 Anoþer drem me dremedę ek,  
 þat ich fley ouer þe salte se 1305

1278. mithe. 1280. nouth. 1281. Hwan (!). 1284.  
 dremede me. 1286. þouthe. 1289. mouthe. 1290. þouthe.  
 1292. bigan; read gan H. 1298. Supply þouhte H.; hom (read  
 hem H.); haue (read awe), as in l. 1292 (Hupe). 1304. dremede me.

Til Engeland, and al with me  
 þat euere was in Denemark lyues,  
 But bondemen and here wiues;  
 And þat ich kom til Engeland,  
 Al closede it intil min hond, [Fol. 211, col. 2.] 1310  
 And, Goldeborw, y gaf [it] þe:—  
 Deus! lemman, hwat may þis be?  
 Sho answerede, and seyde sone:  
 'Iesu Crist, þat made mone,  
 Þine dremes turne to ioie, . . . 1315  
 þat wite þw that sittes in trone!  
 Ne non [so] strong king, ne caysére  
 So þou shalt be, for þou shalt bere  
 In Engeland corune yet;  
 Denemark shal knele to þi fet; 1320  
 Allþe þe castles þat aræn þer-inne  
 Shal-tow, lemman, ful wel winne.  
 I wot, so wel so ich it sowe,  
 \* To þe shole comen heye and lowe,  
 And alle þat in Denemark wone, 1325  
 Em and broþer, fader and sone,  
 Erl and baroun, dreng and þayn,  
 Knihtes, and burgéys, and sweyn,  
 And [make þe] king heylike and wel;  
 Denemark shal be þin euere-ilec del. 1330  
 Hauē þou nouht þer-of [no] doute  
 Nouht þe worth of one noute;  
 Þer-of with-inne þe firste yer

1311. *Supply* it. 1315, 1316. *Two lines perhaps lost; to make sense,*  
*alter* l. 1316 to And leue, þat þou sitte in trone! 1317. *Supply* so.  
 1318. fo (l). 1323. *woth*. 1327. an kayn (*sic*); kayn = cayn,  
*for* tain = thain. 1328. Knithes. 1329. mad; *read* make,  
*and supply* þe. 1331. nouth; offe; *supply* no; douthē. 1332.  
*Nouth; nouthē*. 1333. offe.

Shalt þou ben king, [with-uten were].

But do nou als y wile, rathe;

1335

*Nimen wit* to Denemark baþe,

And do þou nouht on frest þis fare;

"Lith and selthe felawes are."

For shal ich neuere bliþe be

Til i with eyen Denemark se;

1340

For ich wot, þat al þe lond

Shalt þou hauē in þin hond.

Prey Grimes sones, alle þre,

That he wenden forþ with þe;

I wot, he wilen þe nouht werne,

1345

With þe wende shulē he yerne,

For he louē þe herte-like,

Þou maght telle he aren quike,

Hwore-so he o worde aren;

Herē ship þou do hem swithe yaren,

1350

And loke þat þou dwelle nouht:

"Dwelling hauēth ofte scape wrouht."

**H**WAN Hauelok herde þat she radde,

Sone it was day, sone he him cladde,

And sone to þe kirke yede [Fol. 211 b, col. 1.] 1355

Or he dide ani oþer dede,

Bifor þe rode bigan [to] falle;

Croiz and Crist bi[gan] to kalle,

And seyde, 'Louerd, þat al weldes,

Wind and water, wodes and feldes, 1360

1334. king of euere-il del (*repeated from* l. 1330); *read* with-uten were (without doubt).

1336. Nim in witi þe; *read* Nimen wit

(let us two go); denemak.

1337. nouth.

1341. woth.

1342. hon.

1345. nouth.

1348. til;

*read* telle.

1350. þere;

*read* Here.

1351. dwellew nouth.

1352. wrouth.

1357.

And bifor: om. And; *supply* to.

1358. bi (*for* bi-gan).

For the holi milce of you,  
 Hauē merci of me, louerd, nou!  
 And wreke me yet on mi fo  
 ꝓat ich saw biforn min eyne slo  
 Mine sistres, with a knif, 1365  
 And sipen wolde me mi lyf  
 Hauē reft, for in the [depe] se  
 Bad he Grim hauē drenched me.  
 He [hath] mi lond with mikel un-riht,  
 With michel wrong, with mikel pliht; 1370  
 For i ne misdede him neuere nouht,  
 And haueth me to sorwe brouht.  
 He hauēth me do mi mete þigge,  
 And ofte in sorwe and pine ligge.  
 Louerd, hauē merci of me, 1375  
 And latē [me] passe wel þe se—  
 [þouh] ich hauē ther-of doute and kare—  
 With-uten stormes ouer-fare,  
 ꝓat y ne drenched [be] þer-ine,  
 Ne [may] forfaren for no sinne. 1380  
 And bringge me wel to þe lond  
 ꝓat Godard haldes in his hond;  
 ꝓat is mi riht, eueri del:  
 Iesu Crist, þou wost it wel!

**þ**AVNE he hauēde his bede seyð, 1385  
 His offrende on þe auter leyð,  
 His leue at Iesu Crist he tok,

1364. *Perhaps omit ꝓat.* 1367. *Supply depe.* 1369. *Supply*  
 hath; vn-Rith. 1370. *plith.* 1371. *ine (perhaps omit ne).*  
 1372. *haued (!); brouht.* 1373. *to þigge (omit to).* 1376. *Supply*  
 me; wel passe. 1377. *ꝓat ihc; read þouh ich; offe douth.*  
 1379. *Supply be.* 1380. *Supply may.* 1383. *Rith.*

And at his suete moder ok,  
 And at þe croiz, þat he bi lay,  
 Siþen yede sorę grotinde away. 1390

**H**WAN he com hom, he wore yare,  
 Grimes sones, forto fare  
 In-to þe se, fishes to gete,  
 Þat Hauelok mihte wel of ete.  
 But Hauelok þouhte al anoper, 1395  
 First he kalde þe eldestę broþer,  
 Roberd þe Rede, bi his name,  
 William Wendut, and H[uwe R]auen,  
 Grimes sones alle þre,  
 And seyde, 'Lipes nou to me; [Fol. 211 b, col. 2.] 1400  
 Louerdinges, ich wilę you showe  
 A ping of me þat ye wel knowe.  
 Mi fader was king of Denshe lond,  
 Denemark was al in his hond  
 Þe day þat he was quik and ded; 1405  
 But þanne hauęde he wicke red,  
 Þat he me, and Denemark al,  
 And mine sistres bi-tawhte a þral:  
 A deueles lime [he] us bitawhte,  
 And al his lond, and al hise auhte. 1410  
 For y saw that fule fend  
 Slo mine sistres with hise hend;  
 First he shar a-two here þrotes,

1389. biforn; *read* bi.  
 prefixed to the next line.  
 1396. kade (!); heldeste.  
 Only an assonance, not a rime, seems intended.  
 1408. bi tawte.  
 1412. Mine sistres slo.  
 1391. In the MS. the capital letter is  
 1394. mithe.  
 1395. auelok þouthe.  
 1398. wenduth; haueu; cf. ll. 1868, 2528.  
 1400. seye (*read*  
 1401. shene.  
 1402. knewe.  
 1409. Supply he; hus bitawte.  
 1410. authe.



And siþen [karf] hem al to grotes,  
 And siþen bad [he] in þe se 1415  
 Grim, youre fader, drenchen me.  
 Deplike dede he him swere  
 On bok, þat he me sholde bere  
 Vnto þe se, and drenchen inne,  
 And [he] woldę taken on him þe sinne. 1420  
 But Grim was .wis, and swiþe hende,  
 Wolde he nouht his soule shende;  
 Leuerę was him be for-sworen  
 þan drenchen me, and ben for-loren;  
 But sonę bigan he forto fle 1425  
 Fro Denemark, forto berwen me.  
 For yif ich hauęde þer ben funden,  
 Hauęde [he] ben slayn, or harde bunden,  
 And heyę ben hanged on a tre,  
 Hauęde gon for him gold ne fe. 1430  
 For-þi fro Denemark hider he fledde,  
 And me ful fayre and ful wel fedde,  
 So þat vn-to þis [ilke] day  
 Haue ich ben fed and fostred ay.  
 But nou ich am up to þat elde 1435  
 Cumen, that ich may wepne welde,  
 And y may grete dintes yeue,  
 Shal i neuere, hwil ich lyue,  
 Ben glad, til that ich Denemark se;  
 I preię you þat ye wendę with me, 1440  
 And ich may mak you riche men;

1414. *Supply* karf (*see footnote to l. 471*). 1415. *Supply* he.  
 1418. sholde me. 1419. an; ine. 1420. *Supply* he. 1422.  
 nouth. 1423. to be (*omit to*). 1424. lorn. 1426.  
 MS. berpen (*the A. S. w being used here*); cf. l. 697. 1427. yif  
 (*with long s*). 1428. *Supply* he. 1430. go; read gon.  
 1433. *Supply* ilke. 1435. helde.

Ilk of you shal hauē castles ten,  
 And þe lond þat þor-til longes,  
 Borwes, tunes, wodes and wonges.'

[A leaf has here been cut out of the MS., containing 180 lines. The missing portion must have been to this effect. 'To this they gladly assented; and Havelok, accompanied by his wife Goldeborw and the sons of Grim, set sail for Denmark. Disembarking, they travel till they reach the castle of a great Danish earl, named Ubbe, who had formerly been a close friend to king Birkabeyn. Havelok begs that he will allow him to live in that part of the country, and to gain a livelihood by trading.']

'With swilk als ich byen shal : [Fol. 212, col. 1.] 1625  
 Þer-of bi-seche [ich] you nou leue;  
 Wile ich speke with non oþer reue,  
 But with [you], þat iustise are,  
 Þat y mihte [sellēn] mi ware  
 In gode borwes up and doun, 1630  
 And faren ich wilē fro tun to tun.'  
 A gold ring drow he forth anon,  
 An hundred pund was worth þe ston,  
 And yaf it Ubbe for to spede :—  
 'He was ful wis þat first yaf mede ;' 1635  
 And so was Hauelok ful wis here,  
 He solde his gold ring ful dere :  
 Was neuere non so dere sold  
 [Fro] chapmen, neyþer yung ne old :  
 Þat sholēn ye forthward ful wel [leren,] 1640  
 Yif þat ye wile þe storie heren.

**H**WAN Ubbe hauēde þe gold ring,  
 Hauēde he yeuenet for no þing,

1626. Supply ich. 1628. þe; read you H. 1629. mithe seken  
 (but read sellen). 1639. For; read Fro H. 1640. shoren (read  
 sholen); heren (read leren, as in l. 12 where it rimes with heren H.).  
 1643. youenet (read yeuenet = yeuen)

Nouht for þe borw euere-ilk del:—

Hauelok bi-held he swiþe wel, 1645

Hu he was wel of bones maked,

• Brod in þe sholdres, ful wel schaped,

Þicke in þe brest, of bodi long;

He semedeþ wel to ben wel strong.

‘Deus!’ quath Ubbe, ‘qui ne were he kniht? 1650

I wot, þat he is swiþe wiht! *hand is be not strong?*

Beterę semedeþ him to bere

Helm on heued, sheld and spere,

þanne to beye and selle ware.

Allas! þat he shal þer-with fare! 1655

Goddot! wile he trowe me,

Chaffare shal he late be.’

Neþeles he seyde sone:

‘Hauelok, haue [þou] þi bone,

And y ful wel rede þe 1660

þat þou come, and ete with me.

To-day, þou, and þi fayre wif,

þat þou louest also þi lif.

And haue þou of hire no drede,

Shal hire no man shame bede. 1665

Bi þe fey y owe to þe,

þerof shal i [mi-self] borw be.’

**H**AUELOK herde þat he bad,

[Al]-thowh was he ful sore [a]drad

With him to ete, for hisę wif; [Fol. 212, col. 2.] 1670

For him worę leuereþ þat his lif

1644. Nouth; il.	1645. bi hel.	1646. Hw.	1650.
hwat ( <i>read</i> quath); knith.	1651. woth; with.	1659. Supply	
þou. 1660. þ ( <i>for</i> þe).	1666. fey that y; omit that.	1667.	
<i>me self: read</i> mi-self.	1669. And thow; drad.		

Him wore reft, þan she in blame  
 Felle, or lauhte ani shame.  
 Hwænnē [þat] he his wille quath,  
 Þe stede, þat he onne sat, 1675  
 Smot Ubbe [þo] with spures faste,  
 And forth away, but at þe laste,  
 Or he [ferre] fro him ferde,  
 Seyde he, þat his folk [it] herde :  
 'Loke þat ye comen beþe, 1680  
 For ich it wile, and ich it rede.'

**H**AUELOK ne durste, þey he were adrad,  
 Nouht with-sitten þat Ubbe bad ;  
 His wif he dide with him lede,  
 Vn-to þe heye curt he yede. 1685  
 Roberd hire ledde, þat was red,  
 þat hauēde [þoled] for hire þe ded \ - ?  
 Or ani hauēde hire misseyd,  
 Or hand with iuele onne leyd.  
 William Wendut was þat oþer 1690  
 þat hire ledde, Roberdes broþer,  
 þat was wiht at alle nedes :  
 'Wel is him þat god man fedes !'  
 þan he werē comen to þe halle,  
 Biforen Ubbe, and hisē men alle, 1695  
 Vbbe stirte hem ageyn,  
 And mani a kniht, and mani a sweyn,  
 Hem for to se, and forto shewe ;  
 Þo stod Hauelok als a lowe

1673. lauhte. 1674. *Supply* þat; he hauede his wille *wat* (pat);  
*om.* hauede, and write quath *for* wat (as in l. 595). 1676. *Supply* þo.  
 1678. *Supply* ferre, i. e. farther. 1679. *Supply* it H. 1682. þe; adrad  
 (see l. 1669). 1683. Nouth. 1685. yde (l). 1687. haue; þarned (*cf.*  
 2492); read þoled. 1690. Willam. 1692. with. 1697. knith.

Aboven [po] þat þer-inne wore, 1700  
 Riht al bi þe heued more  
 Þanne ani þat þer-inne stod:  
 Þo was Ubbe blipe of mod,  
 þat he saw him so fayr and hende;  
 Fro him ne mihte his herte wende, 1705  
 Ne fro him, ne fro his wif;  
 He louede hem sone so his lif.  
 Werē non in Denemark, þat him þouhte,  
 þat he so mikel loue mouhte;  
 More he louede Hauelok one 1710  
 þan al Denemark, bi mine wone!  
 Lokē nou, hu God helpen kan  
 O mani wise wif and man.

H WAN it was comen time to ete,  
 Hisē wif dede Ubbe sone in fete, 1715  
 [Fol. 212 b, col. 1.]

And til hirē seyde, al on gamen:  
 ‘ Dame, þou and Hauelok shuleē etē samen,  
 And Goldeboru shal etē with me,  
 þat is so fayr so flour on tre;  
 In al Denemark is wimman [non] 1720  
 So fayr so sche, bi seint Iohan!’  
 þanne [he] werē set, and bord leyð,  
 And þe beneysun was seyð,  
 Biforn hem com þe beste mete  
 þat king or cayser wolde ete; 1725  
 Kranes, swannes, ueneysun,  
 Lax, lampreys, and god sturgiun,

1700. Supply þo. 1701. Rith. 1705. mithe. 1708. þouthe.  
 1709. mouthe. 1712. hw. 1718. wit. 1720. nis (read is);  
 supply non E. 1722. Supply he; bord (pron. borred). 1727.  
 sturgun; see l. 753.

Pymment to drinke, and god claré,  
 Win hwit and red, ful god plenté.  
 Was þer-inne no page so lite 1730  
 Þat euere wolde ale bite.  
 Of þe mete forto telle,  
 Ne of þe [win] bidde i nouht dwelle;  
 Þat is þe storie for to lenge, } *hah.*  
 It wolde anuye þis fayre genge. 1735  
 But hwan he hauēden ilk þing deyled,  
 And fele siþe hauēden wosseyled,  
 With gode drinkes seten longe,  
 And it was time for to gonge,  
 Ilk man to þer [þat] he cam fro, 1740  
 Þouhte Ubbe, 'Yf I late hem go,  
 Þus one foure, with-uten mo,  
 So mote ich brouke finger or to,  
 For þis wimman bes mikel wo!  
 For hire shal men hire louerd slo.' 1745  
 He tok sone knihtes ten,  
 And wel sixti oþer men,  
 With gode bowes, and with gleiues,  
 And sende him unto þe greyues,  
 Þe beste man of al þe toun, 1750  
 Þat was named Bernard Brun;  
 And bad him, als he louēde his lif,  
 Haelok wel yemen, and his wif,  
 And wel do wayten al þe niht,  
 Til þe oþer day, þat it were liht. 1755  
 Bernard was trewe, and swiþe wiht;

1733. metes (!); read win; nout. 1736. þe kilþing (kil for ilk);  
 om. þe; deled (but see l. 2099). 1737. siþes; read siþe H. (see l. 778).  
 1738. And with; om. And. 1740. II; supply þat. 1741. Þouthe.  
 1744. mike. 1746. knithes. 1748. Wit. 1753. ymen (!).  
 1754. nith. 1755. lith. 1756. with.

In al þe borw ne was no kniht  
 þat betere coupe on stede riden,  
 Helm on heued, ne swerd bi side.  
 Hauelok he gladlike under-stod [Fol. 212 b, col. 2.] 1760  
 With mikel loue and herte god,  
 And dide greyþe a super riche,  
 Also he was no whit chiche,  
 To his bihoue euer-ilk del,  
 þat he mihtę supe swiþe wel. 1765

ALSO he seten, and sholde soupe,  
 So comes a ladde in a ioupe,  
 And with him sixti oþer stronge,  
 With swerdes drawen, and kniues longe,  
 Ilkan in hande a ful god gleiue, 1770  
 And seyde, 'Undo, Bernard þe greyue!  
 Vndo swiþe, and lat us in,  
 Or þu art ded, bi seint Austin!'  
 Bernard stirt up, þat was ful big,  
 And caste a brinie up-on his rig, 1775  
 And grop an ax, þat was ful god,  
 Lep to þe dore, so he worę wod,  
 And seyde, 'Hwat arę ye, þat arę þer-oute,  
 þat þus biginþen forto stroute?  
 Goth henne swiþe, fule þeues, 1780  
 For, bi þe Louerd þat man on leues, (*believe in*)  
 Shol ich casten þe dore open,  
 Summe of you shal ich drepen!  
 And þe oþre shal ich kesten  
 In feteres, and ful faste festen!'  
 1785

1757. knith. 1761. mike. 1763. with; chinche (*see*  
 N. E. D.). 1764. il. 1765. mithe. 1772. latus.  
 1776. ar; read ax (*see* l. 1894).

'Hwat haue ye seid?' quoth a ladde,  
 'Wenęstu þat we ben adradde?  
 We sholen at þis dore gonge  
 Maugre þin, carl, or ouht longe.'  
 He gripen sone a bulder-ston, 1790  
 And let it fleye, ful god won,  
 Ageyn þe dore, þat it to-rof:  
 Hauelok it saw, and þider drof,  
 And þe barre sone vt-drow,  
 Þat was unride and gret ynow, 1795  
 And castę þe dore open wide,  
 And seide, 'Her shal y now abide:  
 Comes swiþe vn-to me!  
 Datheyt hwo you hezne fle!' (see p. 116-117)  
 'No,' quod on, 'þat shaltou coupe,' 1800  
 And bigan til him to loupe,  
 In his hond his swerd ut-drawe,  
 Hauelok he wende þore hauę slawe;  
 And with [him] comen oþer two,  
 Þat him wolde of liue hauę do. [Fol. 213, col. 1.]  
 Hauelok lifte up þe dore-tre, 1806  
 And at a dint he slow hem þre;  
 Was non of hem þat hise hernes  
 Ne lay þer-ute ageyn þe sternes.  
 Þe ferþe þat he sipen mette, 1810  
 With þe barre so he him grette,  
 Bifor þe heued, þat þe riht eye  
 Vt of þe hole made he fleye,  
 And siþe clapte him on þe crune

1788. shole. 1789. outh. 1792. Agen. 1793. Anelok.  
 1798. me datheit; but datheit belongs to l. 1799 (where it *removes*).  
 1800. quodh. 1804. Supply him. 1808. his. 1812. Wlt.  
 1812. rith.



60 HAVELOK SLAYS SEVEN OF THE THIEVES

So þat he stan-ded fel þor dune. 1815  
 Þe fifte þat he ouer-tok  
 Gáf he a ful sor dint ok,  
 Bitwen þe sholdres, þer he stod,  
 Þat he spende his herte blod.  
 Þe sixte wende for to fle, 1820  
 And he clapte him with þe tre  
 Riht in þe fule necke so,  
 Þat he smot his necke on to.  
 Þanne þe sixe werē doune feld,  
 Þe seuene brayd ut his swerd, 1825  
 And wolde Hauelok riht in the eye;  
 And Hauelok le[t þe] barre fleye,  
 And smot him sone ageyn þe brest,  
 Þat hauēde he neuere schrifte of prest;  
 For he was ded on lesse hwile 1830  
 Þan men mouhte renne a mile.  
 Alle þe opere werē ful kene;  
 A red þei taken hem bi-twene,  
 Þat the sholden him bi-halue, (sholden in two)  
 And brisen so, þat with no salue 1835  
 Ne sholde him helen leche non:  
 Þey drowen ut swerdes, ful god won,  
 And shoten on him, so don on bere  
 Dogges, þat wolden him to-tere,  
 Þanne men doth þe bere beyte: 1840  
 Þe laddes were kaske and teyte,  
 And vm-bi-yeden him ilkon.  
 Sum smot with tre, and sum with ston;  
 Summe puttē with gleyue in bac and side,

1819. spen.	1822. Riht.	1824. doun.	1826. Riht.
1827. þe; read let þe.	1829. schifte.	1831. mouthe.	1834.
1835. wit.	1842. un bi yeden.	1843. wit.	

And yeuen wundes longe and wide 1845  
 In twenti stedes, and wel mo,  
 Fro þe croune til the to.  
 Hwan he saw þat, he was wod,  
 And was it ferlik, hu he stod,  
 For the blod ran of his sides [Fol. 213, col. 2.]  
 So water þat fro þe welle glides; 1851  
 But þanne bigan he for to mowe  
 With the barre, and let hem shewe  
 Hu he cowþe sore smite;  
 For was þer non, long ne lite, 1855  
 þat he mouhte ouer-take,  
 þat he ne <sup>made</sup> garte his croune krake;  
 So þat, on a litel stund,  
 Felde he twenti to þe grund.

**P**O bigan gret dine to rise, 1860  
 For þe laddes on ilke wise  
 Asayleden him with grete dintes,  
 [Ful] ferthe, stoden, [and] with flintes  
 And gleyues schoten him fro ferne,  
 For drepen him he wolden yerne; 1865  
 But dursten ~~the~~ newhen him no more  
 þanne he bor or leuþ wore.

**H**UWE Rauē þat dine herde,  
 And powhte wel, þat men mis-ferde  
 With his louerd, for his wif; 1870  
 And grop an ore, and a long knif,  
 And þider drof al-so an hert,

1849. hw. 1854. Hw. 1856. Mouthe. 1862. Him  
 asayleden wit. 1863. Fro (read Ful H.); him; read and (see  
 l. 1864). 1869. powthe. 1871. ore is correct; see l. 1886.

And cam þer on a litel stert,  
 And saw how [þat] þe laddes wode  
 Hauelok his louerd umbistode, 1875  
 And beten on him so doth þe smith  
 With þe hamer on þe stiith.

‘**A**LLAS!’ quath Huwe, ‘þat y was boren!  
 Pat euere et ich bred of koren!  
 Pat ich here þis sorwe sel 1880  
 Roberd! William! hware ar ye?  
 Gripeth eyþer unker a god tre,  
 And latę we nouht þise dogges fle,  
 Til ure louerd wreke [be];  
 Cometh swiþe, and folwes me! 1885  
 Ich haue in honde a ful god ore:  
 Datheit hwo ne smite sore!’  
 ‘Ya! leue, ya!’ quod Roberd sone,  
 ‘We hauen ful god liht of þe mone.’  
 Roberd a staf grop, strong and gret, 1890  
 Pat mouhte ful wel bere a net,  
 And William Wendut grop a tre  
 Mikel gretterę þan his þe,  
 And Bernard held his ax ful faste;  
 I seye, was he nouht þe laste; [Fol. 213 b, col. 1.]  
 And lopen forth so he weren wode 1896  
 To þe laddes, þer he stode,  
 And yaf hem wundes swiþe grete;  
 Þer mihtę men wel se boyes bete,

1873. cham. 1874. *I supply* þat; H. *supplies* al. 1878.  
 hwat hwe; *read* quath Huwe. 1881. willam. 1882. eþer; *see*  
 l. 2665. 1883. nouth; doges. 1884. *Supply* be. 1887. wo.  
 1889. lith; *perhaps omit* þe. 1890. grop a staf. 1891. mounthe.  
 1892. willam. 1893. þre (*due to tre in l. 1892*). 1895. nouth.  
 1899. mithe.

And ribbes in herē sides breke, 1900  
 And Hauelok on hem wel [be] wreke.  
 He broken armes, he broken knes,  
 He broken shankes, he broken thes.  
 He dide þe blode þerē renne dune  
 To þe fet riht fro the crune, 1905  
 For was þer spared heued non:  
 He leyden on heuēdes, ful god won,  
 And made croune[s] breke and crake  
 Of þe broune, and of þe blake;  
 He maden herē backes al-so bloute 1910  
 Als herē wombes, and made hem rowte  
 Als he weren kradelbarnes:  
 So dos þe child þat moder þarnes.

7

DAPEIT hwo recket for he it seruede;  
 Hwat dide he þore? He weren werewed! 1915  
 So longe hauēden he but and bet  
 With neues under hernes set,  
 Þat of þo sixti men and on  
 Ne wente away þer liues non.

ON þe morwen, hwan it was day, 1920  
 Ilc on other wirwed lay  
 Als it were dogges þat weren hinged;  
 And summe leye in dikes slenget,  
 And summe in gripes bi þe her  
 Drawen ware, and laten ther. 1925

1901. Supply be. 1905. rith. 1908. croune. 1911. he (for here).  
 1914. we (pe); read wo = hwo. 1915. weren he; cf. l. 1921.  
 1917. For hernes read heres (= eres) H. 1919. þer away; read away þer H. 1920. hhan (for hwan = hwan).

64 *UBBE ASKS BERNARD WHAT HAS HAPPENED*

Sket cam tiding in-til Ubbe,  
 þat Hauelok hauðe with a clubbe  
 Of hise slawen sixti and on  
 Sergaunz, þe beste þat mihten gon.  
 'Deus!' quoth Ubbe, 'hwat may þis be?  
 Beterę is i nime miself and se  
 [Hwat] þis baret [oweth on] wold, [*what this stuff 1930*  
*meant*]  
 þanne i sende yunge or old.  
 For yif i sende him un-to,  
 I wenę men sholde him shame do, 1935  
 And þat ne wolde ich for no þing:  
 I loue him wel, bi heuene king!  
 Me wore leuerę i wore lame  
 þanne men dide him ani shame,  
 Or tok, or onne handes leyde [Fol. 213 b, col. 2.]  
 Vn-ornelike, or shame seyde.' 1941  
 He lep up on a stede liht,  
 And with him mani a noble kniht,  
 And ferde forth un-to þe tun,  
 And dide calle Bernard Brun 1945  
 Vt of his hus, hwan he þer cam;  
 And Bernard sone ageyn [him] nam,  
 Al to-tused and al to-torn,  
 Ner also naked so he was born,  
 And al to-brised, bac and þe: 1950  
 Quoth Ubbe, 'Bernard, hwat is þe?  
 Hwo haues þe þus ille maked,  
 þus to-riuen, and al mad naked?'

1929. mithen. 1931. his inime. 1932. þat þis baret on  
 hwat is wold; *read* Hwat þis baret haueth on wold H. (*rather* oweth  
 on wold; *see* note). 1941. Vn orncliffe (*with long s for i*); same.  
 1942. lith. 1943. knith. 1946. wan. 1947. *Supply*  
 him.

'LOUERD, merci,' quoth he sone,  
 'To-nicht, also ros þe mone, 1955  
 Comen her mo þan sixti þeues,  
 With loken copes and wide sleues,  
 Me forto robben and to pine,  
 And for to drepe me and mine.  
 Mi dore he broken up ful sket, 1960  
 And wolde me binden hond and fet.  
 Hwan þe godemen þat sawe,  
 Hauelok, and he þat bi þe wowe  
 Leye, he stirten up sone on-on,  
 And summe grop tre, and sum grop ston, 1965  
 And driue hem ut, þei he weren crus,  
 So dogges ut of milne-hous.  
 Hauelok grop þe dore-tre,  
 And [at] a dint he slow hem thre.  
 He is þe beste man at nede 1970  
 Þat euere-mar shal ride [on] stede!  
 Als helpe God, bi mine wone,  
 A þousand men is he worth one!  
 Yif he ne were, ich werę nou ded,  
 So haue ich don mi soule red! — 1975  
 But it is of him mikel sinne;  
 He maden him swilke woundes þinne,  
 Þat of þe alþer-leste wounde *1980*  
 Were a stede brouht to grunde.  
 He haues a wunde in the side, 1980  
 With a gleyue, ful un-ride;  
 And he haues on þoru his arum,  
 Þer-of is [him] ful mikel harum;

1954. Iouerd (*with large capital*); quot. 1962. Wan. 1969.  
 Supply at. 1971. Supply on; see ll. 10, 26. 1973. þhousend of;  
 read þousand, omitting of (see l. 127); his. 1975. Mi. 1976. hof.  
 1983. Supply him H.

And he hauę on þoru bis þe,  
 Þe vn-rideste þat men may se; [Fol. 214, col. 1.] 1985  
 And oþere wundes hauę he stronge,  
 Mo than twenti, swiþe longe.  
 But siþen he hauęde lauhþ þe sor  
 Of þe wundes, was neuere bor  
 Þat so fauhþ so he fauhþ þanne; 1990  
 Was non þat hauęde þe hern-panne  
 So hard, þat he ne dede alto-crusshe,  
 And alto-shiuere, and alto-frusshe.  
 He folwede hem so hund dos hare,  
 -Daþeyt on he wolde spare, 1995  
 Þat [he] ne made hem euerilk on  
 Ligge stille so doth þe ston:  
 And þer nis he nouht to frie,  
 For oþer sholde he make hem lye  
 Ded, or þei him hauęde slawen, 2000  
 Or alto-hewen, or alto-drawen.

LOUERD, haui no more pliht  
 Þat ich was [greued] þus to-niht.  
 Þus wolde þe theues me hauę rest,  
 God þank, he hauęnet sure keft. 2005  
 But it is of him mikel scape:  
 I wot þat he bes ded ful rape. *JGH*

QUOTH Ubbe, 'Bernard, seyst þou soth?'  
 'Ya, sire, that i ne lepe oth.  
 Yif y, louerd, a word leye, 2010

1984. þhe.	1986. oþe (for oþere).	1988. lauhþ.	1990.
fauhþ (twice).	1992. cruhsse.	1996. Supply he.	1998.
nouth.	2002. plith.	2003. Of þat (om. Of); þus greþed (see	
l. 2953); nith.	2005. But god (But from l. 2006).	2007. woth.	
2009. ine.			

To-morwen do me hengen heye.  
 þe burgeys þat þer-bi stode þore  
 Grundlike and grete oþes swore,  
 Litle and mikle, yunge and olde,  
 þat was soth, þat Bernard tolde. 2015  
 Soth was, þat he wolden him bynde,  
 And trusse al þat he mihten fynde  
 Of hise, in arke or in kiste,  
 þat he mouhte in seckes priste.  
 'Louerd, away he haueden al born 2020  
 His þing, and him-self alto-torn,  
 But als[o] God self barw him wel,  
 þat he ne tinte no catel.  
 Hwo mihte so mani stonde ageyn  
 Bi nihter-tale, kniht or swein? 2025  
 He weren bi tale sixti and ten,  
 Starke laddes, stalworþi men,  
 And on, þe mayster of hem alle,  
 þat was [bi] name Griffin Galle.  
 Hwo mouhte ageyn so mani stonde, [Fol. 214, col. 2.]  
 But als þis man of ferne londe 2031  
 Haueth hem slawen with a tre?  
 Mikel ioie haue he!  
 God yeue him mikel god to welde,  
 Boþe in tun, and ek in felde! 2035  
 "Wel is set, he etes mete." [L. 119]  
 Quoth Ubbe, 'Doth him swiþe fete,  
 þat y mouhte his woundes se,  
 Yf that he mouhten heled be.

2014. holde. 2017. mithen. 2019. mouthe. 2020. he  
 haueden al away. 2022. als. 2024. mithe. 2025. nither tale  
 knith. 2029. þe; read bi; giffin. 2030. mouthe agey (!).  
 2036. We (see ll. 772, 907). 2038. mouthe. 2039. mouhten  
 holed (see l. 2058).



For yf he mouhte couere yet, 2040  
 And gangen wel up-on hisē fet,  
 Mi-self shal dubben him to kniht,  
 For-þi þat he is [man] so wiht.  
 And yif he liuēde, þo foule theues,  
 Þat weren of Kaymes kin and Eues, 2045  
 He sholden hange bi þe necke  
 Of here ded daþeit hwo recke, (*causal*, *recke*) ?  
 Hwan he yeden þus on nihtes  
 To binde boþe burgmen and knihtes.  
 For bynderes loue ich neuere mo, 2050  
 Of hem ne yeue ich nouht a slo.'

HAUELOK was [to] Ubbe browht,  
 þat hauēde for him ful mikel þouht,  
 And mikel sorwe in his herte  
 For hise wundes, þat werē so smerte. 2055

BUT hwan his wundes weren shewed,  
 And a leche hauēde knawed  
 þat he hem mouhte ful wel hele,  
 Wel make him ganġe, and ful wel mele,  
 And wel a palefrey bistride, 2060  
 And wel up-on a stede ride,  
 þo let Ubbe al his care  
 And al his sorwe ouer-fare;  
 And seyde, 'Cum now forth with me,  
 And Goldeboru, þi wif, with þe, 2065  
 And þine seriaunz alle þre,

2040. mouthe.      2042. dubbe (*for* dubbē); knith.      2043.  
*Supply* man H.; with.      2045. kaym.      2047. wo.      2048.  
 nihtes.      2049. knithes.      2052. bifore; *read* to; browth.  
 2053. þouth.      2055. we (*for* were).      2057. knawed (i. e. made  
*known*; *causal*); *perhaps read* knawen.      2058. mouthe.

For nou wile y yourę warant be;  
 Wile y [pat] non of here frend  
 Pat þu slowe with þin hend  
 Mouhte wayte þe [to] slo, 2070  
 Also þou gange to and fro.  
 I shal lene þe a bowr  
 Pat is up in þe heye tour,  
 Til þou mowe ful wel go,  
 And wel ben hol of al þi wo. [Fol. 214 b, col. 1.]  
 It ne shal no þing ben bitwene 2076  
 Þi bour and min, also y wene,  
 But a fayr firrenę wowe;—  
 Speke y loude, or spek y lowe,  
 Pou shalt ful wel heren me, 2080  
 And þan þu wilt, þou shalt me se.  
 A rof shal hile us boþe o-niht,  
 Pat none of mine, clerk ne kniht,  
 Ne sholęn þi wif no shame bede,  
 No moreþ þan min, so God me rede !' 2085

**H**E dide un-to þe borw bringe  
 Sone anon, al with ioyinge,  
 His wif, and [ek] his serganz þre,  
 Þe beste men þat mouhte be.  
 Þe firste niht he lay þer-inne, 2090  
 Hisę wif, and [ek] his serganz þrinne,  
 Aboute þe middel of þe niht  
 Wok Ubbe, and saw a mikel liht

2068. Supply þat. 2070. Moucte; supply to. 2076, 2077.  
 H. places ben in l. 2077, after min; altering also to als (it is hardly  
 necessary). 2080. sahalt; and the second a is expuncted by mistake,  
 instead of the first. 2082. nith. 2083. knith. 2087. ioyngē.  
 2088, 2091. Supply ek H. 2089. mouthe. 2090, 2092. nith.  
 2093. lith.

In þe bour [þer] Hauelok lay,  
Also briht so it werę day.

2095

'DEUS!' quoth Ubbe, 'hwat may þis be?

Betere is i go miself, and se:  
Hweþer he sitten<sup>en</sup> nou, and wesseylen,  
Or ani sotshiþe to-deyle,

Þis tid nihtes, also foles;

2100

Þan birþ men casten hem in poles,

Or in a grip, or in þe fen:

Nou ne sitten none but wicke men,

Glotuns, reueres, or wicke þeues,

Bi Crist, þat alle folk on leues!

2105

HE stod, and totede in at a bord

Er he spak anlepi word,

And saw hem slepen faste ilkon,

And lye stille so þe ston;

And saw [þat] al þat mikel liht

2110

Fro Hauelok cam, þat was so briht.

Of his mouth it com ilk del,

Þat was he war ful swiþe wel.

'Deus!' quoth he, 'hwat may þis mene!'

He calde þoþe arwe men and kene,

2115

Knihtes and serganz swiþe sleie,

Mo þan an hundred, with-uten leye,

And bad hem alle comen and se

Hwat þat selcuth mihte be.

2094. þat; read þer; see l. 2121. 2095. brith. 2099. Or  
of ani shotshiþe; omit of, and read sotshiþe. 2100. nihtes.  
2101. birþe. 2104. reures. 2105. onne. 2107. Her;  
anilepi. 2110. Supply þat H.; lith. 2111. brith. 2112. il.  
2116. Knithes. 2119. mithe.

ALS þe knihtes were comen alle [Fol. 214 b, col. 2.]  
 Þer Hauelok lay, ut of þe halle, 2121  
 So stod ut of his mouth a glem,  
 Riht al swilk so þe sunne-bem;  
 Þat al so liht was þare, bi heuene!  
 So þer brenden serges seuene 2125  
 And an hundred serges ok:  
 Þat durste hi sweren on a bok.  
 He slepen faste alle fiue,  
 So he weren brouht of liue;  
 And Hauelok lay on his list side, 2130  
 In his armes his brihte bride.  
 Bi þe pappes he leyen naked:  
 So faire two werē neuere maked  
 In a bed to lyen samen:—  
 Þe knihtes þouht of hem god gamen, 2135  
 Hem forto shewe and loken to.  
 Riht also he stoden alle so,  
 And his bac was toward hem wend,  
 So werē he war of a croiz ful gent  
 On his riht shuldre, swiþe briht, 2140  
 Brihter þan gold ageyn þe liht;  
 So þat he wiste, heye and lowe,  
 Þat it was kunrik þat he sawe.  
 It sparkede, and ful brihte shon  
 So doth þe gode charbucle-ston, 2145  
 Þat men se mouhte, by þe liht,  
 A peni chesen, so was it briht. | see note p. 120  
 Þanne bihelden he him faste,

2120. knihtes. 2123. Rith. 2124. lith; wa (for was).  
 2129. brouth. 2130. Read lifte? 2131. brith. 2135.  
 knithes pouth. 2137. Rith. 2138. Read went? 2140. rith;  
 swe (for swiþe); brith. 2141. Brithter; lith. 2144. brith.  
 2146. Mouthe se; lith. 2147. brith.

So þat he knewen, at þe laste,  
 þat he was Birkabeynes sone, 2150  
 þat was herē king, þat was hem wone  
 Wel to yemen, and wel were  
 Ageynes uten-laddes here.  
 'For it was neuere yet a broþer  
 In al Denemark so lich anoper 2155  
 So þis man, þat is so fayr  
 Als Birkabeyn; he is hise eyr.'

HE fellen sone at hise fet,  
 Was non of hem þat he ne gret, (spoken)  
 Of ioie he weren allē so fawen 2160  
 So he him hauēden of erþe drawen.  
 Hise fet he kisten an hundred sypes,  
 Þe tos, þe nayles, and þe lithes,  
 So þat he bigan to wakne,  
 And with hem ful-sore to blakne; [Fol. 215, col. 1.]  
 For he wende he wolden him slo, 2166  
 Or elles binde him, and do wo.

QUOTH Ubbe, 'Louerd, ne dred þe nowht,  
 Me þinkes that I se þi pouht.  
 Dere sone, wel is me 2170  
 þat y þe with eyen se. *mw*  
 Man-red, louerd, bede y þe,  
 þi man auht i ful wel to be;  
 For þu art comen of Birkabeyn,  
 þat hauēde mani kniht and sweyn; 2175  
 And so shalt þou, louerd, haue,

2152. yeme (for yemē). 2164. Here follows the catchword—And  
 wit hem. 2165. wit. 2168. nowht. 2169. pouth.  
 2171. eyn. 2175. knith. 2176. For so read also!

pouh þu be yet a ful yung knaue.  
 þou shalt be king of al Denemark,  
 Was þer-inne neuere non so stark.  
 To-morwen shaltu manrede take 2180  
 Of þe brune and of þe blake;  
 Of allē þat aren in þis tun,  
 Boþe of erl, and of barun,  
 And of dreng, and of thayn,  
 And of kniht, and of sweyn. 2185  
 And so shaltu ben maked kniht  
 With blisse, for þou art so wiht.

P<sup>O</sup> was Hauelok swiþe bliþe,  
 And þankedē God ful fele siþe.  
 On þe morwen, hwan it was liht, 2190  
 And gon was þisternesse of niht,  
 Vbbe dide up-on a stede  
 A ladde lepe, and þider bede  
 Erles, barouns, drenges, theynes,  
 Klerkes, knihtes, burgeys, sweynes, 2195  
 þat he sholden comen a-non  
 Biforen him sone euerilkon,  
 Also he loueden here liues,  
 And herē children and herē wiues.

H<sup>I</sup>S bodē ne durste he non at-sitte 2200  
 þat he ne neme, for to wite  
 Sone, hwat wolde þe iustise:  
 And [he] bigan anon to rise,

2177. pou. 2185. knith. 2186. mad; read maked (see  
 ll. 5, 23); knith. 2187. Wit; with. 2190. wan; lith. 2191.  
 þe niht; omit þe (Mb.). 2195. knithes bugeys. 2198. louen  
 (for loueden). 2200. Hise. 2201. meme (for neme); see  
 l. 1207. 2203. Supply he.

And seyde sone, 'Lipes me,  
 Alle samen, þeu and fre. 2205  
 A þing ich wile you herę shauwe,  
 þat [ye] alle ful wel knawe.  
 Ye witen wel þat al þis lond  
 Was in Birkabeynes hond,  
 Þe day þat he was quic and ded; [Fol. 215, col. 2.] 2210  
 And how þat he, bi youre red,  
 Bitauhte hise children þre  
 Godard to yeme, and al his fe.  
 Hauelok his sone he him [bi-]tauhte,  
 And hisę two douhtres, and al his auhte. 2215  
 Alle herden ye him swere  
 On boke, and on messe-gere,  
 þat he shulde yeme hem wel,  
 With-uten lac, with-uten tel.

**H**E let his oth al ouer-go, 2220  
 Euere wurþe him yuel and wol  
 [Fro] þe maydnes here lif  
 Refte he boþen, with a knif;  
 And him shulde ok hauę slawen,  
 Þe knif was at his herte drawen; 2225  
 But God him wolde wel hauę saue,  
 He hauęde reunesse of þe knaue,  
 So þat [þo] he with his hend  
 Ne drop him nouht, þat sori fend!  
 But sone dide he a fishere 2230  
 Swipe grete oþes swere,  
 þat he sholde drenchen him  
 In þe se, þat was ful brim.

2207. he; *read* ye. 2214. *Supply* bi-. 2217. bok (*see* l. 2311).  
 2222. For; *read* Fro. 2228. *Supply* þo, or þanne. 2229. nouth; sor.

**H**WAN Grim saw þat he was so fayr,  
 And wiste he was þe rihte eir, 2235  
 Fro Denemark ful sone he fledde  
 In-til Englund, and þer him fedde  
 Mani winter, þat til þis day  
 Hauę he ben fed and fostred ay.  
 Lokes, hware he stondes her: 2240  
 In al þis werd ne hauę he per;  
 [Is] non so fayr, ne non so long,  
 Ne non so mikel, ne non so strong.  
 In þis middelerd nis no kniht  
 Half so strong, ne half so wiht. 2245  
 Bes of him ful glad and bliþe,  
 And cometh alle hider swiþe,  
 Manredeȝ yourę louerd forto make,  
 Boþe brune and þe blake!  
 I shal mi-self do first þe gamen, 2250  
 And ye siþen alle samen.'

**O**knes ful fayre he him sette,  
 Mouhte noping him þer-fro lette,  
 And bi-cam his man riht þare,  
 Þat alle sawen þat þerę ware. [Fol. 215 b, col. 1.] 2255

**A**FTER him stirt up laddes ten,  
 And bi-comen hise men;  
 And siþen euerilk a baroun  
 Þat euere weren in al that toun;  
 And siþen drenges, and siþen thaynes, 2260

2235. Rith; *read* rihte.      2242. *Supply* Nis H; *Is seems better.*  
 2244. knith.      2245. with.      2253. Mouthe.      2254. is; Rith.  
 2257. *A word (beye ?) is added after men in a late hand.*



And siþen knihtes, and siþen sweynes;  
 So þat, or þat day was gon,  
 In al þe tun ne was nouht on  
 Þat [he] ne was his man bi-comen:  
 Manrede of alle hauþe he nomen.

2265

H WAN he hauþe of hem alle  
 Manrede taken *in* the halle,  
 Grundlike dide he hem swere  
 Þat he him sholden god feyth bere  
 Ageynes alle þat woren on liue; 2270  
 Þer-yen ne wolde neuer on striue, |<sup>1</sup>.  
 Þat he ne maden sonþ þat oth,  
 Riche and poure, lef and loth. (*with smiling*)  
 Hwan þat was maked, sone he sende,  
 Vbbe, writes fer and hende, 2275  
 After alle þat castels yemþe,  
 Burwes, tunes, sibbe and fremde,  
 Þat þider sholden comen swipe  
 Til him, and heren tipandes bliþe,  
 Þat he hem alle shulde telle: 2280  
 Of hem ne wolde neuere on dwelle, (*long*)  
 Þat he ne come sonþ platinde,  
 Hwo hors ne hauþe, com gangande.  
 So þat with-*inne* a fourteeniht,  
 In al Denemark ne was no kniht, 2285  
 Ne conestable, ne shirþeue,  
 Þat com of Adam and of Eue,  
 Þat he ne com biforn sire Ubbe:  
 He dredde him so þef doth clubbe.

2261. knithes. 2263. nouth. 2264. it; *read* he. 2269.  
 sholden him. 2276. castel. 2277. an. 2284. -nith. 2285.  
 knith. 2289. þhef (*with long s*) = þhef = þef; as in l. 2434.

H WAN he þe king hauðen [i]-gret, 2290

And he werēn alle dune set,

þo seyde Ubbe, 'Lokes here

Vre louerd swiþe dere,

þat shal ben king of al þe lond,

And haue us alle under hond! 2295

For he is Birkabeynes sone,

þe king þat was vmbē stonde wone( *wont*)

[Us] for to yemen, and wel were

With sharpe swerd and longe spere.

Lokes nou, hu he is fayr; [Fol. 215 b, col. 2.] 2300

Sikerlike he is hise eyr.

Falles alle to hise fet,

Bicomes hise men ful sket.'

He werēn for Ubbe swiþe adrad,

And dide sone al þat he bad, 2305

And yet he deden sumdel more;

O bok ful grundlike he swore

þat he sholde with him halde( *take part*)

Boþe ageynes stille and bolde,

þat euere wolde his bodi dere: 2310

þat dide [he] hem o boke swere.

H WAN he hauðe manrede and oth

Taken of lef and [ek] of loth,

Vbbe dubbede him to kniht

With a swerd ful swiþe briht; 2315

And þe folk of al þe lond

Bitauhte him al in his hond,

2290. he haueden alle þe king gret; cf. l. 163. 2291. dun; read  
dune or adune; cf. l. 162. 2298. Supply Us H.; yeme; (cf.  
l. 2152). 2299. Wit sharp. 2300. hw. 2306. deden he.  
2310. wode. 2311. Supply he. 2313. Supply ek. 2314.  
knith. 2315. brith.

þe cuneriche euerilk del,  
 And made him king heylike and wel.  
 Hwan he was king, þer mouhte men se 2320  
 þe moste ioie þat mouhte be:  
 Buttinge with [þe] sharpe speres,  
 Skirming with talevas þat men beres,  
 Wrastling with laddes, putting of ston,  
 Harping and piping, ful god won, 2325  
 Leyk of mine, of hasard ok,  
 Romanz-reding on þe bok;  
 Þer mouhte men here þe gestes singe,  
 þe gleumen on þe tabour dinge;  
 Þer mouhte men se þe boles beyte, 2330  
 And þe bores, with hundes teyte;  
 Þo mouhte men se euerilk gleu, (L. sume)  
 Þer mouhte men se hu Grim greu;  
 Was neuere yete ioie more  
 In al þis werd, þan þo was þore. 2335  
 Þer was so mikel yest of clopes,  
 þat, þouh i swore you grete othes,  
 I ne wore [neuere] þer-of crod:  
 þat may i ful wel swere, bi God!  
 Þerþe was swiþe gode metes, 2340  
 And of wyn, þat men fer fetes,  
 Riht al so mikel and gret plenté  
 So it were water of þe se.  
 Þe feste fourti dawes sat,  
 So richþe was neuere non so þat. [Fol. 216, col. 1.] 2345  
 Þe king madþe Roberd pere [a] kniht,

2318. cunnriche (but see l. 2400); il. 2320. mouthe. 2322.  
 Supply þe. 2323. talevaces. 2328. mouthe. 2329. glevmen  
 (sic); cf. l. 2332. 2332. mouthe; eueril. 2333. mouthe; hw. 2336.  
 mike; see l. 2352. 2337. þou. 2338. nouth þer offe croud (read neuere  
 þer-of crod). 2342. Rith; mik; see l. 2352. 2346. Supply a; knith.

þat was ful strong and [ek] ful wiht;  
 And William Wendut ec, his broþer,  
 And Huwe Rauenz, þat was þat oper;  
 And made hem barouns alle þre, 2350  
 And yaf hem lond, and oper fe,  
 So mikel, þat ilker twenti knihtes  
 Hauēde of genge, dayes and nihtes.

H<sup>the hem  
with</sup>WAN þat feste was al don,  
 A thusand knihtes wel o bon 2355  
 With-held þe king, with him to lede;  
 þat ilkan hauēde ful god stede,  
 Helm and sheld and brinie briht,  
 And al þe wepne þat fel to kniht.  
 With hem [ek] fife thusand gode 2360  
 Sergaunz, þat werenz to fyhten wode,  
 With-held he [þer], al of his genge:  
 Wile I namore þe storie lenge.  
 Yet hwan he hauēde of al þe lond  
 þe casteles alle in his hond, 2365  
 And conestables don þer-inne,  
 He swor, he ne sholde neuer blinne  
 Til þat he were of Godard wreken,  
 þat ich haue of ofte speken.  
 Half hundred knihtes dede he calle, 2370  
 And hise fif thusand sergaunz alle,  
 And dide [hem] sweren on the bok  
 Sone, and on þe auter ok,  
 þat he ne sholde neuere blinne,

2347. *Supply* ek; with. 2348. willam; hec. 2352. twent (!).  
 2353. nihtes. 2355. ful wel; om. ful. 2358. brith. 2359.  
 knith. 2360. *Supply* ek; cf. l. 2371. 2361. fyht. 2362.  
*Supply* þer. 2365. Cf. l. 2276. 2370. Hal; read Half H.;  
 knithes. 2372. *Supply* hem.

Ne for loue, ne for sinne, 2375  
 Til þat he hauēden Godard funde,  
 And brouht biforn *him* faste bunde.

**P**ANNE he hauēden sworn þis oth,  
 Ne leten ~~he~~ nouht, for lef ne loth,  
 Þat he ne foren swiþe rathe 2380  
 Þer ~~he~~ was, unto þe pape  
 Þer he yet on hunting for  
 With mikel genge, and swiþe stor.  
 Robert, þat was of al þe ferd  
 Mayster, girt was with a swerd, 2385  
 And sat up-on a ful god stede,  
 Þat vnder him riht wolde wede;  
 He was þe firste þat with Godard  
 Spak, and seyde, 'Hede, caynard!  
 Hwat dost þu here at þis pape? [Fol. 216, col. 2.] 2390  
*Cum* to þe kinge, swiþe and rape,  
 Þat sendes [þe þis] word, and bedes,  
 Þat þu þenke hwat þu him dedes,  
 Hwan þu restes with a knif  
 Hise sistres here lif, 2395  
 And siþen bedē þu in þe se  
 Drenchen him; þat herde he!  
 He is to þe swiþe grim:  
*Cum* nu swiþe un-to him  
 Þat king is of þis kunerike, 2400  
 Þu fule man! þu wicke swike!  
 And he shal yelde þe þi mede,  
 Bi Crist þat wolde on rode blede!'

2377. brouht. 2378. sworn; *read* sworn. 2379. nouht. 2385.  
 was girt wit. 2387. Rith. 2389. canenard (*or* cauenard).  
 2390. Wat dos. 2391. king. 2392. he þe; *read* þe þis. 2396.  
 An. 2400. kuneriche.

**H**WAN Godard herde þat [he] þer þrette,  
 With þe neue he Robert sette 2405  
 Biforn þe teth a dint ful strong.  
 And Robert kipt ut a knif long,  
 And smot him þoru þe rihte arum:  
 Þer-of was [him] ful litel harum.

**H**WAN his folk þat sau and herde, 2410  
 Hou Robert with herę louerd ferde,  
 He hauęden him wel ner browht of liue,  
 Ne weren his breþren and opre fue, *note 1. 123*  
 [þat] slown of herę laddes ten,  
 Of Godardęs alþer-beste men. 2415  
 Hwan þe opre sawen þat, he fleddeþ,  
 And Godard swiþe loude gredde:  
 'Mine knihtes, hwat do ye?  
 Shuleþ ye þus-gate fro me fle?  
 Ich haue you fed, and yet shal fede, 2420  
 Helpeþ me nu in þis nede,  
 And latę ye nouht mi bodi spille,  
 Ne Hauelok don of me hisę wille.  
 Yif ye it do, ye do you shame,  
 And bringeth you-self in mikel blame.' 2425  
 Hwan ~~he~~ þat herden, he wenten a-geyn,  
 And slown a kniht and [ek] a sweyn  
 Of þe kinges oune men,  
 And woundeden abuten ten.

2404. *Supply* he. 2408. rith. 2409. *Supply* him.  
 2411. Hwou. 2412. browt. 2413. two breþren; *omit* two;  
*and perhaps read* breþer. 2414. *Supply* þat. 2418. knithes.  
 2419. Sule. 2421. Helpe. 2422. nouth. 2424. id (*for* it).  
 2427. knit; *supply* ek.

**P**E kinges men, hwan he þat sawe, 2430  
 Schuten on hem, heye and lowe,  
 And euerilk fot of hem [he] slowe  
 But Godard one, þat he flowe, ?  
 So þe þef [þat] men dos henge,  
 Or hund men shole in dike slenge. [Fol. 216 b, col. 1.]  
 He bunden him ful swiþe faste, 2436  
 Hwil þe bondes wolden laste,  
 þat he rorede als a bole,  
 þat wore parred in an hole  
 With dogges forto bite and beite: 2440  
 Werę þe bondes nouht to leite.  
 He bounden him so fele sore,  
 þat he gan crien Godes ore,  
 þat he [ne] sholde his hend of-plette;  
 Wolden he nouht þer-for lette, 2445  
 þat he ne bounden hond and fet:  
 Dapeit þat on þat þer-forę let!  
 But dunten him so man doth bere, (þer, nouht)  
 And keste him on a scabbed mere,  
 Hisę nese went un-to þe crice: (þurę) 2450  
 So ledden he þat fule swike,  
 Til he biforn Hauelok was brouht,  
 þat he hauęde ful wo wrowht,  
 Boþe with hungre and with cold,  
 Or he werę twelue winter old, 2455  
 And with mani heui swink,  
 With poure mete and feble drink,  
 And [with] swiþe wikke cloþes,

2431. Scuten. 2432. Supply he. 2434. Supply þat.  
 2439. he wore; omit he. 2441. nouth. 2442. fo (for fo=so).  
 2444. Supply ne; of his hend plette; see l. 2755. 2452. was biforn  
 hanelok brouth. 2453. haue (for hauede). 2454. hungred (!).  
 2455. twel. 2458. Supply with.

For al hiſe manie grete othes.  
 Nu beyes he his olde blame: 2460  
 'Old sinne makes newe shame.'  
 Hwan he was [brouht] so ſhamelike  
 Biforn þe king, þe fule swike,  
 Þe king dede Ubbe swipe calle  
 Hiſe erles, and hiſe barouns alle, 2465  
 Dreng and thein, burgeis and kniht,  
 And bad theuſholden demen him riht: *justice*  
 For he kneu þe swike dam;  
 Euerilk del, God was him gram. *note p. 123*  
 He ſetten hem dune bi þe wawe, 2470  
 Riche and pouere, heye and lowe,  
 Þe olde men, and ek þe grom, (  
 And made þer þe rihte dom,  
 And ſeyden unto þe king anon,  
 Þat ſtille ſat [al]-so þe ſton: 2475  
 'We demeþ, þat he be al quic flawen,  
 And ſipen to þe galwes drawen  
 At þis foule mere tayl;  
 Þoru hiſ fet a ful ſtrong nayl;  
 And þoreþ ben hanged with two feteres, [Fol. 216 b, col. 2.]  
 And þareþ be writen þiſe leteres: 2481  
 'Þiſ iſ þe swike þat wende wel  
 Þe king hauþ reft þe lond ilk del,  
 And hiſe ſiſtres with a knif  
 Boþe reſte here lif.' 2485  
 Þiſ writ ſhal henge bi him þore;  
 Þe dom iſ demd, ſeyþ we na more.'

2460. holde. 2462. Wan; *supply* brouht. 2463. Brouht  
 biforn; *but* Brouht belongs to l. 2462. 2466. knith. 2467. rith.  
 2469. Euerildel. 2470. dun. 2472. helde. 2473. rithe.  
 2476. ſlawen; *read* flawen (*cf.* ll. 2495, 2502). 2477. drawe (*for*  
 drawe). 2479. iſ. 2480. wit. 2483. il. 2486. þare.





And þe king ful sone it yaf  
 Vbbe *in* þe hond, with a fayr staf,  
 And seyde, 'Her ich sayse þe  
 In al þe lond, in al þe fe.'  
 Þo swor Hauelok he sholde make, 2520  
 Al for Grim, of monekes blake  
 A *priorie* to *seruen* in ay  
 Iesu Crist, til domesday,  
 For þe god he hauēde him don  
 Hwil he was pouere and [iuel] o bon. [Fol. 217, col. 1.]  
 And þer-of held he wel his oth, 2526  
 For he it made, God it wot!  
 In þe tun þer Grim was grauen,  
 Þat of Grim yet hauēs þe name.  
 Of Grim bidde ich na more spelle.— 2530  
 But hwan Godrich herde telle,  
 Of Cornwayle þat was erl,  
 (Þat fule traytōur, that mixed cherl!)  
 Þat Hauelok king was of Denemark,  
 And [with a ferde] strong and stark 2535  
 [Was] comen Engeland with-inne,  
 Engeland al for to winne;  
 And þat she, þat was so fayr,  
 Þat was of Engeland riht eir,  
 Was comen up at Grimesbi, 2540  
 He was ful sorwful and sori,  
 And seyde, 'Hwat shal me to rape?  
 Goddot! i shal do slon hem bape.

2517. wit. 2522. inne; *read in.* 2524. haueden. 2525.  
 we (*for wel, error for iuel*); *cf.* l. 2505. 2527. woth. 2530. The  
 author has here omitted to tell us that Havelok, at the desire of his  
 wife, invades England. See the note. 2531. wan. 2534. was  
 king. 2535. ferde with him; *read* with a ferde. 2536. *Supply*  
 Was. 2539. rith. 2540. þat was; *om.* þat Z. 2541. sorful.  
 2543. Goddoth.

I shal don hengen hem ful heye,  
 So mote ich brouke mi rihte eie! 2545  
 But-yif he of mi londe fle;  
 Hwat wenden he desherite me?'  
 He dide sone ferd ut [bede,]  
 Þat al þat euere mouhte o stede  
 Ride, or helm on heued bere, 2550  
 Brini on bac, and sheld and spere,  
 Or ani oþer wepne bere,  
 Hand-ax, syþe, gisarm, or spere,  
 Or aunlaz, and [ful] god long knif,  
 þat, als he louede leme or lif, 2555  
 Þey sholden comen [alle] him to—  
 With ful god wepne [y-boren] so—  
 To Lincólne, þer he lay,  
 Of Marz þe seuentenþe day,  
 So þat he coupe hem god þank; 2560  
 And yif þat ani were so rank  
 That he þarne ne come anon,  
 He swor bi Crist, and [bi] seint Iohan,  
 That he sholde maken him þral,  
 And al his of-spring forth with-al. 2565

þE Englishe [men] þat herde þat,  
 Was non þat euere his bode [at]-sat;  
 For he him dredde swiþe sore,  
 So runci spore, and mikle more.  
 At þe day he come sone [Fol. 217, col. 2.] 2570

2545. Rith. 2546. lond; cf. l. 2599. 2547. he to; om. to.  
 2548. bidde; read bede. 2554. Supply ful H. 2556. þat þey;  
 om. þat, and supply alle. 2557. ye ber; read y-boren. 2561.  
 rang. 2563. Supply bi; cf. l. 1112. 2566. Supply men.  
 2567. Read at-sat; see l. 2200. 2569. Runci.

þat he hem sette, ful wel o bone,  
 To Lincólne, with gode stedes,  
 And al þe wepne þat kniht ledes.  
 Hwan he worę come, sket was þe erl yare  
 Ageynes Denshe men to fare, 2575  
 And seyde, 'Lypes me allę samen,  
 Hauē ich you gadred for no gamen,  
 But ich wilę seyen you forhwi;  
 Lokes hware here at Grimesbi  
 Is uten-laddes here comen, 2580  
 And hauęs þe priorię numen;  
 Al þat euere mihten he finde,  
 He brenne kirkes, and prestes binde;  
 He strangleth monkes and nunnes bope:  
 Hwat wilę ye, frendes, her-of rede? 2585  
 Yif he regne þus-gate longe,  
 He moun us alle ouer-gange,  
 He moun vs alle quic henge or slo,  
 Or þral maken and do ful wo,  
 Or elles reue us ure liues, 2590  
 And ure children, and ure wiues.  
 But dos nu als ich wilę you lere,  
 Als ye wilę be with me dere;  
 Nimes nu swiþe forth and raþe,  
 And helps me and yu-self baþe, 2595  
 And slos up-on þe dogges swiþe:  
 For shal [i] neuere more be bliþe,  
 Ne hosęled ben, ne of prest shriuen,

2573. knith. 2574. þare or yare; see l. 2954. 2576.  
 mi; read me (as in l. 2204). 2577. gadred you. 2578. forþi  
 (error for forþi = forhwi). 2580. Hiße; read Is Z (here means  
 army). 2581. haues nu; omit nu. 2582. mithen. 2585.  
 Wat; frend; offe Rede. 2587. Moun. 2596. up o. 2597.  
 Supply i.

Til þat he ben of londe driuen.  
 Nime we swiþe, and do hem fle, 2600  
 And folwes alle faste me;  
 For ich am he, of al þe ferd,  
 þat first shal slo with drawen swerd.  
 Daþeyt hwo ne stonde faste  
 Bi me, hwil hise armes laste! 2605  
 'Ye! lef, ye!' quoth þe erl Guntér;  
 'Ya!' quoth þe erl of Cestre, Reynér.  
 And so dide alle þat þer stode,  
 And stirte forth so he werę wode.  
 Þo mouhtę me se þe brinies brihte 2610  
 On backes keste, and late rihte,  
 Þe helmes heye on heued sette;  
 To armes al so swiþe plette,  
 þat þei wore on a litel stunde  
 Greithed, als me mihtę telle a pund; [Fol. 217 b, col. 1.]  
 And lopen on stedes sone anon, 2616  
 And toward Grimesbi, ful god won,  
 He foren softe bi þe sti,  
 Til he comę ney at Grimesbi.

**H**AUELOK, þat hauęde spired wel 2620  
 Of here fare, euerilk del,  
 With al his ferd cam hem a-geyn,  
 For-bar he noþer kniht ne sweyn.  
 Þe firste kniht þat he þer mette  
 With þe swerd so he him grette, 2625  
 [Þat] his heued of he plette,  
 Wolde he nouht for sinne lette.

2606; couth; *read* quoth, as in L. 2607. 2610. mouthe. 2611.  
 rihte. 2615. Grethet, as L. 714; mithe. 2621. eueril.  
 2623. knith. 2624. knith. 2626. For; *read* þat. 2627. mouth.

Roberd saw þat dint so hende,  
 Wolde he neuere þeþen wende,  
 Til þat he hauēde anoper slawen 2630  
 With þe swerd he held ut-drawn.  
 William Wendut his swerd vt-drow,  
 And þe þredde so sore he slow,  
 þat he made up-on the feld  
 His lift arm fleye, with the swerd. 2635

HUWE Rauē ne forgat nouht  
 þe swerd he hauēde þider brouht;  
 He kipte it up, and smot ful sore  
 An erl, þat he saw priken þore  
 Ful noblelike upon a stede, 2640  
 þat with him wolde al quic wede.  
 He smot him on þe heued so,  
 þat he þe heued clef a-two,  
 And þat [he] bi þe shuldre-blade  
 Þe sharpe swerd let [dune] wade 2645  
 Þorw the brest unto þe herte;  
 Þe dint bigan ful sorę to smerte,  
 þat þe erl fel dun a-non,  
 Al so ded so ani ston.  
 Quoth Ubbe, 'Nu dwelle ich to longe,' 2650  
 And let his stede sone gonge  
 To Godrich, with a [ful] god spere  
 þat he saw a-noþer bere,  
 And smot Godrich, and Godrich him,  
 Hetelike with herte grim, 2655

2629. þeþe (*for* þeþē); *cf.* l. 2727. 2632. William. 2635.  
*Cf.* l. 1825 (with = by means of). 2636. nouth. 2637. brouth.  
 2644. *Supply* he; shudre. 2645. *Supply* dune. 2651. leth.  
 2652. *Supply* ful. 2654. smoth. 2655. *Perhaps read* Hertelike,  
*as in* l. 2748.

So þat he boþe felle dune,  
 To þe erþe, first þe croune.  
 Ðanne he wor~~en~~ fallen ðune boþen,  
 Grundlike her~~e~~ swerdes [he] ut-drowen,  
 Ðat weren swiþe sharp and gode, [Fol. 217 b, col. 2.] 2660  
 And fouhten so þei woren wode,  
 Ðat þe swot ran fro þe crune  
 [To the fet riht þere adune.]  
 Ðer mouht~~e~~ men se two knihtes bete  
 Ayþer on oþer dintes grete, 2665  
 So þat with [þe] alþer-leste dint  
 Were al to-shiuered a flint.  
 So was bi-twenen hem a fiht  
 Fro þe morwen ner to þe niht,  
 So þat þei [stinted] nouht ne blunne, 2670  
 Til þat to sette bigan þe sunne.  
 Ðo yaf Godrich þorw þe side  
 Vbbe a wunde ful un-ride,  
 So þat þorw þat ilke wounde  
 Hauede [he] ben brouht to grunde, 2675  
 And his heued al of-slawen,  
 Yif God ne were, and Huwe Rauen,  
 Ðat drow him fro Godrich away,  
 And barw him so þat ilke day.  
 But er he were fro Godrich drawen, 2680  
 Ðer were a þousind knihtes slawen  
 Bi boþe halue, and mo y-nowe,  
 Ðer þe ferdes to-gidere slowe.  
 Ðer was swilk dreping of þe folk,

2658. *dun.* 2659. *Supply* he. 2663. *Supply* from ll. 1904,  
 1905. 2664. *mouth*; to knithes. 2666. *Supply* þe; lest;  
*cf.* l. 1978 H. 2670. *Supply* stinte H. (*or* stinted); nouth; blinne  
 (*error for* blunne). 2675. *Supply* he; brouth; þe grunde (*om.* þe).

þat on þe feld was neuere a polk 2685  
 þat it ne stod of blod so ful  
 þat þe strem ran intil þe hul.  
 þo tarst bigan Godrich to go  
 Vp-on þe Danshe, and faste to slo,  
 And forth-riht, also [leun] fares 2690  
 þat neuere kines best ne spares,  
 þanne is [he] gon, for he garte alle  
 þe Denshe men biforn him falle.  
 He felde browne, he felde blake,  
 þat he mouhte ouer-take. 2695  
 Was neuere non þat mouhte þaue  
 Hisę dintes, noyþer kniht ne knaue,  
 þat he [ne] felden so dos þe gres  
 Bi-forn þe syþe þat ful sharp is.  
 Hwan Hauelok saw his folk so britteneę, 2700  
 And his ferd so swiþe littenę,  
 He cam driuende up-on a stede,  
 And bigan til him to grede,  
 And seyde, 'Godrich, hwat is þe  
 þat þou fare þus with me, 2705  
 And mine gode knihtes slos? [Fol. 218, col. 1.]  
 Siker-like þou mis-gos.  
 þou wost ful wel, yif þu wilt wite,  
 þat Apelwold þe dide sitte  
 On knes, and sweren on messe-bok, 2710  
 On caliz, and on [pateyn] ok,  
 þat þou hisę douhter sholdest yelde,  
 þan she were wimman of elde,

2688. tarst (*sic*) = at arst (at first) H.; or read faste, as in l. 2689.  
 2690. rith; leuin; read leun H. (as in l. 1867). 2692. his;  
 supply he. 2695. mouthē. 2697. knith. 2698. Supply ne.  
 2704. wat. 2709. site. 2711. MS. here repeats messe, by  
 mistake; read pateyn (cf. l. 187); hok (for ok).



Engelond [al] euerilk del :  
 Godrich þe erl, þou wost it wel. 2715  
 Do nu wel with-uten fiht,  
 Yeld hire þe lond, for þat is riht.  
 Wile ich forgiue þe þe lathe,  
 Al mi dede and al mi wrathe,  
 For y se þu art so wiht, 2720  
 And of þi bodi so god kniht.  
 'Þat ne wile ich neuere mo,'  
 Quoth erl Godrich, 'for ich shal slo  
 þe, and hire for-henge heye.  
 I shal þrist ut þi rihte eye 2725  
 þat þou lokes with on me,  
 But þu swiþe heþen fle.'  
 He grop þe swerd ut sone anon,  
 And hew on Hauelok, ful god won,  
 So þat he clef his sheld on-two: 2730  
 Hwan Hauelok saw þat shame do  
 His bodi, þer bi-forn his ferd,  
 He drow ut sone his gode swerd,  
 And smot him so up-on þe crune,  
 þat Godrich fel to þe erþe adune. 2735  
 But Godrich stirt up swiþe sket—  
 Lay he nowht longe at his fet—  
 And smot him on þe sholdre so,  
 þat he dide þare undo  
 Of his brinie ringes mo 2740  
 þan þat ich kan tellen, fro;  
 And woundede him riht in þe flesh,  
 þat tendre was and swiþe nesh,  
 So þat þe blod ran til his to:

2714. *Supply* al; il.    2717. rith.    2720. with.    2721. knith.  
 2725. rith.    2737. nowth.    2742. rith.

Do was Hauelok swiþe wo, 2745  
 Ðat he hauēde of him drawen  
 Blod, and [ek] so sore him slawen.  
 Hertelike til him he wente,  
 And Godrich þer fullike shente;  
 For his swerd he hof up heye, 2750  
 And þe hand he dide of-fleye, [Fol. 218, col. 2.]  
 Ðat he smot him with so sore:  
 Hu mihte he don him shame more?

**H**WAN he hauēde him so shamed,  
 His hand of-plat, and yuelę lamed, 2755  
 He tok him sone bi þe necke  
 Als a traytōur, daþeyt hwo reckel  
 And dide him binde and fetere wel  
 With gode feteres al of stel;  
 And to þe quen he sende him, 2760  
 Ðat birde wel to him ben grim;  
 And bad she sholde don him gete,  
 And þat non ne sholde him bete,  
 Ne shame do, for he was kniht,  
 Til knihtes hauēden demd him riht. 2765  
 Ðan þe Englishę men þat sawe,  
 Ðat þei wisten, heye and lawe,  
 Ðat Goldeboru, þat was so fayr,  
 Was of Engeland riht eyr,  
 And þat þe king hire hauēde wedded, 2770  
 And hauēden [he] ben samen bedded,  
 He comen alle, to crię merci,  
 Vnto þe king, at one cri,

2747. *Supply* ek. 2749. fulike. 2753. Hw mithe. 2757.  
 wo. 2764. knith. 2765. knithes; Rith. 2769. rith.  
 2771. *Supply* he.

And beden him sone manrede and oth,  
 þat he ne sholden, for lef ne loth, 2775  
 Neuere more ageyn him go,  
 Ne ride, for wele ne for wo.

ÞE king ne wolde nouht for-sake,  
 þat he ne shulde of hem take  
 Manrede þat he beden, and ok 2780  
 Hold opes sweren on þe bok;  
 But or bad he, þat pider werę brouht  
 Þe quen, for hem—swilk was his pouht—  
 For to se, and forto shawe,  
 Yif þat he hirę wolde knawe. 2785  
 Þoru hem witen wolde he  
 Yif þat she auhte quen to be.

SIXE erles weren sone yare,  
 After hire for to fare.  
 He nomen on-on, and comen sone, 2790  
 And brouhten hire, þat under mone  
 In al þe werd ne hauęde per  
 Of hendeleike, fer ne ner.  
 Hwan she was come pider, alle  
 Þe Englishę men bi-gunne falle 2795  
 O knes, and greten swiþe sore, [Fol. 218 b, col. 1.]  
 And seyden, 'Leuędi, Kristes ore  
 And youres! we hauen misdo mikel,  
 þat we ayeyn you hauę be fikel,  
 For Englund auhte forto ben 2800

2777. wel. 2778. nouth. 2782. brouth. 2783. þouth.  
 2786. þoruth; read þoru. 2787. aucte. 2791. brouthen. 2793.  
 -leik. 2795. to falle; om. to. 2797. kistes. 2799. ayen  
 (see l. 2776). 2800. ben youres; but youres belongs to l. 2801.

Youres, and we youre men.  
 Is non of us, [ne] yung ne old,  
 þat [he] ne wot, þat Aþelwold  
 Was king of [al] þis kunerike,  
 And ye his eyr, and þat þe swike 2805  
 Hauęs it halden with mikel wronge:  
 God leue him sone [hey] to honge!

QUOTH Hauelok, 'Hwan þat ye it wite,  
 Nu wile ich þat ye doune sitte,  
 And, after Godrich haues wrouht, 2810  
 þat hauęs him-self in sorwe brouht,  
 Lokes þat ye demen him riht,  
 For dom ne spareth clerk ne kniht;  
 And siþen shal ich under-stonde  
 Of you, [al] after lawe of londe, 2815  
 Manrede, and holde oþes boþe,  
 Yif ye it wilen, and ek rothe.'  
 Anon þer dune he hem sette,  
 For non þe dom ne durste lette,  
 And demden, him to binden faste 2820  
 Vp-on an asse swipē un-wraste,  
 Andelong, nouht ouer-þwert,  
 His nose went unto þe stert,  
 And so [un]-to Lincólne lede,  
 Shamelike in wicke wede— 2825  
 And hwan he [come] un-to þe borw,

2801. And we youre men and youres; *omit* and youres, and *prefix*  
 Youres *from* l. 2800 H. 2802. *Supply* ne. 2803. we; *read*  
 he (*agreeing with* wot). 2804. *Supply* al. 2807. *Supply*  
 hey H. 2808. Quot. 2809. down (*see* l. 2818); site. 2811.  
 in sorwe him self brouht. 2812. rith. 2813. spared (*read*  
 spareth); knith. 2815. *Supply* al. 2823. went *is a pp.* 2824.  
*Supply* un-; *see* ll. 2826, 2828. 2826. cam; *read* come (*subj.*).

Shamelike ben led þer-þoru,  
 Bisouþe þe borw, un-to a grene—  
 Þat þare is yete, als y wene—  
 And þerę be bunden til a stake, 2830  
 Abouten him ful gret fir make,  
 And al to dust be brend riht þore:—  
 And yete demden he þer more,  
 Oper swikes for to warne,  
 Þat hise children shulde þarne 2835  
 Euere-more þat eritage,  
 Þat his was, for hise utrage.

**H**WAN þe dom was demd and seyð,  
 Sket was þe swike on þe asse leyð,  
 And [led un-]til þat ilke grene, 2840  
 And brend til asken al bidene. [Fol. 218 b, col. 2.]  
 Þo was Goldeboru ful bliþe,  
 She þanked God [ful] fele syþe  
 Þat þe fule swike was brend,  
 Þat wende wel hirę bodi hauę shend; 2845  
 And seyde, 'Nu is timę to take  
 Manrede of brune and of blake,  
 Þat ich ride se and go:  
 Nu ich am wreken of mi fo.'

**H**AUELOK anon manrede tok 2850  
 Of alle Englishe, on þe bok,  
 And dide hem grete opes swere,  
 Þat he sholden him god feyth bere

2829. yet.      2832. Rith þere.      2833. yet.      2835. sulde.  
 2840. And him til (1); (*perhaps for hun-til*); read And led un-til; see  
 l. 2827.      2843. Supply ful.      2848. se ride.      2849. wreke  
 (*for wreke*); see l. 2992.

Ageyn [hem] alle þat woren liues,  
And þat sholde ben born of wiues. 2855

PAVNE he hauēde sikernesse  
Taken of more and of lesse,  
Al at hisē wille, so dide he calle  
Þe erl of Cestre, and hisē men alle,  
Þat was yung kniht with-uten wif, 2860

And seyde, 'Sire erl, bi mi lif,  
And þou wile mi *conseyl* tro,  
Ful wel shal ich with þe do;  
For ich shal yeue þe to wiue  
Þe fairest þing that is oliue. 2865

Þat is Gunild of Grimesby,  
Grimes douhter, bi seint Dauy,  
Þat me forth brouhte, and wel fedde,  
And ut of Denemark with me fledde,  
Me for to berwen fro mi ded: 2870

Sikerlike, þoru his red  
Haue ich liued in-to þis day,  
Blissed worþe his soule ay!  
I rede þat þu hire take,  
And spuse, and curteysye make; 2875

For she is fayr, and she is fre,  
And al so hende so she may be.  
Þertekenē she is wel with me,  
Þat shal ich ful wel shewe þe;  
For ich [wilē] giue þe a giue, 2880

Þat euere-more, hwil ich liue,  
For hirē shal-tu be with me dere,

2854. *Supply* hem.

2867. *douhter.*

(*as in* ll. 697, 1426).

2880. *Supply* wile.

2856. *haueden.*

2868. *broute.*

2875. *curteyse* (*for* *curteysyē*); *see* l. 194.

2860. *knith wit.*

2870. *burwe*; *read* *berwen*

þat wile ich þat þis folc al here.  
 þe erl ne wolde nouht ageyn  
 þe kinge be, for kniht ne sweyn, 2885  
 Ne of þe spusing seyen nay, [Fol. 219, col. 1.]  
 But spusede [hire] þat ilke day.  
 þat spusinge was [in] god time maked,  
 For it ne were neuere clad ne naked  
 In a þede samened two 2890  
 þat cam to-gidere, liuede so,  
 So þey diden [on] al herē liue:  
 He geten samen sonen fwe,  
 þat were þe beste men at nede  
 þat mouhte riden on ani stede. 2895  
 Hwan Gunnild was to Cestre brouht,  
 Hauelok þe gode ne for-gat nouht  
 Bertram, þat was the erles kok,  
 þat he ne dide [him] callen ok,  
 And seyde, 'Frend, so God me rede, 2900  
 Nu shaltu haue riche mede  
 For wissing, and þi gode dede  
 þat tu me dides in ful gret nede.  
 For þanne y yede in mi cuuel,  
 And ich ne hauēde bred ne sowel, 2905  
 Ne y ne hauēde no catel,  
 þou feddes and claddes me ful wel.  
 Hauē nu for-þi of Cornwayle  
 þe erldom ilk del, with-uten fayle,  
 And al þe lond þat Godrich held, 2910  
 Boþe in towne and ek in feld;

2884. nouth. 2885. king; knith. 2887. Supply hire.  
 2888. Supply in H. 2889. ne were = nere. 2892. dide (for  
 didē); supply on H. 2895. mouthe. 2896. brouth. 2897.  
 nouth. 2899. Supply him H. 2905. haue. 2909. ildel.

And þerto wile ich þat þu spuse,  
 And fayre bring hire un-til huse,  
 Grimes douhter, Leuiue þe hende,  
 For þider shal she with þe wende. 2915  
 Hire semes curteys forto be,  
 For she is fayr so flour on tre;  
 Þe heu is swilk in hire ler  
 So [is] þe rose in roser,  
 Hwan it is fayre sprad ut newe 2920  
 Ageyn þe sunne briht and lewe.  
 And girde him sone with þe swerd  
 Of þe erldom, bi-forn his ferd,  
 And with his hond he made him kniht,  
 And yaf him armes, for þat was riht, 2925  
 And dide him þere sone wedde  
 Hire þat was ful swete in bedde.

AFTER þat he <sup>spused</sup> wore,  
 Wolde þe erl nouht dwelle þore,  
 But sone nam until his lond, 2930  
 And seysed it al in his hond, [Fol. 219, col. 2.]  
 And liuþe þer-inne, he and his wif,  
 An hundred winter in god lif,  
 And gaten mani children samen,  
 And liuþeden ay in blisse and gamen. 2935  
 Hwan þe maydens werē spused boþe,  
 Hauelok anon bigan ful rathe  
 His Denshe men to feste wel  
 With riche landes and catel,

2914. donther. 2919. Supply is. 2920. fayr. 2921.  
 brith. 2924. knith. 2925. rith. 2929. nouth. 2933.  
*Between this line and the next are inserted in the MS. the words: For*  
*he saw þat he, which have been subsequently struck out by the same*  
*hand, and the word vacat affixed.* 2939. Wit.



So þat he weren alle riche: 2940  
For he was large and nouht chiche.

**P**ER-after sone, with his here,  
For he to Lundone, forto bere  
Corune, so þat [alle] it sawe,  
Englishe and Denshe, heye and lowe, 2945  
Hou he it bar with mikel pride,  
For his barnage þat was un-ride.

**P**E feste of his coruning  
Lastede with gret ioying  
Fourti dawes, and sumdel mo; 2950  
þo bigumnen þe Denshe to go  
Vn-to þe king, to aske leue,  
And he ne wolde hem nouht greue;  
For he saw þat he woren yare  
In-to Denemark for to fare; 2955  
But gaf hem leue sone anon,  
And bitauhte hem seint Iohan;  
And bad Ubbe, his iustise,  
þat he sholde on ilke wise  
Denemark yeme and gete so, 2960  
þat no pleynte come him to.

**H**WAN he worę parted alle samen,  
Hauelok bi-lefte with ioie and gamen  
In Engelond, and was þer-inne  
Sixti winter king with winne, 2965

2941. nouth chiche (*read* chiche). 2944. *Supply* alle. 2945.  
Henglishe ant. 2946. Hwou. 2948. corunig. 2949. Laste.  
2953. nouth. 2963. wit.

And Goldeboru quen, [as] þat i wene:

So mikel loue was hem bitwene,

þat al þe werd spak of hem two:

He louede hire, and she him so,

þat neyþer op̃er mihte beþe;

2970

Fro op̃er, ne no ioie se

But-ȝf hē were to-gidere boþe;

Neuere yete ne werē he wroþe,

For here loue was ay newe;

Neuere yete wordes ne grewe

[Fol. 219 b, col. 1.]

Bitwene hem, hwar-of no lathe

2976

Mihte rise, ne no wrathe.

**H**E <sup>beet</sup>geten children hem bi-twene

Sones and douhtres riht fuetene,

Hwar-of þe sones werē kinges alle,

2980

So wolde god it sholde bifalle;

And þe douhtres alle *quenes*:

'Him stondes wel þat god child strenes.'—

Nu haue ye herd þe gest al þoru

Of Hauelok and of Goldeborw;

2985

Hu he werē boren, and hu fedde,

And hou he woren with wronge ledde

In here youþe, with trecherie,

With tresoun, and with felounye;

And hou þe swikes hauden tiht

2990

Reuen hem þat was here riht,

And hou he werē wreken wel,

Haue ich seyð you euerilk del;

2966. *Supply as.* 2970. *ope (for op̃ere); mithe.* 2972.  
to gidede (l). 2976. *ne.* 2977. *Mithe.* 2979. *douthres*  
rith. 2986. *Hw; born; hw.* 2987. *hwou.* 2990. *hwou; thit.*  
2991. *rith.* 2992. *hwou.* 2993. *sey (read seyð); euerilk del.*

102 SAY A PATERNOSTER FOR THE AUTHOR

Forþi ich wolde biseken you  
 þat hauē<sup>each</sup> herd þe rime nu, 2995  
 þat ilke of you, with gode wille,  
 Seye a pater-noster stille,<sup>most</sup>  
 For him þat hauēth þe ryme maked,  
 And þer-forē fele<sup>many</sup> nihtes waked;<sup>many</sup>  
 þat Iesu Crist his soule bringe 3000  
 Bi-forñ his fader at his endinge.<sup>deed</sup>  
 A—M—E—N.

2994. And forþi; *om.* And. 2995. rim. 2998. rym.

## NOTES

[A LARGE number of the following notes—distinguished by the letter M.—are abridged from the notes in Sir F. Madden's excellent edition, the abridgement being effected almost entirely by occasional omissions, and with but very slight unimportant changes of a few words, chiefly in the case of references to later editions of various works than were existing in 1828. I have added several short notes upon difficult constructions, for some of which I am indebted to Holthausen.

The spellings of the MS. are (usually) retained in the notes.]

4. For the scansion, read '*t wil her*'.

6. The dot under the second *e* in *yede* means that it is suppressed in pronunciation, the word being pronounced as *yed'* or *yeed*. So in l. 12, read *mow'n*.

9. *He was the wicteste man at nede*, &c. This appears to have been a favourite expression of the poet, and to have comprehended, in his idea, the perfection of those qualifications required in a knight and hero. He repeats it, with some slight variation, no less than five times, viz. in ll. 25, 87, 345, 1757, and 1970. The lines, however, are by no means original, but the common property of all our early poetical writers. We find them in *Layamon*, i. 174, l. 8, &c.

So also in the Romance of *Guy of Warwick* :—

He was the best knight at neede  
That euer bestrode any stede.

Coll. Garrick, K. 9. sign. Ll. ii.

Again, in the *Continuation of Sir Gy*, in the Auchinleck MS. [ed. for the Abbotsford Club, 1840, 4to, p. 266; ed. Zupitza, p. 384]. And again, in the *Chronicle of England*, ll. 261–6, published by Ritson from a copy in the British Museum, MS. Reg. 12. C. XII. [*Met. Rom.* ii. 281] :—

After him his sone Arthur  
Hevede this lond thourh and thourh.  
He was the beste kyng at nede  
That ever mihte ride on stede,  
Other wepne welde, other folk out-lede,  
Of mon ne hede he never drede.

The very close resemblance of these lines to those in *Havelok*, ii. 87–90,

would induce a belief that the writer of the *Chronicle* had certainly read, and perhaps copied from, the Romance. The MS. followed by Ritson was undoubtedly written soon after the death of Piers Gaveston, in 1313, with the mention of which event it concludes; but in the Auchinleck copy it is continued, by a later hand, to the minority of Edward III. It only remains to be observed, that the poem in MS. Reg. 12. C. XII. is written by the same identical hand as the MS. Harl. 2253 (containing *Kyng Horn*, &c.), whence some additional light is thrown on the real age of the latter, respecting which our antiquaries so long differed.—M.

15. 'And I will drink ere I tell my tale.' *Her* = *er* = *ere*. Compare Guy of Warwick, ed. Zupitza, p. 115, l. 1928:—'Now yine us drinke wyne or ale.'

18. In a large number of instances, the suffix *-en* (perhaps written for *-e*) is freely elided before a vowel or pronouns beginning with *h*. Thus *comen* is reduced to *com*. Cf. *beginn*, 21; *rid*, 26; *heng*, 43; *fund*, 56; *crep*, 68; &c.

19. *With that*, on the understanding that; cf. l. 1220.

28. Lit. '(such) that in his time (there) were good laws (which) he had made,' i.e. who, in his time, had made, &c. See a similar construction in l. 80.

31. *Erl and barun*, *dreng and kayn*. The appellation of *Dreng*, and, in the plural, *Drenges*, which repeatedly occurs in the course of this poem, is uniformly bestowed on a class of men who hold a situation between the rank of *Baron* and *Thayn*. We meet with the term more than once in Doomsday Book, as, for instance, in Tit. Cestresc: 'Hujus manerii [Neuton] aliam terram xv. hom. quos *Drenches* vocabant, pro xv. maneriis tenebant.' And in a Charter of that period we read: 'Alger Prior, et totus Conventus Ecclesie S. Cuthberti, Edwino, et omnibus Teignis et *Drengis*, &c.' Hence Spelman infers, that the *Drengs* were military vassals, and held land by knight's service, which was called *Drengagium*. This is confirmed by a document from the Chartulary of Welbeck, printed in Dugdale, *Mon. Angl.* V. II. p. 598, and in Blount, *Jocular Tenures*, p. 177, where it is stated, 'In eadem villa [Cukenev, co. Nottingh.] manebat quidam homo qui vocabatur Gamelbere, et fuit vetus *Dreynghe* ante Conquestum.' It appears from the same document, that this person held two carucates of land of the King *in capite*, and was bound to perform military service for the same, whenever the army went into Wales. In the Epistle also from the Monks of Canterbury to Henry II, printed by Somner, in his Treatise on Gavelkind, p. 123, we find: 'Quia vero non erant adhuc tempore Regis Willelmi Milites in Anglia, sed *Threnges*, præcepit Rex, ut de eis Milites fierent, ad terram defendendam.' In Layamon's translation of Wace

the term is frequently used in the acceptation of thain, and spelt either *dringches*, *drenches*, *dranches*, or *dringes*.—M. Cf. Sw. *dräng*, a man, servant; Dan. *dreng*, a boy; see *Dring* in Jamieson, and Icel. *drengur* in Vigfusson.

The MS. form *kayn* probably arose from writing *tayn* for *thayn*; after which *tayn* was misread as *cayn*. The correct spelling *thayn* occurs at l. 2184; cf. ll. 2194, 2260, 2466.

44. *Ne yede*, went not, availed; cf. l. 1430, and the phrase 'it went for nothing.'

45. *In that time a man that bore*  
(*Wel fyfty pund, y wot, or more*).

This insertion receives additional authority from a similar passage in the Romance of *Guy of Warwick*, ll. 137-140, where it is mentioned as a proof of the rigorous system of justice pursued by Earl Sigard:—

Though men did bere an hundred pounde,  
Upon him, of penyes rounde,  
There shulde not bee founde in all the londe  
A theef that him wolde hurte ne schonde.

Many of the traits here attributed to Athelwold appear to be borrowed from the praises so universally bestowed by our ancient historians on the character of King Alfred, in whose time, as Otterbourne writes, p. 52, 'armillas aureas in bivio stratas vel suspensas, nemo abripere est ausus.' Cf. *Annal. Eccl. Roffens.* MS. Cott. Nero, D. II. The same anecdote is related of Rollo, Duke of Normandy, by Guillaume de Jumieges, and Dudon de Saint Quentin.—M.

67. *Felede*; for *folwede*, followed, pursued; for the form, cf. *felgden*, followed, Matt. viii. 1 (MS. Hatton).

80. *Were*, &c. 'He would never be so strong a knight but that he (the king) caused him to be cast in fetters.' Or read *Was* for *Were*.

91. *Sprong forth so sparke of glede*. Cf. l. 870. It is a very common metaphor in early English poetry:—

He sprong forð an stede, swa sparc ded of fure.

*Layamon*, ii. 565.

He sprange als any sparke one glede.

*Sir Isumbras*, st. 39 (Camd. Soc. 1844).

He spronge as sparkle doth of glede.

*K. of Tars*, 194; Ritson, *M. R.* ii. 164.

And lepte out of the arsoun,

As sperk thogh out of glede.

*Ly Beaus Disconus*, 623; Ritson, *M. R.* ii. 27.

Cf. Chaucer, *Cant. Tales*, l. 13833, and Tyrwhitt's note.—M.

98. *Brede*, roast meat (Stratmann); and see *Brede*, sb. (1) in N. E. D. This dissyllabic word occurs in *Layamon*, 30583; Owl and Night.,

1630; Chaucer, Hous of Fame, 1222 (see the note); &c. It is cognate with G. *braten*, and is a doublet of E. *brawn*; and quite distinct from the monosyllabic *bread*, occurring in ll. 633, 643, 672, 825, &c.

110. *Of his bodi*, &c. Compare the French text, l. 208 :—

Mes entre eus n'eurent enfant	But between them they had no child
Mes qe vne fille bele;	Save one fair daughter.
Argentille out non la pucele.	The damsel's name was Argentille.
Rois Ekenbright fut enfermez,	King Ekenbright fell ill, [ness.
Et de grant mal forment greuez;	And was much grieved by great sick-
Bien siet n'en poet garrir.	It seems he cannot be cured.

Here *Argentille* is *Goldborough*, and *Ekenbright* answers to *Athelwold*. This quotation, and others below, showing the passages of the French text which most nearly resemble the English poem, are from a MS. in the Heralds' College, marked E. D. N. No. 14. See the Preface.

114. 'Then a severe disease seized him.'

115. The MS. has *under-fong*, but there is no such word; the pt. t. form would be *under-feng*. Holthausen rightly suggests that only an assonance, not a perfect rime, was intended (see ll. 172, 173); and further says that the right word is *under-fond*, i. e. found out, pt. t. of *under-finden*, to find out, which occurs at p. 99, l. 32, of his edition of *Vices and Virtues* (E. E. T. S., 1888). Cf. E. Friesic *underfinden*, Du. *ondervinden*, to experience, become aware of.

118. *Wat shal me to rede*, lit. what shall (be) for a counsel to me. See *Rede* in the Glossary to *William of Palerne*. So in l. 693.

127. Cf. 'Wiþ an hundred kniȝtes bi mi side'; *Sir Guy*, ed. Zupitza, p. 510. *And seems* superfluous. Pronounce *hir-e*, as in l. 131.

130. MS. *And don hem of þar hire were queme*, lit. 'and do them off where it should be agreeable to her'; i. e. and keep men at a distance as she pleased. This is so forced that Garnett's reading (in the text) is very acceptable; lit. 'and do with them (her men) whatever,' &c.

132. 'It would never displease me, not even if I were in heaven'; i. e. dead.

136. *He sende* writes *some onon*. We must here, and in l. 2275, simply understand *letters*, without any reference to the official summonses of parliament, which subsequently were so termed, κατ' ἐξοχήν. The word *briefs* is used in the same sense by the old French writers, and in *Lazamon* we meet with some lines nearly corresponding with the present; see ll. 6669-6678.—M.

139. *Rokesburu*, Roxburgh. See remarks in the Preface.

174. I. e. 'until she be a woman, of full age.' Compare l. 2713 below.

175. *þa*. Frequently written for *þat*. See *William of Palerne*.

188. Compare Sir Guy, ed. Zupitza, p. 592, l. 25 :—' þe corporas, & þe messe-gere.'

189-203. *Ther-on he garte*, &c. Compare the French Romance, ll. 215-228 :—

Sa fille li ad comandée,	To him he had committed his daughter,
Et sa terre tote liuérée.	And delivered all his land.
Primerement li fet iurer,	First of all he made him swear
Veiant sa gent & affier,	And promise, in sight of the people,
Qe leaument la nurireit,	That he would bring her up loyally
Et sa terre lui gardereit,	And keep her land for her,
Tant q'ele fust de tiel age	Until she were of such age
Qe suffrir porroit mariage.	That she could be married.
Quant la pucele seit granz,	When the damsel grew up,
Par le consail de ses tenanz,	With the counsel of his men,
Au plus fort home la dorroit	He would give her to the strongest man
Qe el reume troueroit ;	That he could find in the realm ;
Qu'il li baillast ses citez,	That he would deliver to him her cities,
Ses chasteus & ses fermetez.	Her castles and her forts.—M.

The word *erl* (ll. 189, 206, 2861) is metrically dissyllabic, the *r* being strongly trilled ; cf. *th'erldom* (trisyllabic) in l. 2923. So also *sworn*, 204 ; *forth*, 810, 821, 873 ; *north*, 1255 ; *bord*, 1722 ; *carl*, 1789 ; *thornbak*, 759, 832 ; *Cornwayle*, 2908. Cf. Burns, *Holy Fair*, st. 7 :—  
' An' *farls*, bak'd wi' butter.'

191. *Lac*, defect, fault. A misshapen dwarf is said to have ' noght made with-owten lac' ; *Ywaine and Gawaine*, l. 263 ; in Ritson, *Met. Romances*, i. 12.

195. For *Gon* perhaps read *Don* (?) ; of *curleysye Don*, act courteously.

213. ' A minstrel's jest.'—Holthausen.

221. ' So much (as) men might wrap him in.'

228. From Luke xxiii. 46. But it was a common formula. See Chaucer, *C. T.*, A 4287, and the Note.

256. ' He gave to all men that which seemed good to him, until they might live and die,' i. e. as long as they lived.

263. *Iustises dede he maken newe*, &c. The earliest instance produced by Dugdale of the Justices Itinerant is in 23 Hen. II, 1176, when by the advice of the Council held at Northampton the realm was divided into six parts, and into each were sent three Justices. *Orig. Judic.* p. 51. This is stated on the authority of Hoveden. Dugdale admits however the custom to have been older, and in Gervasius Dorobernensis we find, in 1170, certain persons, called *inquisitores*, appointed to perambulate England. Gervase of Tilbury, or whoever was the author of the *Dialogus de Scaccario*, calls them *deambulantes*, *vel perlustrantes indices*. See Spelman, in *voc.* The



office continued to the time of Edward III, when it was superseded by that of the Justices of Assize.—M.

277. *Engelond* is in the dative; lit. 'awe of him stood to (resided in) all England.' This curious idiom was once common; whereas we *now* say, 'all England stood in awe of him.' Cf. Barbour's *Bruce*, iii. 62; and see *Awe*, § 4, in N. E. D.

280. *The kinges douter*, &c. Comp. the Fr. text, l. 283 :—  
 La meschine qu'ert sa fille, The damsel who was his daughter,  
 Que ia estoit creue & grant, Who was now grown up and tall,  
 Et bien poeit auoir enfant. And could well have a child.—M.

315. *Yaf nouth*, cared not; see ll. 419, 466.

338. *Sawe*, put for 'Say we.' Cf. *biddi* for 'bidde i,' l. 484; *haunedet* for 'hauede it,' 714; &c.

365. *His quiste*, &c. 'His bequest made, and (alms) distributed for him.'

377. Here *undertok-e* is the pt. t. subjunctive; 'would take them under his care.'

432. 'Where God himself ran with blood.'

433. *Crist warie him with his mouth!* So, in the Romance of Merlin, Bishop Brice curses the enemies of Arthur:—

Ac, for he is king, and king's son,  
 Y curse alle, and y dom  
 His enemies with Christes mouth,  
 By East, by West, by North, and South!

Ellis, *Metr. Rom.* V. i. p. 260.

455. 'Because we are very sorely hungry; they said that they wanted to have more.'

484. *Biddi*, for *bede I*, I offer you homage; cf. l. 2172. Already *bidden*, to pray, and *beden*, to offer, were confused. Cf. ll. 529, 551, 668.

486. 'On the understanding that thou let me live.' Cf. l. 554.

506. For *nouth* we must read *mouhte* or *wolde*. The sense is—  
 'Although he would that he were dead, excepting only that he might not (or would not) slay him with his (own) hands.'

528. 'If thou wilt do all my will.'

544. *Wreke*, may He wreak! So, in l. 543, read *speke*.

546. We may here supply two lines, such as:—

He ney him strangled, at þe laste,  
 For in his monthe he thriste faste, &c.

See lines 640 and 638 below.

549. Here *Hwere* (better *Hwer*) has the sense of *where*, of which it is (sometimes) a contraction. See my Glossary to Chaucer, s. v. *Wher*.

550. The sense is—'When he had done that deed (i. e. gagged the child), as the deceiver had bidden him, he went away,' &c.

554. *Forwarde* is an error for *forwærd*, accented on the second syllable; see l. 486.

560. Perhaps we should read *wilt mi*, 'As thou wilt now have (preserve) my life.' And *haue* should be *saue*.

567. Dr. Morris suggested that the riming words are *adoun*e and *croune*.

572. The sense is:—'(Alas!) that no vulture, or eagle, or the like, ever seized *him*,' i.e. *Grim*. Here *hauede* = caught, seized. Or else, read *he* for *him*: 'That he (Grim) had no vulture,' &c.

591. *Of his mouth, &c.* Comp. the Fr. text, l. 71 sq. :—

Totes les heures q'il dormoit,	All the hours when he slept
Vne flambe de lui isoist.	A flame issued from him;
Par la bouche li venoit fors,	By his mouth it came out,
Si grant chalur auoit el cors.	Such great heat had his body.
La flambe rendoit tiel odour,	The flame gave forth such a scent
Onc ne sentit nul home meillour.	That no one had ever smelt a sweeter.—M.

594. 'As if candles were burning within.' *Inne* is adverbial. It is hardly necessary to read *thrinne*, three.

600. A proverbial expression:—'for men ought to show good will.'

603. *Tirueden of*, rolled back. So, in l. 918, 'I can well roll back eels out of their skins,' i.e. strip the skins off eels. See my note on the word *terve* in Chaucer; vol. vi. p. 258 (in the glossary). So also, in Allit. Poems, B. 630, for *tyrne* read *tyrue* = *tirve*, flay; in Gawayn and the Grene Knight, 1921, read *tyruen*; and in the Wars of Alexander, ed. Skeat, 4114.

606. *This*, contracted form of *this is*; see *This* in Gloss. to Chaucer.

676. *And with thi chartre make (me) fre*. Instances of the manumission of villains or slaves by charter may be found in Hickes, *Diss. Epistol.* p. 12, Lye's Dict. *ad calc.*, and Madox's *Formulare Anglicanum*, p. 750. The practice was common in the Saxon times, and existed so late as the reign of Henry VIII.—M.

677. *Bihetet*; for *bihete it*, didst promise it. So *hauedet*, for *hauede it*, in l. 714.

679, 680. These two lines are closely copied by Robert of Brunne, in his *Handlyng Synne*, ll. 5613-4:—

Pers stode, and lokod on him

Felunlyche, with y3en grym.

The word *Felunlyche* is so extremely suitable that we may fairly suspect that it is the right reading in l. 680; and that *Thoruthlike* (i.e. *Thorhut-like*, searchingly) is a mere substitution, due to imperfect recollection on the part of a reciter. Cf. note to l. 819.

694. *Wite he him onliue* (or *liues*), if he knows him (to be) alive. With l. 693 compare l. 118, and the Note.

701. It is evident that the words *and geet* (= and goats) must be supplied. For the spelling *geet*, see N. E. D.

705. i. e. 'And he converted all into ready money.' In German—'er machte alles zu Gelde.'—Holthausen.

706. *Hise ship*, &c. Comp. the Fr. text, l. 89:—

Grim fet niefs apparaillée,	Grim had ships made ready
Et de viande bien charger.	And laden with provisions.—M.

715-720. *Hauelok the yunge*, &c. Comp. the Fr., ll. 97-106:—

Quant sa nief fut apparaillée,	When his ship was ready
Dedenz fist entrer sa meisnée,	He made his household enter in,
Ses cheualers & ses serganz,	His knights and his sergeants,
Sa femme demeine & ses enfanz :	His wife and children he conducts.
La reyne mist el batel,	He placed the queen in the boat,
Hauelok tint sonz son mantel.	Havelok he kept under his cloak.
Il meismes apres entra,	He himself entered afterwards,
A Dieu del ciel se comanda;	Commended himself to the God of heaven;

Del hauene sont desancré,	They weighed anchor from the port,
Car il eurent bon orré.	For they had a good wind.

Instead of the storm, in the French text Grim's ship is attacked by pirates, who kill the whole of the crew, with the exception of himself and family, whom they spare on the score of his being an old acquaintance.—M.

733-749. *In Humber*, &c. So in the Fr. text, *Ceo fut el North* &c. Cf. ll. 122-136:—

Tant ont nagé & tant siglé,	So far have they fared and sailed
Q'en vne hauene ont paruenü,	That they have come to a port
Et de la nief a terre issu.	And landed from the ship.
Ceo fut el North, a Grimesbi;	It was in the north, at Grimsby;
A icel tens qe ieo vus di,	At the time that I tell you of
Ni out onques home habité,	No one had ever dwelt there,
Ne cele hauene n'ert pas haunté.	Nor was this haven used.
Il i adresca primes maison,	He there first built a house;
De lui ad Grimesbi a non.	From him has Grimsby its name.
Quant Grim primes i ariua,	When Grim first came there
En .ii. moitez sa nief trencha,	He cut his ship in two parts;
Les chiefs en ad amont drescé,	The ends of it he reared up,
Iloec dedenz s'est herbergé.	And therein he lodged.
Pescher aloit sicome il soloit,	He went to fish as he was wont,
Si el vendoit & achatoit.	So he sold and bought them (fish).

—M.

738, 741. I insert *and his* to fill up the line. Observe that *wore* (were) is plural in l. 741.

753. *He took the sturgiun and the qual, &c.* The list of fish here enumerated may be increased from l. 896, and presents us with a sufficiently accurate notion of the different species eaten in the thirteenth century. Each of the names will be considered separately in the Glossary, and it is only intended here to make a few remarks on those which in the present day appear rather strangely to have found a place on the tables of our ancestors. The sturgeon is well known to have been esteemed a dainty, both in England and France, and specially appropriated to the King's service; but that the whale, the seal, and the porpoise should have been rendered palatable, excites our astonishment. Yet that the whale was caught for that purpose, appears not only from the present passage, but also from the Fabliau intitled *Bataille de Charnage et de Caresme*, written probably about the same period, and printed by Barbazan. It is confirmed, as we learn from Le Grand, by the French writers; and even Rabelais, near three centuries later, enumerates the whale among the dishes eaten by the Gastrolatres. In the list of fish also published by Le Grand from a MS. of the thirteenth century, and which corresponds remarkably with the names in the Romance, we meet with the *Baleigne*. See *Vie Privée des François*, T. ii. sect. 8.

Among the articles at Archbishop Nevil's Feast, 6 Edw. IV, we find, 'Porposes and Seales XII,' and at that of Archbishop Warham, held in 1504, is an item: 'De Seales and Porpos. prec. in gross XXVI. s. VIII. d.' Champier asserts that the seal was eaten at the Court of Francis I, so that the taste of the two nations seems at this period to have been nearly the same. For the courses of fish in England during the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries, see Pegge's *Form of Cury* and Warner's *Antiquitates Culinarie*, to which we may add MS. Sloane 1986.—M. [*Cf. Babees Book, &c.*, ed. Furnivall, 1868, p. 153.]

755. Holthausen is certainly right in taking *hwel* to be an error for *hel*, i.e. eel. The *e* in *wel* is long; see ll. 817, 1069, 2502.

761. MS. *Ontil*; but read *On til him*, i.e. one for himself (Morsbach).

764. *Gronge*, grange; an assonance only.

782. 'And hemp, to make good lines of.'

784. We must here suppose *setes* = *set as* = set them. The MS. shows a confusion of two constructions: (1) *were he ofte set*, were they often set; (2) *he ofte set as*, he often set them.

794. Grim's five children were—Robert the Red (1397); William Wendut (1398, 1690, perhaps meaning 'wend out'); Hugh Raven (1398, 1868); Gunnild (2866); and Levice (2914); making three sons and two daughters. In l. 816, *he foure* = they four, i.e. Grim and his three sons. See l. 761.

801. *Thar*, for *tharf*, need, ought; 'ought to have nothing except for long toil.'

802. *Ful strong*, very outrageous; cf. Shak. *L. L. L.*, v. 2. 75; and the phrase 'to come it strong.'

814. *Giufled*, heaped up; O. F. *gevelé, javelé*; from *gevele, javele*, a heap; see *javele, javeler*, in Godefroy. Pronounce *g* as *j*.

819, 820. Copied by Robert of Brunne (a Lincolnshire man) in 1303; see his *Handlyng Synne*, 5811-2:—

Plenerly, alle þat he tok,  
Wyth-helde he nat a ferthyng noke.'

Compare also ll. 991-2 with the *Handlyng Synne*, 5837-8:—

And for he bare hym so meke and softe,  
Shrewes mysdede hym ful ofte.

834. *He mouhte*, he could; merely repeated (like an echo) from l. 831.

839. *And seyde, Havelok, dere sone*. In the French, Grim sends Havelok away for quite a different reason, viz. because he does not understand fishing.

898. 'He spared neither his toes nor his eels'; he ran with all his might.

903. *The kok stod, &c.* Comp. the Fr. text, l. 242:—

Et vn keu le roi le retint,	And a cook of the king kept him,
Purceo qe fort le vist & grant,	Because he saw he was strong and tall,
Et mult le vist de bon semblant.	And saw him to be well-favoured.
Merueillous fes poeit leuer,	Wondrous loads could he lift,
Busche tailler, ewe porter.	Could cut logs, and fetch water.

The last line answers to l. 942 of the English version.—M.

907. 'The meat that thou eatest is well bestowed.'

930. 'Then had Havelok got (his meat) fairly,' i.e. he was well satisfied. In modern English, 'he had done very well.'

934. 'He asked no one to go opposite to him'; i.e. to take the other side of the *so*, or tub.

939. *He bar the turues, he bar the star*. The meaning of the latter term will be best illustrated by a passage in Moor's *Suffolk Words*, where, under the word *Bent*, he writes, '*Bent* or *starr*, on the N.W. coast of England, and especially in Lancashire, is a coarse reedy shrub—like ours perhaps—of some importance formerly, if not now, on the sandy blowing lands of those counties. Its fibrous roots give some cohesion to the silicious soil. By the 15 and 16 G. II, c. 33, plucking up and carrying away *starr* or *bent*, or having it in possession within five miles of the sand-hills, was punishable by fine, imprisonment, and whipping.' The use stated in the Act to which the *starr* was applied, is, 'making of mats, brushes, and brooms or besoms,' therefore it might very well be adapted to the purposes of a kitchen, and from its being coupled with *turues* in the poem, was perhaps sometimes burnt for fuel. The origin of the word is Danish, and still exists in the Dan. *star*, Swed. *starr*,

Isl. *störr*, a species of sedge, or broom, called by Lightfoot, p. 560, *carex caspitosa*.—M.

945. *Of alle men, &c.* Comp. the Fr. text, l. 253:—

Tant estoit franc & deboneire, So free was he and pleasant  
Que tuz voloit lur pleisir fere, That he wished all to do their will,  
Pur la franchise q'il out. For the kindness that he had.—M.

950. The occurrence of *plawe*, to play (Icel. *plaga*), is extraordinary, because in the next line we have *pleye* (A. S. *plegian*). But the meanings may have been differentiated. Perhaps *plawe* = romp. In the Prompt. Parv., *plawe* = boil like a pot. Compare Sir Guy, ed. Zupitza, p. 184, l. 3173:—

Michel y desire þi loue to haue.  
Go we togider wiþ game and *plawe*:  
Into þe chaumber go we baye [both]  
Among þe maidens for to *playe*.

959. *Of him ful wide the word sprong.* A phrase which from the Saxon times occurs repeatedly in all our old writers. A few examples may suffice:—

Bēowulf wæs brēme, blæd wide sprang.  
*Beowulf*, l. 18.

Welle wide sprong þas eorles word.  
*Laȝamon*, l. 26242.

Of a knight is that y mene,  
His name, it sprong wel wide.  
*Sir Tristrem*, st. 2, l. 21.

The word of Horn wide sprong,  
How he was bothe michel and long.  
*Horn Childe*; Ritson, *Metr. Rom.* iii. 291.

See also the *Kyng of Tars*, ll. 19, 1007; *Emare*, l. 256; *Roland and Ferragus*, as quoted by Ellis; *Ly Beaus Disconus*, l. 172; and *Chronicle of England*, l. 71.—M.

962. 'Except that.' Cf. l. 505.

970. *Don es*, do them. Cf. note to l. 1174.

978. 'As he seemed to be when he was (well) clad.'

984. *In armes him noman (ne) nam, &c.* The same praise is bestowed on Havelok in the French text, l. 265:—

Deuant eus luitre le fesoient They made him wrestle before them  
As plus forz homes q'il sauoient, With the strongest men they knew;  
Et il trestouz les abatit. And he overthrew them all.

And it was doubtless in imitation or ridicule of the qualities attributed to similar heroes that Chaucer writes of Sir Thopas, 'Of wrastling was ther non his per.' *Cant. Tales*, l. 13670 [B 1930].—M.

993. 'None the more did he (Havelok) speak ill of him.' Cf. ll. 49, 1688, which show that we should read *misseyde*; *misdede* was copied from l. 992. And see note to l. 819.

996. 'Never yet in sport, nor on a green,' or, as Kölbing reads—'Never in garden, nor on green.'

997. *Hire*, her, i. e. a female. But Kölbing's reading may be right.

1006. *To ben þer at þe parlement*. Cf. l. 1179. If we examine our historical records, we shall find that the only parliament held at Lincoln was in the year 1300, 28 Edw. I, and the writs to the *Archbishop of York*, and other nobles, both ecclesiastical and secular, are still extant. The proceedings are detailed at some length by Robert of Brunne, vol. ii. p. 312, who might have been in Lincoln at the time, or, at all events, was sufficiently informed of all that took place, from his residence in the county. If we could suppose that the author of the Romance alluded to this very parliament, it would reduce the period of the poem's composition to a later date than either the style or the writing of the MS. will possibly admit of. It is therefore far more probable the writer here makes use of a poetical, and very pardonable licence, in transferring the parliament to the chief city of the county in which he was evidently born, or brought up, without any reference whatever to historical data.—M.

1018. *Sembling* = *sembel-ling* (trisyllabic). Cf. note to l. 189.

1020. 'Though they happened to have work in hand,' i. e. had plenty to do.

1022. *Biforn here fet þanne lay a tre*, &c. This game of *putting the stone* is of the highest antiquity, and seems to have been common at one period to the whole of England, although subsequently confined to the northern counties, and to Scotland. Fitzstephen enumerates casting of stones among the amusements of the Londoners in the twelfth century, and Dr. Pegge, in a note on the passage, calls it 'a Welch custom.' The same sport is mentioned by Geoffrey of Monmouth, among the diversions pursued at King Arthur's feast, as will appear in a subsequent note (l. 2320). By an edict of Edward III, the practice of casting stones, wood, and iron was forbidden, and the use of the bow substituted; yet this by no means superseded the former amusement, which was still in common use in the sixteenth century, as appears from Strutt's *Popular Pastimes*, Introd. pp. xvii, xxxix, and p. 56, sq. In the Highlands this sport appears to have been longer kept up than in any other part of Britain, and Pennant, describing their games, writes, 'Those retained are, throwing the *putting-stone*, or stone of strength (*clock neart*) as they call it, which occasions an emulation who can throw a weighty one the farthest.' *Tour in Scoll.* p. 214, 4to. 1769. See also *Statist. Account of Argyleshire*, xi. 287. In the French

romance of Horn, preserved in MS. Harl. 527, is almost a similar incident to the one in Havelok, and would nearly amount to a proof that Tomas, the writer of the French text of Horn, was an Englishman. [Cf. Scott, *Lady of the Lake*, canto v. st. 23.]

See the romance of *Octovian Imperator*, l. 895. It is singular enough, that the circumstance of Havelok's throwing the stone, mentioned in the romance, should have been founded on, or preserved in, a local tradition, as attested by Robert of Brunne, p. 26 :—

Men sais in Lyncoln castelle ligges ȝit a stone,  
That Hauelok kast wele forbi euerilkone.—M.

1037. *Stareden*, stared, gives only an assonance. But it may be right. Cf. *lokede thertil*, looked on, in l. 1041. Holthausen has *gradden*, cried, shouted; but the change is considerable. We have no authority for such a form as *stradden*, contended; though the Swed. dialect *strida*, to contend, has a pt. t. *stred*.

1077-1088. *The king Athelwald*, &c. Comp. the Fr. text, ll. 354-370 :—

Quant Ekenbright le roi fini,	When Ekenbright the king died,
En ma garde sa fille mist ;	He placed his daughter in my protection ;
Vn serement iurer me fist,	He made me swear an oath,
Q'au plus fort home la dorroie,	That I would give her to the strongest man
Qe el reaume trouver porroie.	That I could find within the realm.
Assez ai quis & demandé,	I have sought and asked sufficiently
Tant q'en ai vn fort troué ;	So that I have found a strong man.
Vn valet ai en ma quisine,	I have a servant in my kitchen
A qui ieo dorrai la meschine.	To whom I will give the girl.

1103. *After Goldeborw*, &c. Comp. the Fr. text, l. 377 :—

Sa niece lur fet amener,	He made men bring to them his niece
Et a Cuaran esposer ;	And espouse her to Curan ;
Pur lui auiler & honir,	In order to disgrace and shame her,
La fist la nuit lez lui gisir.	He made her to lie beside him at night.

The French romance differs here very considerably from the English, and in the latter, the dream of Argentille, her visit to the hermit, and the conversation relative to Havelok's parents, are entirely omitted.—M.

1129. 'Goldborough wept, and it was ill for her.' Cf. 'well is *thee*' ; Ps. 128. 2 (Prayer Book).

1174. We must translate it, 'He (Godard) gave them to her, and she took them,' i. e. the pence. This alone is the grammatical construction, and it suits the context best; observe, that the words *ys* and *as* [better *is* or *es*] are equivalent to *es* = them. Cf. l. 970. See Morris, *Gen. & Exod.*, Pref. p. xviii; where *es*, i. e. them, is exemplified.

1199. 'They took the land under foot,' i. e. traversed it.



1203. *Thanne he komen there, &c.* Comp. the Fr. text, l. 556 :—  
 A Grimesby s'en alerent ; They went to Grimsby ;  
 Mes li prodoms estoit finiz, But the good man was dead,  
 Et la Dame q'is out nurriz, And the dame who had nourished them.  
 Kelloc sa fille i ont trouée, They found there Kelloc their daughter :  
 Vn marchant l'out esposée. A merchant had married her.

The marriage of Kelloc, Grim's daughter, with a merchant is skilfully introduced in the French, and naturally leads to the mention of Denmark. The plot of the English story is wholly dissimilar in this respect.—M.

1233. 'They would undertake to wash and wring her clothes.' Cf. l. 2458, where the correct pl. *clothes* occurs.

1246. 'They often led (or proposed) the wassail,' i. e. they often drank their healths.

1247. *On the nith, &c.* Comp. the Fr. text, l. 381 :—

Quant couché furent ambedui,	When they were laid together
Cele out grant honte de lui,	She was much ashamed of him,
Et il assez greindre de li.	And he still more of her.
As deuz se geut, si se dormi.	Apart he lay, and so slept.
Ne voloit pas q'ele veist	He did not wish her to see
La flambe qe de lui issist.	The flame that issued from him.

The voice of the angel is completely an invention of the English author, and the dream (which is transferred from Argentille to Havelok) is altogether different in its detail.—M.

1260. *He beth heyman, &c.* Comp. the Fr. text, l. 521 :—  
 Il est né de real lignage, He is born of royal rank,  
 Oncore auera grant heritage. Yet shall he have a great heritage,  
 Grant gent fra vers li encline, Will make many people submissive to him ;

Il serra roi & tu reyne. He will be king, and thou queen.—M.

1334. The words *of euere-il del* are corruptly repeated from l. 1330 above. Perhaps we should read *wit-uten were*, i. e. without doubt.

1336. *Nimen wit*, let us two go; cf. l. 1931. The dual form *unker* occurs in l. 1882.

1337. *Do on frest*, put in delay, cause to be delayed. Cf. Icel. *frest*, delay.

1357. Or read—'And gan bifor the rode falle.'

1420. 'And he would take the blame on himself.'

1430. *Hauede go for him*, would have availed him. Cf. l. 44. So in *Lajamon* :—

Ne sculde him neoðer gon fore  
 Gold ne na gærsume, &c.; vol. ii. p. 537.

1444. The French text helps but little to supply the blank. It shows that Havelok and his wife sailed to Denmark, and, on their arrival, sought out the castle belonging to Sigar, who answers to the Ubbe of the English version.

1632. *A gold ring drow he forth anon*, &c. A similar incident, and in nearly the same words, occurs in *Sir Tristrem*, ll. 623-7. So also Wyntoun, who relates the subsidy of 40,000 moutons sent from France to Scotland in 1353, and adds,

Qwha gyvis swilk gyftis he is wyse.—M.

See also *Piers Plowman*, Text A. iii. 202.

1643. *Hauede*, he would have. *Youenet* = *youen et* = *yeuen it*, given it.

1646. *Hu he was wel of bones*, &c. Comp. the Fr. text, l. 743 :—

Gent cors & bele feture,	His fair body and handsome make,
Lungs braz & grant furcheure;	Long arms and great fork of the body;
Ententiuement l'esgarda.	Attentively he regarded him.—M.

1667. 'Thereof will I myself be surety.'

1677. 'And right away (he rode)'; *he rod* being understood.

1678. This line has two syllables too little. Insert *ferre*, further.

1720. Dr. Ellis suggested adding *non* after *wimman*, to rime with *Iohan*, pronounced *Iōn* (*Jōn*). Then *seint* would be dissyllabic: *sē-int*; as it seems to be in Chaucer, Prologue, ll. 120, 509, 697.

1722. *Thanne he were set*, &c. This is an amplification of the Fr. text, l. 677, sq :—

Quant fut heure del manger,	When it was time to eat
Et qe tuz alerent lauer,	And all went to wash,
Li prodoms a manger s'assist,	The master sat down to eat;
Les .iiii. valez seoir i fist,	He made the three youths sit there,
Argentille lez son seignur;	Argentille beside her lord;
Serui furent a grant honur.	They were very honourably served.—M.

1726. *Kranes*, *swannes*, *veneysun*, &c. We have here the principal constituents of what formed the banquets of our ancestors. The old romances abound with descriptions of this nature, which coincide exactly with the present. See *Richard Cœur de Lion*, l. 4221; *Guy of Warwick*; *The Squyr of Lowse Degre*, l. 317; [and *Allit. Morte Arthure*, ed. Perry, ll. 177-199.]

'Wine is common,' says Dr. Pegge, speaking of the entertainments of the fourteenth century, 'both red and white. This article they partly had of their own growth, and partly by importation from France and Greece.' A few examples will illustrate this :—

He laid the cloth, and set forth bread,

And also wine, both *white and red*.

*Sir Degore*, ap. Ellis, *Metr. Rom.* v. 3. p. 375.

And dronke wyn, and eke pyment,  
*Whyt and red*, al to talent.

*Kyng Alisaunder*, l. 4178.

[Cf. *Piers Plowman*, Text B, at the end of the *Prologue*.]

In the *Squyr of Lowe Degre* is a long list of these wines, which has received considerable illustration in the curious work of Dr. Henderson.—M.

1733. *Bidde* can scarcely be right; and *bide* is not much better. Perhaps read: 'Ne of the wyn me birþ nouht dwelle.'

1736. The word which looks like *kilþing* is obscurely written, and my impression is that it is miswritten for *ilk þing*, the word *þe* being put for *þer*, as frequently elsewhere. We should thus get *But hwan he haueden þer ilk þing deled*, when they had there distributed everything; and either *haueden* stands for *had*, or *þer* must be omitted.

1749. *And sende him unto the greyues*. In the French, Havelok is simply sent to an *ostel*, and the *greyve* does not appear in the story.—M.

✓ 1799. 'A curse on (any one) who may hence flee from you.' Zupitza reads *nou* for *you*; which is less awkward.

1806. *Hauelok lifte up*, &c. In the French, all the amusing details relative to Robert and Huwe Raven are omitted, and Havelok is made to retire to a monastery, where he defends himself by throwing down the stones on his assailants.—M.

1808-9. *Sternes*, stars. Cf. Minot, *Polit. Songs*, song 3, l. 67:—

Sum lay stareand on þe sternes,  
 And sum lay, knocked out paire hernes.

1826. *wolde*, offered at, intended to hit, *would* have hit. Perhaps read *wolde hit Hauelok riht in th' eye*.

1838. *And shoten on him* [rushed at him] *so don on bere Dogges*, that wolden him to-tere.

The same comparison is made use of in the romance of *Horn Childe*:

The Yrise folk about him yode,

As hondes do to bare.—Ritson, *Met. Rom.* iii. 289.

See note on l. 2320.—M. Cf. l. 2431; and Barbour's *Bruce*, vii. 467.

1914. 'Cursed be he who cares! for they deserved it! What did they there? They were worried.'

1926-1930. *Sket cam tiding*, &c. Comp. the Fr. text, l. 719:—

La nouele vint a chastel,	The news came to the castle
Au seneschal, qui n'est pas bel,	To the seneschal (who is not comely),
Qe cil qu'il auoit herbergé	That he whom he had lodged
Cinc de ses homes out tué.	Had killed five of his men.

1932. Apparently corrupt. As amended, it is, literally, 'What this strife has in (its) signification,' i. e. what this strife means. For *wold*

= meaning, see *Genesis and Exodus*, 2122; also the very phrase *owen a-wold* in the same, 1944, 2727.

2005. *Hauenet*, for *hauen et*, have it; *sure*, sourly, dearly; *keft*, for *kofst*, bought. See *coff* in E. D. D.

2026. The number 'sixty and ten' does not agree with ll. 1768, 1918, and 1956, which make the number to have been sixty-one, or sixty men with a leader 'in a loupe.' The minstrel has erroneously quoted the number of Havelok's escort, which consisted of Ubbe with ten knights, and sixty others; see ll. 1746-7. It is a small matter.

2036. Probably another form of the proverb already alluded to at l. 907: 'Well is bestowed the meat he eats.' But it is here very awkwardly expressed, viz. as 'It is well bestowed (or arranged), that he eats meat.'

2045. *That weren of Kaym kin and Eues*. The odium affixed to the supposed progeny of Cain, and the fables engrafted on it, owe their origin to the theological opinions of the Middle Ages, which it is not worth while to trace to their authors. See *Beowulf*, l. 107; and *Piers Plowman*, A. x. 135-156, answering to p. 177 of Whitaker's edition. See also the romance of *Kyng Alisaunder*, l. 1933. In *Yvaine and Gawaine*, l. 559, the Giant is called 'the karl of *Kaymes kyn*,' and so also in a poem printed by Percy, intitled *Little John Nobody*, written about the year 1550:—

Such caitives count to be come of Cain's kind.

*Anc. Reliq.* ii. 130, ed. 1765.—M.

2057. *Knawed*, ascertained. The pp. here takes the weak form, as in prov. E. *knowed* (for *known*).

2076. *It ne shal no thing ben bitwene*, &c. These lines will receive some illustration from a passage in *Sir Tristrem*, where it is said, 'A borde he tok oway of her bour,' l. 1932. On which Sir W. Scott remarks, 'The bed-chamber of the queen was constructed of wooden boards or shingles, of which one could easily be removed.' This will explain the line which occurs below, 2106, 'He stod, and totede in at a bord.'—M. Accent *It* and *no*; the syllable *ne* is nearly suppressed, as often; cf. l. 2103.

2092. *Aboute the middel*, &c. In the French, a person is placed by the seneschal to watch, who first discovers the light.—M.

2132. *Bi the pappes he leyen naked*. 'From the latter end of the thirteenth to near the sixteenth century, all ranks, and both sexes, were universally in the habit of sleeping quite naked. This custom is often alluded to by Chaucer, Gower, Lydgate, and all our ancient writers.' Ellis, *Spec. Metr. Rom.* V. 1. p. 324, 4th ed. In the *Squyr of Lowe Degre*, l. 673, is a remarkable instance of this fact. The custom subsisted both in England and France to a very recent period, and hence

probably was derived the phrase *naked-bed*, illustrated so copiously by Archdeacon Nares in his Glossary.—M.

✓ 2146. 'That men, by the light, might see (how) to choose (out) a penny.'

2157. For *Als* Zupitza reads *is*; i.e. 'As this man . . is to Birkabein.'

2192. Cf. the French, l. 843 :—

Ses chapeleins fet demander,	He made men require his chaplains
Ses briefs escriure & enseeler;	To write and seal his writs;
Par ses messages les manda,	He summoned them by his messages,
Et pur ses amis enuoia;	And sent for his friends,
Pur ses homes, pur ses parenz;	For his men, for his relatives;
Mult i assembla granz genz.	Much people assembled there.—M.

2201. Read *ne neme* = took not, sc. their way, just as in l. 1207.

2214. *Bitauhte*, committed, as in l. 2212. Compare ll. 2217-9 with 186-191.

2240-2265. *Lokes, hware he stondes her*, &c. Comp. the Fr. text, ll. 913-921 :—

'Veez ci nostre dreit heir,	See here our right heir,
Bien en deuom grant ioie auoir.'	We ought to rejoice over him.
Tut primerain se desafubla,	All the chiefs uncovered,
Par deuant lui s'agenuilla;	And knelt before him. [him
Sis homs deuint, si li iura	Each became his man, and swore to
Qe leaument le seruira.	That he will serve him truly.
Li autre sont apres alé,	The others came after,
Chescuns de bone volenté;	Each with good will;
Tuit si home sont deuenu.	All became his men.—M.

2314. *Vbbe dubbde him to knith*, &c. So likewise in the Fr. text, l. 928, 'A cheualier l'out adubbé.' The ceremony of knighthood is described with greater minuteness in the romance of *Ly Beaus Disconus*, l. 73; and see *Kyng Horn*, ed. Lumby, ll. 495-504.—M.

2320. *Hwan he was king, ther mouthe men se*, &c. Ritson has justly remarked, Notes to *Ywaine and Gawaine*, l. 15, that the elaborate description of Arthur's feast at Carlisle, given by Geoffrey of Monmouth, l. ix. c. 12, has served as a model to all his successors. The original passage stands thus in a fine MS. of the thirteenth century, MS. Harl. 3773, fol. 33 b: 'Refecti autem epulis diversos ludos acturi campos extra civitatem adeunt. Tunc milites simulachra belli scientes *equestrem ludum* componunt, mulieribus ab edito murorum aspicientibus. Alii *cum cestibus*, alii *cum hastis*, alii *gravium lapidum jactu*, alii *cum facis* [*saxis*, Edd.], alii *cum aleis*, diversisque alii alteriusmodi jocis contententes.' In the translation of this description by Wace we approach still nearer to the imitation of the romance before us :—

A plusurs iuis se departirent,  
 Li vns alerent *buhurder*,  
 E lur ignels cheuals mustrer,  
 Li altre alerent *eskermir*,  
 V *pere geter*, v *saillir*;  
 Tels i-aveit ki darz *lancouent*,  
 E tels i-aveit ki *lutouent* :  
 Chescon del gru [geu ?] s'entremetai  
 Dunt entremettre se saueit.—MS. Reg. 13. A. xxi.

The parallel versions, from the French, of *Lajamon*, Robert of Gloucester, and Robert of Brunne, may be read in Mr. Ellis's *Specimens of Early English Poets*. At the feast of Olimpias, described in the romance of *Kyng Alisaunder*, we obtain an additional imitation :—

Withoute theο toun was mury,  
 Was reised ther al maner pley;  
 There was knyghtis *turny[i]ng*,  
 There was maidenes carolyng,  
 There was champions *skyrmyng*,  
 Of heom and of other *wrastlyng*,  
 Of liouns chas, of *beore baityng*,  
 And *bay of bor*, of *bole statyng*.—l. 193. Cf. l. 1045.

Some additional illustrations on each of the amusements named in our text may not be unacceptable :—

(1) *Buttinge with sharpe speres*. This is tilting, or justing, expressed in Wace by *buhurder*. See Strutt's *Sports and Pastimes*, p. 96 sq., 108.

(2) *Skirming with taleuaces*, or *talevas*. [Cf. O. F. *talevas*, a buckler, in Godefroy's O. F. Dictionary.] This is described more at large by Wace, in his account of the feast of Cassibelaunus. Cf. *Lajamon*, v. i. p. 347, l. 8144. In Strutt's *Sports and Pastimes* is a representation of this game, taken from MS. Bodl. 264, illuminated between 1338 and 1344, in which the form of the *talevas* is accurately defined [fig. 89]. It appears to have been pursued to such an excess as to require the interference of the Crown, for in 1286 an edict was issued by Edward I prohibiting all persons *eskirmer au bokeler*. This, however, had only a temporary effect in restraining it, and in later times, under the appellation of *sword and buckler play*, it again became universally popular.

(3) *Wrastling*, . . . *puttinge of ston*. See the notes on ll. 984, 1022.

(4) *Harping and piping*. This requires no illustration.

(5) *Leyk of mine, of hasard ok*. Among the games mentioned at the marriage of Gawain, in the Fabliau of *Le Chevalier à l'Épée*, we have :—

Cil Chevalier jueunt as tables,  
 Et as eschés de l'autre part,  
 O à la mine, o à hasard.

Le Grand, in his note on this passage, T. i. p. 57, ed. 1779, writes: 'Le Hasard était une sorte de jeu de dez. Je ne connais point la *Mine*; j'ai trouvé seulement ailleurs un passage qui prouve que ce jeu était très-dangereux, et qu'on pouvait s'y ruiner en peu de tems.' It appears however from the Fabliau of *Du Prestre et des deus Ribaus*, to have been certainly a species of *Tables*, or *Backgammon*, and to have been played with dice, on a board called *Minete*. The only passage we recollect in which any further detail of this game is given, is that of Wace, in the account of Arthur's feast, Harl. MS. 6508, and MS. Cott. Vit. A. x., but it must be remarked that the older copy 13 A. xxi. does not contain it, nor is it found in the translations of *Lazamon*, or Robert of Gloucester. [See *Mine*, *Minete*, in Godefroy's Old French Dictionary.]

(6) *Romanz reding*. See Sir W. Scott's note on *Sir Tristrem*, p. 290, [p. 306, ed. 1811]; and the Dissertations of Percy, Ritson, and Ellis. [Cf. 'romance-reding,' *Sir Guy*, ed. Zupitza, p. 635, l. 12.]

(7) *Ther mouthe men se the boles beyte,  
And the bores, with hundes teyte.*

Cf. ll. 1838, 2438. Both these diversions are mentioned by Lucianus, in his inedited tract *De laude Cestriae*, MS. Bodl. 672, who is supposed by Tanner to have written about A.D. 1100, but who must probably be placed near half a century later. They formed also part of the amusements of the Londoners in the twelfth century, as we learn from Fitzstephen, p. 77, and are noticed in the passage above quoted from the romance of *Kyng Alisaunder*. In later times, particularly during the sixteenth century, these cruel practices were in the highest estimation, as we learn from Holinshed, Stowe, Laneham, &c. See Strutt's *Sports and Pastimes*, p. 192, and the plate from MS. Reg. 2. B. vii. Also Pegge's Dissertation on Bull-baiting, inserted in vol. ii. of *Archæologia*.

(8) *Ther mouthe men se how Grim greu*. If this is to be understood of scenic representation (and we can scarcely view it in any other light), it will present one of the earliest instances on record of any attempt to represent an historical event, or to depart from the religious performances, which until a much later period were the chief, and almost only, efforts towards the formation of the drama. Of course, the words of the writer must be understood to refer to the period in which he lived, i. e. according to our supposition, about the end of Henry III's reign, or beginning of Edward I. See Le Grand's notes to the *Lai de Courtois*, V. i. p. 329, and Strutt's *Sports and Pastimes*, B. iii. ch. 2.—M.

2338. 'I should never be thereby overburdened.' I take *crowd* to mean 'crowded'; hence squeezed, incommoded, oppressed. See *Crowd* (pp. *crud*) in E. D. D. Cf. '*crowd* in a barwe,' pushed along in a wheelbarrow; Paston Letters, iii. 215.

2344. *The feste fourti dawes sat*. Cf. l. 2950. This is borrowed also

from Geoffrey, and is the usual term of duration fixed in the romances. See *Octouian Emperor*, l. 73; *Launfal*, l. 631; *Squyr of Lowe Degre*, l. 1114.—M.

2356, 2362. *With-held the king*, the king retained.

2384. The French story here differs wholly from the English. Instead of the encounter of Robert and Godard, and the cruel punishment inflicted on the latter, in the French is a regular battle between the forces of Havelok and Hødulf (Godard). A single combat takes place between the two leaders, in which Hødulf is slain.—M.

2413. *Ne weren*, &c.; 'had it not been for his brethren,' &c. I give another example of this curious idiom: 'He fell in a great dyke . . . and had ben there deed [dead] and [if] his page *had nat ben*'; *Specimens of English*, pt. 3, ed. Skeat, p. 163, l. 95. And see l. 2677.

2450. Cf. ll. 2506 and 2822. This appears to have been a common but barbarous method, in former times, of leading traitors or malefactors to execution. Thus in the romance of *Kyng Alisaunder*, the treatment of the murderers of Darius is described:—

He dude quyk harnesche hors,  
And sette theron heore cors,  
Hyndeforth they seten, saun faile;

In heore hand they hulden theo tailles; l. 4708.—M.

2461. We find a similar proverb in the *Histoire de Melusine, tirée des Chroniques de Poitou*, &c., 12mo. Par. 1698, in which (at p. 72) Thierry, Duke of Bretagne, says to Raimondin: 'Vous autorisez par votre silence *notre Proverbe*, qui dit, *Qu'un vieux péché fait nouvelle vergogne*.'—M. Hazlitt refers us to *The Booke of Meery Riddles*, 1629, No. 24, for the same proverb, and quotes the more modern form: 'Old sin, new repentance.'

2468. 'For he knew the deceitful lord; in every respect God was angry with him.' See *Dam* (4) in N. E. D. ✓

2496-7. These lines are in the reverse order in the MS., which wholly destroys the sense. It seems to mean:—'And began, exactly at the toe, to rip and flay (him) as if he were (mere) dirt or gore; and he began to roar,' &c.

2513. *Shet was seysed*, &c. Comp. the Fr. text, l. 971:—

Après cest fet, ad receu After this, he has received

Le regne q'a son pere fu. The kingdom which was his father's.—M.

2516. *And the king ful sone it yaf*, &c. So in *Sir Tristrem*, l. 909:—

Rohand he yaf *the wand*,  
And bad him sitt him bi,  
That fre;

'Rohand lord make y

To held this lond of me.'—Fytte i. st. 83; p. 52.



For the custom of giving seisin or investiture *per fustim*, and *per baculum*, see Madox's *Formul. Anglican.*, pref. p. ix, and Spelman, Gloss. in v. *Investire*, and *Traditio*. The same usage existed in France, *par rain et par baton*.—M.

2521. ——— of *monkes blake*, &c. The allusion here may be made either to the Abbey of Wellow, in Grimsby, which was a monastery of *Black Canons*, said to have been built about A.D. 1110, or (what is more probable) to the Augustine Friary of Black Monks, which is stated in the *Monumental Antiquities of Grimsby*, by the Rev. G. Oliver, to have been 'founded about the year 1280'; p. 110. No notice of it occurs in Tanner till the year 1304; Pat. 33 Edw. I. Some old walls of this edifice, which was dissolved in 1543, still remain, and the site is still called 'The Friars.' If the connexion between this foundation and the one recorded in the poem be considered valid, the date of the composition must be referred to *rather* a later period than we wish to admit.—M.

2530. The French supplies what is here omitted, viz. that Havelok sails to England by the persuasion of his wife.—M.

Indeed, ll. 979-1007 of the French text may serve to fill up the evident gap in the story; a translation of the passage is added, to show this more clearly:—

Quant Haueloc est rois pussanz,  
Le regne tint plus de .iiiii. anz;  
Merueillos tresor i auna.  
Argentille li comanda  
Qu'il passast en Engleterre  
Pur son heritage conquerre,  
Dont son oncle l'out engettée,  
[Et] A grant tort desheritée.  
Li rois li dist qu'il fera  
Ceo qu'ele li comandera.  
Sa nauie fet a-turner,  
Ses genz & ses ostz mander.  
En mier se met quant orré a,  
Et la reyne od lui mena.  
Quatre vinz & quatre cenz  
Out Haueloc, pleines de genz.  
Tant out nagé & siglé,  
Q'en Carleflure est ariué.  
Sur le haune se herbergerent,  
Par le pais viande quierent.  
Puis enuoia li noble rois,  
Par le consail de ses Danois,

When Havelok is a mighty king,  
He reigned more than four years,  
Marvellous treasure he amassed.  
Argentille (Goldborough) bade him  
Pass into England  
To conquer her heritage,  
Whence her uncle had cast her out,  
And very wrongly disinherited her.  
The king told her that he would do  
That which she will command him.  
He got ready his fleet,  
And sent for his men and his hosts.  
He puts to sea when he has a wind,  
And took the queen with him.  
Four score and four hundred (ships)  
Had Havelok, full of men.  
So far has he steered and sailed  
That he has arrived at Carleflure.  
Hard by the haven they abode,  
And sought food in the country  
Then sent the noble king, [round.  
By the advice of his Danes,

A Alsì qu'il li rendist	To Alsì (Godrich)—that he should restore to him
La terre qe tint Ekenbright,	The land that Ekenbright (Athel- wold) held,
Q'a sa niece fut donée,	Which was given to his niece,
Dont il l'out desheritée ;	And of which he had deprived her.
Et, si rendre n'el voleit,	And, if he would not give it up,
Mande qu'il le purchaceroit.	He sends word that he will take it.
Av roi uindrent li messenger.	To the king came the messengers.

The remainder of the French poem altogether differs in its detail from the English.

2540. *Comen up*, landed ; cf. Fr. *arriver*, lit. 'to come to shore.'

2557. 'With very good weapons that ye so bear'; as if the narrator was here quoting Godrich's own words. Or read *y-boren*, borne.

2563. *Iohan* is monosyllabic (*Iōn*) ; as in ll. 177, 1112.

2569. 'As the nag (dreads) the spur.' Cf. *rouncy* ; Chaucer, *Prol.* 390.

2574. Read *p'ert* ; and *p'er-r-ldom* (with trilled *r*) in l. 2923. So also *p'asse* in l. 2839.

2579. 'Look where, here at Grimsby, an army of foreigners is come (has arrived).' Cf. ll. 2153, 2535.

2611. Understand *men* before *keste*, *late*, *sette*, all infinitives. 'There might men see (men) cast the bright coats-of-mail on their backs, and put them right (adjust them),' &c.

2641. *Wedde*, run madly, gallop ; see Glossary.

2688. *Tarst*, for *at arst*, at erst, at first ; see *Erst*, A (2), in N. E. D.

2698. *That he (ne) felden*, 'that they did not fall.' Wycliffe has *felden*, fell ; Mark iii. 11. Cf. Dan. *falde*, to fall.

2713. *Wimman of elde*, a woman of (sufficient) age. Cf. l. 174.

2719. The former *mi* should be *þi* ; i. e. 'All thy deeds.' Suggested by Zupitza. Perhaps the same may be said of the latter *mi*.

2889. *It ne were neuere*, there never were. Cf. M. E. *it am I*, it is I. Pronounce *ne were neuere* as *n'er' nev're*.

2927. *Hire that was ful swete in bedde*. Among Kelly's Scotch Proverbs, p. 290, we find : 'Sweet in the bed, and sweir up in the morning, was never a good housewife'; and in a ballad of the last century quoted by Laing, the editor of that highly curious collection, the *Select Pieces of Ancient Popular Poetry of Scotland*, we meet with the same expression :—

A Clown is a Clown both at home and abroad,

When a Rake he is comely, and sweet in his bed.—M.

2933. The footnote shows that the scribe (at first) lost his place, missed twenty lines, and began to write l. 2954. Zupitza suggested

that perhaps he missed a page, and that a page contained only twenty lines. This suggestion is verified by the fact that twenty lines are transposed in the copy of King Horn, in the same handwriting; see the edition by J. Hall, Oxford, 1901, p. ix.

2990. The last word is written *this* in the MS., but, as it rhymes to *rith*, we must suppose *tith* to be the word meant. *This* cannot be explained, but *tith* (which would become *tith* in our scribe's spelling) is the pp. of a verb signifying *to purpose*, which is the exact meaning required. Cf.

'And y to turne to þee have *tixt*';

i. e. 'I have purposed (or resolved) to turn to thee.'

*Political, Religious, and Love Poems*; ed. Furnivall, 1866, p. 177. See examples in Stratmann, s. v. *tikten*.

## POSTSCRIPT.

For further illustrations, the reader is particularly referred to the Notes to Mr. J. Hall's edition of King Horn, published by the Clarendon Press in 1901.

For example, Havelok, l. 107 should be compared with the note to King Horn, l. 90; and many similar illustrations may be obtained by help of the following references, in which the corresponding lines of King Horn are given within marks of parenthesis.

107 (90)—118 (825)—122 (250)—136 (1001)—152 (980)—251 (60)—291 (425)—411 (898)—656 (92)—729 (261)—770 (479)—959 (211)—972 (10)—1063 (94)—1315 (666)—1436 (481)—1437 (*O* 891, p. 146)—1760 (*L* 245, p. 110)—1775 (841)—1780 (323)—1832 (91)—1871 (605)—2042 (439)—2053 (250)—2139 (1309)—2322 (478)—2477 (1492)—2583 (62)—2614 (333)—2645 (875)—2658 (47)—2734 (1487)—2781 (1249)—2913 (994)—2919 (15).

## GLOSSARIAL INDEX

\* \* \* *The Glossary gives the forms in the manuscript ; for which consult the footnotes.*

### ABBREVIATIONS.

Barb. Barbour's Bruce.—Chauc. Chaucer.—Doug. Gawin Douglas's Transl. of the *Æneid*.—Ellis, M. R. Ellis's Specimens of Metrical Romances.—Gl. Glossary.—Jam. Jamieson's Dictionary.—Lazam. Lazamon's Transl. of Wace (ed. Madden).—Lynds. Sir D. Lyndsay's Works.—N.E. Northern English.—Percy, A. R. Percy's Reliques of Ancient English Poetry.—P. Plowm. Piers Plowman.—R. Br. Robert of Brunne.—R. Gl. Robert of Gloucester, ed. Hearne (2nd ed. 1810).—Rits. A. S. Ritson's Ancient Songs.—Rits. M. R. Ritson's Metrical Romances.—Sc. Scotch, Scotland.—Sir Tr. Sir Tristrem.—Wall. Wallace.—Web. Weber's Metrical Romances.—Wynt. Wyntoun's Chronicle.—Fr. French.—Icel. Icelandic.—Lat. Latin.—Teut. Teutonic.—*q. v.* Quod vide.—The Romances separately cited are sufficiently indicated by the Titles. The numbers refer to the line of the Poem.

It may be useful to add that the names of the Romances edited by Ritson are—vol. i. Ywayne and Gawin ; Launfal.—vol. ii. Lybeaus Disconus ; King Horn ; King of Tars ; Emare ; Sir Orpheo ; Chronicle of England.—vol. iii. Le bone Florence ; Erle of Tolous ; Squyr of Lowe Degre ; Knight of Curtesy. Those edited by Weber are—vol. i. Kyng Alisaunder ; Sir Cleges ; Lai-le-freine.—vol. ii. Richard Cœur de Lion ; Ipomydon ; Amis and Amiloun.—vol. iii. Seunyn Sages ; Octouian ; Sir Amadas ; Hunting of the Hare.

Anglo-Saxon forms are quoted in italics, usually between square brackets, as *s. v.* Abouten.

**A**, 610, 936. Apparently an error of the scribe for **Al**, but perhaps written as pronounced. N.E. and Sc. *aw*. V. Jam. *See Al*.

**A**, one, a single, 2082.

**A** before a *noun* is commonly a corruption of the A.S. *on*, as proved clearly by the examples in Tyrwhitt's Gl., Jam., and Gl. Lynds. Adoun, *q. v.* is an ex-

ception. **A**-two, 1413, 2643. *See On*.

**Abouten**, *prep.* [*on - būtan*] about, 521, 670, 1010, &c. Abuten, 2429.

**Aboven**, *prep.* above, 1700.

**Adoun**, *adv.* down, 567. Adune, 2735. Doun, 901, 925, &c. Dun, 888, 927. Dune, 1815, 2656. A.S. *of-dūne*.

**Adrad**, *part. pa.* afraid, 278, 1048, 1163, 1682, 2304. **Adradde**, *pl.* 1787. **Adred**, 1258. **Odrat**, 1153. **Sir Tr.** l. 2945; **K. Horn**, 124. *See* **Dred**.

**After**, *prep.* for, i. e. to summon, 137, 138.

**Ageyn**, *prep.* [on-gēan] against, 569, 2024, &c. **Agen**, 1792. **Ayen**, 489, 1210, 2799. **Ageyn**, toward, to meet, 451, 1696, 1947; opposite to, 1809; upon, on, 1828. **Ayen**, towards, 1207. **Ageyn** him go, 934, opposite him, so as to bear an equal weight. **Ageyn** hire, 1106, at her approach. **Ageyn** þe lith, 2141, opposed to the light, on which the light shines. **V. R. Gl.**, **R. Br.**, **Chauc.**, &c.

**Ageyn**, *adv.* again, 493, 2426.

**Ageynes**, *prep.* against, 2153, 2270.

**Al**, *adv.* wholly, entirely, 34, 70, 139, 203, &c.

**Al** before to- (*prefix*), utterly, wholly, 1948, 1993, 2001, 2021, 2667. *Cf.* **To**.

**Al**, *adj.* all, 35, 264, 277, &c.; every one, 104; every part, 224; *plu.* **Alle**, 2, 16, 37, 150, &c.

**Albidene**, *adv.* *See* **Bidene**.

**Ale**, *n.* ale, 14, 1244, 1731.

**Als**, **Also**, **Also**, *conj.* [eal-swā] as, like, so, 306, 319, &c. **Als**, as if, 1912. **Al** so foles, like fools, 2100. **Als** is merely the abbreviation of **Al** so; and the modern *as* is again shortened from *als*. In **Lazamon** it is often written *alse*, as in l. 4953:—

And he hæfde a swithe god wif  
& he heo leouede *alse* his lif.

*Cf.* **Havelok**, l. 1663. **Als** and **Also** are used indifferently, and universally by the old English and Scotch poets.

**Alper-beste**, *adj.* and *adv.* best

of all, 1040, 2415. **Alper-best(e)**, 182, 720, 1197. **Alper-leste**, 1978, 2666, least of all. It is the gen. c. pl. of **Alle**, joined to an *adj.* in the superl. degree, and is extensively employed.

**Alto**-. *See* **Al** and **To**.

**Amidewarde**, *prep.* amidst, 872.

**An**, *conj.* and, 29, 359, &c. So used by **Lazamon**, and still in **Somersetsh. V. Jennings**. **Ant**, 36, 557.

**And**, *conj.* if, 12, 2862.

**Andelong**, *adv.* lengthways, i. e. from the tail to the head, 2822.

**Chauc.** **endelong**, **C. T.** 1993.

**Ane**, one, a, 722.

**Angel**, *n.* angel, 1276.

**Ani**, any, 10, 26, 105, 1083.

**Anlepi** (*for* **Anlepi**), *adj.* [anlepiġ] one, a single, 2107. **Onlepi**, 1094. It occurs in the *Ormulum*.

**Anker**, *n.* anchor, 521, 670.

**An-on**, *adv.* at once, 176, 523.

**Anoper**, *adj.* **Al** another, 1395, in a different way, on another project.

Ah *al* hit iwrath on other

Sone ther after

*Lazamon*, l. 21005.

**Answerede**, *pa. t.* answered, 1313. **Ansureden**, *pl.* 176.

**Ant**. *See* **An**.

**Anuye**, *v.* **Fr.** to trouble, weary, 1735.

**Are**, *adj.* former, 27. *See* **Er**, **Or**.

**Aren**, 1 and 3 *p. pl.* are, 619, 1321, 1349; 2 *p. pl.* 161; &c.

**Arke**, *n.* a chest or coffer, 222, 2018. **R. Br.**, **Jam**.

**Armes**, *n. pl.* arms, armour, 2605, 2613, 2925.

**Armes**, *n. pl.* arms (of the body), 984, 1294, 1297, 1300.

**Art**, (thou) art, 527.

- Arum** (*for* Arm), 1982, 2408.  
**Arwe**, *adj.* [*earg*] timid, 2115.  
 'Arwe or ferefulle. *Timidus*.  
 Prompt. Parv. Cf. Stille, q. v.  
**As** *for* Is (= *es*), 1174. See *Es*.  
**Assayleden**, *pa. t. pl.* Fr. assailed, 1862.  
**Aaken**, *n. pl.* ashes, 2841.  
**Asse**, *n.* ass, 2821, 2839.  
**Astirte**, *pa. t.* leaped, 893.  
**At**, *prep.* of, 1387. Still thus used in Scotland.  
**At-sitte**, *v.* contradict, oppose, 2200. It corresponds with the term With-sitten, 1683. *Atsat*, *pa. t. s.* 2567.  
**Auote, Auchte, Auhte, Anthe**, *n.* [*āht*] possessions, 531, 1223, 1410, 2215.  
**Auote, Auht, Auhte**, *pa. t.* (originally *pa. t.* of *Aw*, or *Owe*) [*āgan, āhte*] ought, 2173, 2787, 2800. See *Awe* *v.*  
**Aueden**. See *Haueden*.  
**Aungel**, *n.* angel, 1281.  
**Aunlaz**, *n.* anelace, 2554. 'A kind of knife or dagger, usually worn at the girdle.' Tyrw. note on Chauc. l. 357. So in Matth. Paris, 'Genus cultelli, quod vulgariter *Anelacius* dicitur.'  
**Aute, Awote** (*pa. t.* of the same verb), possessed, 207, 743.  
**Auter**, *n.* altar, 389, 1386, 2373.  
**Awe**, *v.* to owe, own, possess, 1292. Cf. ll. 1188, 1298.  
**Awe**, *n.* awe, 277; see the note.  
**Ax**, *n.* axe, 1776, 1894.  
**Ay**, *adv.* ever, aye, always, 159, 946, 1201, &c.  
**Ayen**. See *Ageyn*.  
**Ayper**, *pron.* [*āgher*] either, each, 2665. *Eper*, 1882. See *Other*.  
**Bao**, *n.* back, 47, 556, 1844, 1950, &c. Backes, *pl.* 2611.  
**Baldelike**, *adv.* boldly, 53.  
**Bale**, *n.* sorrow, misery, 327.  
**Bar**. See *Beren*.  
**Baret**, *n.* (O. Fr. *barat*, Icel. *barátta*), contest, hostile contention, 1932.  
**Barfot**, *adj.* barefoot, 862.  
**Barnage**, *n.* Fr. barons or noblemen collectively, baronage, 2947.  
**Barre**, *n.* Fr. bar of a door, 1794, 1811, 1827. Synonymous with *Dore-tre*, q. v.  
**Barun**, *n.* baron, 31, 138, 273.  
**Barw**. See *Berwen*.  
**Bape**, *adj.* both, 1336, 2543.  
**Bethe**, 360, 694, 1680. See *Bopen*.  
**Be**. See *Ben*.  
**Be-bedde**, *v.* to provide with a bed, 421.  
**Bedden**, *v.* to bed, put to bed, 1235. Bedded, Beddeth, *part. pa.* put to bed, 1128, 2771.  
**Bede**, *n.* prayer, 1385.  
**Bede**, *v.* to order, bid, summon, 2193; to offer, 1665, 2084; *Bede*, 2 *pa. t. s.* didst bid, 668, 2396. *Beden*, *pa. t. pl.* offered, 2774, 2780. *Bede*, I offer, 2172. *Bedes*, bids, 2392. Of common occurrence in both senses. See *Bidden*.  
**Bedels**, *n. pl.* bedells or beadles, 266.  
**Beite**, *Beyte*, *v.* to bait, to set dogs on, 1840, 2330, 2440. Icel. *beita*.  
**Belles**, *n. pl.* bells, 242, 390, 1106.  
**Bem**. See *Sunne-bem*.  
**Ben**, *v.* to be, 19, 905, 1006, &c. *Ben*, *pr. t. pl.* are, 1787, 2599. *Be*, *Ben*, *part. pa.* been, 1428, 2799. *Bes*, *Beth*, *fut.* shall be, 1261, 1744, 2007. *Bes*, *imp. pl.* be, 2246. *Lat be*, 1265, 1657, leave, relinquish; a common phrase in the Old Romances.  
**Benes**, *n. pl.* beans, 769.

- Beneysun**, *n.* Fr. blessing, benediction, 1723.
- Berd**, *n.* beard, 701.
- Bere**, *n.* bear, 573, 1838, 1840, 2448.
- Bere**, *Beren*, *v.* to bear, to carry, 581, 762, 805. *Ber*, *pr. t.* *pl.* ye bear, 2557; *but read* Y-boren, borne. *Bar*, *pa. t.* bore, 557, 815, 877. *Bere*, *pa. t. subj.* 974; *Bore*, 45. *Beres*, *pr. t. pl.* bear, 2323.
- Bermen**, *n. pl.* bearers, porters to a kitchen, 868, 876, 885, 887. Also in *Lazamon*, in ll. 3315, 8101.
- Bern**, *n.* child, 571.
- Berwen**, *v.* [*beorgan*] to defend, preserve, guard, 697, 1426, 2870; *Burwe*, 2870. *Barw*, *pa. t.* 2022, 2679.
- Bes**. See *Ben*.
- Bes** (*for Best*), 354.
- Best**, *Beste*, *n.* Fr. beast, 279, 574, 944, 2601.
- Bete**, *v.* [*bēatan*] to beat, fight, 1899, 2664, 2763. *Beten*, *pa. t. pl.* beat, struck, 1876.
- Betere**, *adv. comp.* better, 109, 696, 1758.
- Bepe**. See *Baþe*.
- Beve**, *v.* to buy, 53, 1654.
- Byen*, 1625.
- Beyes**, *pr. t.* for *Abeyes*, suffers or atones for, 2460.
- His deth thou *bist* to night,  
Mi fo. *Sir Tristr.* l. 2329.
- See *Jam*, in *v. Aby*; also *Nares*, *v. Bye*.
- Beyte**. See *Beite*.
- Bi**, *prep.* beside, 618, 882.
- Bicomen**, *pa. t. pl.* became, 2257; *pp.* become, 2264. *Bicomes*, *imp. pl.* become (ye), 2303.
- Bidden**, *v.* to ask, 529. *Ut bidde* (*for ut bede*), 2548, order out. *Biddes*, *pr. t.* asks, 1232. *Bidde*, I ask, 910; I ask (leave), require, 1733, 2530. *Biddi* (*for Bede* I), I offer, 484. See *Bede*.
- Bad**, *pa. t.* prayed, asked, 165, 934.
- Bidene**, *adv.* forthwith, 730, 2841.
- Bifalle**, *v.* to happen, befall, 2981. *Bifel*, *pa. t.* 824; cf. 339.
- Biforn**, *prep.* (I) before, 246, 1022, 1034, 1364, &c.; *Bifor*, 1357; *Biforen*, 1695; (2) in front of, 2406; *Bifor*, 1812.
- Big**, *adj.* big, 1774.
- Bigan**, *pa. t.* began, 230, 1357.
- Bigunnen**, *pl.* 1011, 1302. *Bigunnen*, *pr. t. pl.* begin, 1779.
- Beginning**, *n.* beginning, 13.
- Bihalue**, *v.* to divide into two parts, or companies, 1834.
- Bihel** (*for Beheld*), 1645. *Bihelden*, *pa. t. pl.* beheld, 2148.
- Bihetet** (*for Bihete* it), 2 *pa. t.* didst promise it, 677.
- Bihoten**, *pp.* promised, 564.
- Bihoue**, *n. dat.* behoof, advantage, 1764.
- Bikenneth**, *pr. t.* betokens, 1268.
- Bileue**, *imp.* tarry, remain, 1228. *Bilefte*, *pa. t.* remained, 2963. From A.S. *belāfan*, used for *belifan*, to be left behind.
- Bimene**, *v.* mean, 1259.
- Binden**, *v.* to bind, 1961. Used passively (after *demden*), 2820; *Bynde*, 41. *Bond*, *pa. t.* 537. *Bounden*, *pa. t. pl.* 2442. *Bunden*, 2506. *Bounden*, *pp.* 545. *Bunde*, 2377. *Bunden*, 1428.
- Binne**, *adv.* within, 584.
- Birde**. See *Birþe*.
- Birþe** (*for Birþ*), 3 *p. s. pres.* it behoves, 2101. Hence *Birde*, 3 *p. s. pa. t.* behoved, 2761. A.S. *gebyrian*, to fit, suit, be to one's taste. See *Burien* in *Stratmann*.
- Birþene**, *n.* burden, 807, 900, 902.
- Bise**, *n.* Fr. a north wind, 724.

Bise traverse, a north-west or north-east wind; Cotgrave.

Biseken, *v.* to beseech, 2994.

Bisoupe, on the south side of, 2828.

Bi-stod, *pa. t.* stood by, 507.

Bistride, *v.* bestride, 2060.

Biswike, *pp.* cheated, deceived, 1249.

Bitaken, *v.* [*betæcan*] to commit, deliver, give in charge, 1226. Bitechen, 203. Bi-teche, 1 *pr. sing.* 384; *imp. sing.* 395. Bitacte, *pa. t.* delivered, 206, 558.

Bitauhte, 2212, 2317, 2957. Bitawchte, 1224. Bitawte, 1408.

Tauhte (*for* bitauhte), 2214.

Bite, *v.* to taste, drink, 1731.

Horn toc hit hise yfere,

Ant seide, Quene, so dere,

No beer nullich *i-bite*.

*K. Horn*, 1129.

Bi*for* By the, 474. Cf. l. 2470.

Bituene, Bitwenen, Bitwene,

*prep.* between, 748, 2668, 2967.

Blac, *adj.* black, 48, 555, 1008.

*Pl.* Blake, 1909, 2181, 2249, 2521,

2694, 2847, &c.

Blake, pale (?), white (?), 311.

*See* N. E. D.; and cf. Bleike.

Blakne, *v.* to become black in

the face, grow angry, 2165.

Blame, *s.* blame, 84, 2460.

Blase, *n.* blaze, 1254.

Blawe, *v.* to blow, 587. Blou,

*imp.* blow, 585.

Blede, *v.* to bleed, 103, 2403.

Bleike, *pl. adj.* bleak, pale,

wan, 470. Icel. *bleikr*.

Blenkes, *n. pl.* blinks, winks of

the eye, in derision, tricks, 307.

Blinne, *v. n.* to cease, 2367,

2374. Blinne (*for* blunne), *pa. t.*

*pl.* ceased, 2670. Blinneth, *pr. t.*

ceases, 329. A.S. *blinnan*.

Blissed, *pp.* blessed, 2873.

Blipe, *adj.* happy, 632, 651;

glad, 777, 886.

Blod, *n.* blood, 216. Blode, *dat.* 432. *See* Renne.

Blome, *n.* bloom, flower, 63.

Bloute, *adj.* soft, 1910. Icel.

*blautr.* Sw. *blöt*, soft, pulpy.

Bode, *n.* command, 2200, 2567.

Bodi, *n.* body, 110, 363.

Bok, *n.* book, 201, 1173, 1418,

&c. Boke, *dat.* 487, 2217. *See*

Messe-bok.

Bole, *n.* [Icel. *bolé*] bull, 2438.

Boles, *pl.* 2330.

Bon, Bone. *See* O-bone, *s. v.*

On.

Bond, 537. *See* Binde.

Bondeman, *n.* husbandman, 32;

Bondemen, *pl.* husbandmen,

1016, 1308. R. Gl.

Bondes, *n. pl.* bonds, i. e. pains,

143; bonds, 332, 538.

Bone, *n.* [Icel. *bón*] boon, re-

quest, 1659.

Bor, *n.* boar, 1867, 1989. Bores,

*pl.* 2331.

Bord, *n.* (1) table, 99, 1722;

(2) a board, 2106. *See* the note

on l. 2076.

Bore, 45. *See* Bere.

Boren, *part. pa.* born, 1878.

Boru, Borw, *n.* borough, 773,

847, 1014, 1757, 2086, 2826.

Borwes, *pl.* 1293, 1444, 1630.

Burwes, 55, 2277. A.S. *burh*.

Borw, *n.* surety, 1667. A.S.

*borg*.

Bote, *adv.* but, only, 721. *See*

But.

Bote, *n.* remedy, help, 1200.

Bopen, *adj. pl.* both, 173, 697,

958; *dat.* of both, 471, 2223.

Bounden, Bunden. *See* Binden.

Bour, Bowr, *n.* [*būr*] chamber,

2072, 2077, &c. Boure, *dat.* 239.

Bouth, *pa. t.* bought, 875, 968.

Bouth, *pp.* bought, 883. *See*

Beye.

Bowes, *n. pl.* bows, 1748.

Boyes, *n. pl.* boys, men, 1899.

Brayd, *pa. t.* (1) started, 1282;



(2) drew out, 1825; a word particularly applied to the action of drawing a sword from the scabbard. A.S. *bregdan*.

*Bred*, *n.* bread, 633, 643, 1879.

*Brede*, *n.* roast meat, 98. A.S. *bræde*; quite distinct from *bræd*, bread. See note.

*Breken*, *v.* to break, 914. Broken, *pp.* broke, 1238.

*Brenne*. See On *brenne*, s. v. On.

*Brennen*, *Brenne*, *v.* to burn, 916, 1162; Rits. M. R., R. Gl., R. Br., Chauc. *Brenden*, *pa. t. pl.* burnt, 594, 2125. *Brend*, *pp.* burnt, 2832, 2841, &c. Icel. *brenna*.

*Brigge*, *n.* bridge, 875, 881.

*Brihte*. See *Brith*.

*Brim*, *adj.* furious, raging, 2233.

*Bringe*, *Bringen*, *v.* to bring, 72, 185, &c. See *Broucte*.

*Brini*, *Brinie*, *n.* [Moeso-Goth. *brunjo*] cuirass, 1775, 2358, 2551. *Brinies*, *pl.* 2610. The *Brinie* then worn was of mail, as appears from l. 2740, *Of his brinie ringes mo*.

*Brisen*, *v.* to bruise, beat, 1835. See *To-brised*, s. v. *To*.

*Brith*, *adj.* bright, 589, 605, &c. *Bryth*, 1252. *Brihte*, *pl.* 2610. *Brithter*, *comp.* brighter, 2141.

*Brittene*, *inf.* (as *pass.*) being destroyed, 2700. A.S. *ge-brytan*, wk. v., to break in pieces, destroy.

*Broð*, *adj.* broad, 1647.

*Broucte*, *pa. t.* brought, 767. *Broute*, 2868. *Brouht*, *pp.* 1979. *Brouth*, 336, 649. *Browth*, 2052. *Brouct of liue*, 513, 2412, dead. *Brouthen*, *pa. t. pl.* brought, 2791.

*Brouke*, 1 *p. pres. sing.* brook, enjoy, use, 311; v. 1743, 2545 (cf. Chauc. *Nom. Pr. Ta.* 480). A.S. *brūcan*.

*Broys*, *n.* broth, 924. Dis-

syllabic. V. Jam. and Brockett's North country words, v. Brewis; also Nares.

*Brune*, *adj. pl.* brown, 2181, 2249.

*Bulder-ston*, boulder-stone, 1790. In the north a *Boother* or *Boulder* is a hard flinty stone, rounded like a bowl. Brockett's Gl. So also in Grose, *Boulder*, a large round stone.

*Bunden*. See *Binden*.

*Burgeys*, *n.* burgess, 1328. *Burgeis*, 2466; *pl.* 2012. *Burgeys*, 2195. *Burgmen*, 2049.

*Burwe*. See *Berwen*.

*Burwes*. See *Boru*.

*But*, *Bute*, *conj.* except, unless, 85, 690, 1149, 1159, 2022, 2031, 2727. *But* on that, 505, 962, except in one respect, viz. that. *Buten*, *prep.* except, 149. *But-yf*, 2972, unless. *But-yif*, 2546.

*But*, *n.* bout, throw, 1040. Cf. *Put*.

*But*, *part. pa.* struck, thrust, pushed, 1916. *Buttidge*, *n.* thrusting, striking against with force, 2322. From the Fr. *bouter*, to impel, or drive forward.

*Butere*, *n.* butter, 643.

*Butte*, *n.* a flounder or plaice, 759. *Du. bot.* See *Halliwell*.

*Byen*. See *Beye*.

*Bynde*. See *Binden*.

*Bynderes*, *n. pl.* binders, robbers who bind, 2050.

*Calis*, *n.* chalice, 187, 2711.

*Callen*, *v.* to call, 747, 2899. *Calle*, *ger.* to be called, 38, 230.

*Cam*. See *Komen*.

*Canst*, *pr. t.* knowest, 846. *Cone*, 622, mayst be able (*subj.*); A.S. *cunne*. *Kunne*, *pl. can*, 435. See *Couthe*.

*Care*, *n.* anxiety, 2062. See *Kare*.

**Carl**, *n.* churl, slave, villain, 1789. *Icel. karl.* See **Cherl**.

**Carte-lode**, *n.* cart-load, 895.

**Castel**, *n.* castle, 412; Castles, *pl.* 1301, 1442; Castels, 252.

**Casten**. See **Kesten**.

**Catel**, *n.* Fr. chattels, goods, 225, 275, 2023, 2515, 2906, 2939.

**Cauenard**, *n.* [Fr. *cagnard*, *caignard*] an error for **Caynard**, a term of reproach, originally derived from the Lat. *canis*, 2389.

This crokede *caynard* sore he is adred.

Rits. A. S. p. 36.

Sire *olde kaynard*, is this thin aray?  
Chauc. C. T. 5817.

**Cayser**, **Caysere**, *n.* Lat. emperor, 977, 1317, 1725. **Kaysere**, 353.

**Cerges**, *n. pl.* Fr. wax tapers, 594. **Serges**, 2125.

**Chaffare**, *n.* merchandise, 1657.

**Cham** (*for Cam*), came, 1873.

**Chanbioun**, *n.* Fr. champion, 1007. **Chaunpiouns**, *pl.* 1015, 1031, 1055.

**Chanounes**, *n. pl.* canons, 360.

**Chapmen**, *n. pl.* merchants, 51, 1639.

**Charbúcle**, *n.* Fr. a carbuncle, 2145.

**Chartre**, *n.* charter, 676.

**Chaste**, *adj.* chaste, 288.

**Cherl**, *n.* churl, slave, villain, 682, 684, 2533; **Cherles**, *gen.* churl's, 1092; **Cherles**, *pl.* servants, husbandmen, 262, 620. A.S. *ceorl*. See **Carl**.

**Cheese**, *n.* cheese, 643.

**Chesen**, *v.* to choose, select, 2147.

**Ohincho**, *adj.* Fr. niggardly, penurious, 1763, 2941.

Bothe he was scars, and *chinche*.  
*The Sevyng Sages*, 1244.

But in both places it would be

better to read *chiche*, which is an alternative form.

**Chiste**, *n.* Lat. chest, 222. **Kiste**, 2018.

**Citte**, *pa. t.* cut, 942.

**Claddes**, 2 *p. pa. t.* claddest, 2907. **Cladde**, *pa. t.* 1354. **Clad**, *pp.* 2889.

**Clapte**, *pa. t.* struck, 1814, 1821.

**Claré**, *n.* Fr. spiced wine, 1728.

**Clero**, *n.* clerk, 77, 1177.

**Clerkes**, *pl.* 33.

**Cleue**, *n.* dwelling, 557, 596. A.S. *cleofa*.

**Cleuen**, *v.* to cleave, cut, 917.

**Clef**, *pa. t.* cleft, 2643, 2730.

**Closede**, *pa. t.* enclosed, 1310.

**Cloth**, *n.* a cloth, cloak, 855.

**Clothe**, *v.* to clothe, 1138.

**Clothe**, *pa. t.* 420. In l. 1233, *clopen* is a *nom. pl.* = clothes; cf. l. 418, 577.

**Clubbe**, *n.* club, 1927, 2289.

**Clutes**, *n. pl.* clouts, shreds of cloth, 547.

**Clyueden**, *pa. t. pl.* cleaved, fastened, 1300.

**Coft**. See **Keft**.

**Cook**, *n.* Lat. cook, 967. **Kok**, 873, 880, 891, 903, 921, 2898. **Cokes**, **Kokes**, *gen.* cook's, 1123, 1146.

**Cold**, *n.* cold, chill, 449, 856.

**Comen**, **Comes**, **Cometh**. See **Komen**.

**Cone**. See **Canst**.

**Conestable**, *n.* Fr. constable, 2286. **Conestables**, *pl.* 2366.

**Conseyl**, *n.* Fr. counsel, 2862.

**Copes**. See **Kope**.

**Corpora**, *n.* Fr. Lat. the fine linen wherein the sacrament is put, 188; **Cotgr.** V. Du Cange, and **Jam.** in v. *Corperale*.

**Corune**, *n.* Lat. crown, 1319, 2944.

**Coruning**, *n.* Lat. coronation, 2948.

**Cote**, *n.* cot, cottage, 737, 1141.

**Couel** (= *cuvel*), *n.* coat, garment, 768, 858, 1144. **Cuuel**, 2904. **Kouel**, 964. The word is connected with A.S. *cufle*, *cugele*, a cowl.

**Couere**, *v.* Fr. to recover, 2040.

**Coupe**, *v.* buy, buy dearly, get in exchange, 1800. Icel. *kaupa*.

**Couth**. See **Quath**.

**Coupe**, *pa. t.* of **Conne**, *v. aux.* knew, was able, could, 93, 112, 194, 750, 772. **Koupen**, *pl.* 369. See **Canst**.

**Crake**, **Crakede**. See **Kraken**.

**Crauede**, *pa. t.* craved, asked, 633.

**Crepen**, *v.* to creep, 68.

**Ori**, *s.* cry, call, 270.

**Crice** (= *Crike*), *n.* the anal cleft, *rima podicis*, 2450. Cf. Icel. *kriki*, a crack. In Barb. x. 602, *crykes* is used for cracks. See **Krike**.

**Crois**, *n.* Fr. cross, 1263, 1268, 1358, 2139, &c.

**Croud** (*for* **Crod**), crowded, oppressed, encumbered, 2338. Cf. A.S. *crūdan*, pp. *gecroden*.

**Croun**, **Croune**, *n.* Fr. crown, head, 568, 902, 2657. **Crune**, 1814, 2734.

**Cruhsse**. See **To-cruhsse**.

**Crus**, angry, 1966. It is the Sw. *krus*, excitable, Sc. *crouse*. See **Crouse** in N. E. D.

**Cunn[e]riche**, *n.* kingdom, 2318. **Kinneriche**, 976. **Kuneriche**, 2400. **Kunerike**, 2804.

**Cuppe**, *s.* cup, 14.

**Curt**, *n.* Fr. court, 1685.

**Curteys**, *adj.* Fr. courteous, 2916.

**Curteysye**, *n.* courteous behaviour, 194; cf. 2875.

**Cunel**. See **Couel**.

**Dam**, *n.* 2468, here used in a reproachful sense, but apparently

the same as the Fr. *Dam*, *Dan*, i.e. *Dominus*, lord.

**Dame**, *n.* Fr. dame, wife, 558, 1717.

**Dathelt**, *interj.* 296, 300, 926, 1125, 1887, 1914, 2047, 2447, 2511. **Datheyt**, 1799, 1995, 2604, 2757. An interjection or imprecation; in the phrases *dapeit kwo*, a curse upon whosoever, *dathelt pat*, *dapeit pat on* (with the same sense), *dathelt on*, a curse upon the one. In the old *Fabliaux* *dehait* is used often in a like sense:

Fils à putain, fet-il, lechiere,  
Vo jouglerie m'est trop chiere,  
*Dehait* qui vous i aporta,  
Par mon chief il le comparra.  
*De S. Pierre et du jougleor*, 381.

The term was very early engrafted on the Saxon phraseology. Thus in the *Disputation of Ane Hule* and a *Nytingale*, l. 99:

*Dahet* habbe that ilke best,  
That fuleth his owe nest!

It occurs also frequently in the Old English Romances. See **Sir Tristr.** l. 1875; **Horn Childe**, ap. **Rits.** V. 3. p. 290; **Amis** and **Amil.** 1569; **Sevyn Sages**, 2395; **R. Brunne**, where it is printed by **Hearne** *Dayet*. See **Dahet** in N. E. D.

**Dawes**, *n. pl.* [*dagas*] days, 27, 2344, 2950. **Dayes**, *adv.* by day, 2353.

**Day-belle**, *n.* morning bell, 1132.

**Ded**, **Dede**, *n.* death, 149, 1687, &c. **Dede**, *gen.* 332; *dat.* 167. **Swed.** and **Dan.** *död*.

**Ded**, *pp.* dead, 232, 464, 2007.

**Dede**, *n.* deed, action, 180, 1356.

**Dede**, **Deden**, **Dedes**. See **Do Deide**. See **Deye**.

**Del**, *n.* deal, part, 218, 818,

1070, &c. Eueri del, every bit, 208, 1070, 1330.

**Deled** (*for* Deyled), *pp.* distributed, 1736. *See* To-deyle, *s. v.* To-.

**Demen**, *v.* to judge, pass judgement on, 2467. Deme, Demen, *pr. t. pl.* judge, 2476, 2812. Demden, *pa. t. pl.* judged, 2820, 2833. Demd, *pp.* judged, 2488, 2765, 2838.

**Deplike**, *adj.* deeply, 1417. Synonymous with *Grundlike*, *q. v.* **Dere**, *n.* dearth, scarcity, 824, 841. *R. Gl.* p. 416.

**Dere**, *adv.* dearly, 1637, 1638.

**Dere**, *v.* [*derian*], to harm, injure, 490, 574, 806, 2310. Dereth, *pr. t.* injures, 648.

**Dere**, *adj.* dear, 2170, 2882, &c.

**Desherrite**, *v.* disinherit, 2547.

**Deth**, *n.* death, 116. *See* Ded.

**Deuel**, *n.* devil, 446, 496, 1188. **Deueles**, *gen.* devil's, 1409.

**Deus**. This is undoubtedly the vocative case of the Lat. *Deus*, used as an interjection, 1312, 1650, 1930, 2096, 2114. 'Its use was the same in French as in English. Thus in King Horn:

Enuers Deu en sun quer a fait  
grant clamur,

Ohi, *Deus!* fait il, ki es nerrai  
creatur,

Par ki deuise, &c.

*Harl. MS.* 527, f. 66 b. c. 2.'

It is distinct from mod. E. *deuce*; *see* N. E. D.

**Deye**, *v.* to die, 168, 840. Deide, *pa. t.* died, 402. Deyede, 231.

**Dide**, Diden, Dides. *See* Do.

**Dike**, *n. dat.* ditch, 2435.

**Dikes**, *pl.* 1923.

**Dine**, *n.* din, noise, 1860, 1868.

**Dinge**, *v.* to strike, scourge, beat, 215, 2329. Dong, *pa. t.* struck, 1147. Dungen, *pp.* beaten, or scourged, 227.

**Dint**, *n.* [*dyn*] blow, stroke, 1807, 1817, 1969, &c. Dintes, *pl.* 1437.

**Dishes**, *n. pl.* dishes, 919.

**Do**, **Don**, *v.* The various uses of this verb in an auxiliary, active, and passive sense are given in the N. E. D. It signifies: to do, *facere*, 117, 528, 1191; to cause, *efficere*, 611; *do casten*, cause to be cast, 519; *do hem fle*, make them flee, 2600; to put or place (used with *in* or *on*), 535, 577, &c. **Dones** *on* = *don es on* = do them on, put them on (*see* Es), 970. **Dos**, 2 *p. pr. t.* dost, 2390. **Dos**, *pr. t.* does, 1994, 2434, 2698. **Doth**, *pr. t. s.* (*with men*), 1840. **Don**, *pr. t. pl.* do, 1838. **Doth**, *imp.* do, cause (*ye*), 2037. **Dos**, *imp. pl.* do ye, 2592. **Dede**, **Dide**, *pa. t.* caused, 658, 970, &c. **Dede**, **Dide**, *pa. t.* put, placed, 659, 709, 859. **Dedes**, **Dides**, 2 *p. pa. t.* didst, 2393, 2903. **Deden**, **Diden**, *pa. t. pl.* caused, 242; did, performed, 953, 1176, 2306. **Don**, *pp.* caused, 1169. **Don**, *pp.* done, 667. Of liue haue do, 1805, have slain.

**Dogges**, *n. pl.* dogs, 1839, 1922.

**Dom**, *n.* doom, judgement, 2473, 2487, 2813, &c.

**Domesday**, *n.* day of judgement, 748.

**Dore**, *n.* door, 1788, 1792.

**Dore-tre**, *n.* bar of the door, 1806, 1968. *See* Tre.

**Douhter**, *n.* daughter, 120, 2712.

**Douthe[r]**, 1079. **Douhter**, 2867,

2914. **Douhtres**, *pl.* 350, 2982.

**Douhtres**, 2979. **Doutres**, 717.

**Doumbe**, *adj. pl.* dumb, 543.

**Doun**. *See* Adoun.

**Doutede**, *pa. t.* Fr. feared, 708.

**Douthe**, *n.* Fr. fear, 1331, 1377.

**Douthe** (*for* Douhte), *pa. t.* of

**Dow**, *v. imp.* [*dēah*, it avails, *pt. t. dohte*] was of worth, was sufficient, availed, 703, 833, 1184.

**Drad** (*for* Adrad), *pp.* afraid, 1669.

**Drake**, *n.* drake, 1241.

**Drawe**, *n.* drawen. *See* Drou.

**Drawing**, *n.* pulling, 235.

**Dred**, *imp.* dread, fear (thou). 661, 2168. **Dredde**, *n.* Dredde, *pa.* *t.* *pl.* dreaded, feared, 2289, 2568. *See* Adrad.

**Drede**, *n.* dread, 90, 181, 1169; doubt, anxiety, care, 828, 1664.

**Drem**, *n.* dream, 1284, 1304. **Dremes**, *pl.* 1315.

**Dremede**, *pa. t.* (used with *me*), dreamed, 1284, 1304.

**Drenchen**, *Drinchen*, *v.* to drown, 553, 583, 1416, 1424, &c. **Dreinchen**, 561. **Drenched**, *pp.* drowned, 520, 669, 1368, 1379.

**Dreng**, *n.* vassal, 31, 1327, 2184, 2466. **Drenges**, *pl.* 2194, 2260. *See* note on l. 31.

**Drepen**, *v.* to kill, slay, 1783, 1865, &c. **Drepe**, would slay, 506. **Drop**, *pa. t.* killed, slew, 2229. **A. S. drepan**, to strike. *Cf.* Sw. *dräpa*.

**Dreping**, *n.* slaughter, 2684. *Cf.* A. S. *drepe*.

**Drinchen**. *See* Drenchen.

**Drinken**, *v.* to drink, 15, 459. 800.

**Drinkes**, *n. pl.* drinks, liquors. 1738.

**Drit**, *n.* [*Icel. drit*] dirt; hence **Drit-cherl**, 682. A term expressing the highest contempt.

**Driuende**. *See* Drof.

**Drof**, *pa. t.* drove, 725; hastened, 1793, 1872. **Driuende**, *part. pr.* driving, riding quickly, 2702.

**Drop**. *See* Drepen.

**Drou**, *pa. t.* drew, 705, 719, &c. **Drow**, 942; **Drowen**, *pa. t. pl.* 1837. **Drawe**, *Drawen*, *part. pa.* drawn, 1925, 2225, 2477, 2603, &c. *See* To-drawe, *Vt.* drow, *Wit-drow*.

**Drurye**, *n.* Fr. courtship, galantry; *Loue-d.*, love-courtship, 195.

**Dubbe**, *v.* to dub, create a knight, 2042. **Dubbede**, *pa. t.* dubbed, 2314. **Dubban** to ridere, *Chron. Sax. An.* 1085 [1086]. *See* note on l. 2314.

**Duelle**, *v.* to dwell, give attention, 4. **Dwellen**, *ger.* to dwell, remain, 1185. **Dwelle**, *pr. t. subj.* that thou delay, delay, 1351. **Dwellen**, *pr. t. pl.* dwell, tarry, 1058. **Dwelleden**, *pa. t. pl.* dwelt, tarried, 1189.

**Dwelling**, *n.* delay, 1352.

**Dun**, *Dune*. *See* Adoun.

**Dungen**. *See* Dinge.

**Dunten**, *pa. t. pl.* struck, beat, 2448.

**Dursten**, *pa. t. pl.* durst, 1866.

**Dust**, *n.* dust, 2832.

**Eie**, *n.* [*æge*] eye, 2545. **Heie**, 1152. **Eyne**, *pl.* eyes, 680, 1273. 1364; **Eyen**, 1340; **Eyn**, 2171.

**Eir**, *n.* Fr. heir, 410, 2539. **Eyr**, 110, 289, &c.

**Ek**, *conj.* [*æc*] eke, also, 1025, 1038, 1066, &c. **Ok** [*Icel. auk*, *Du. ook*], 187, 200, 879, 1081, &c. **Hec**, 2348.

**Eld**, *adj.* old, 546. **Helde**, 2472. **Heldeste**, *sup.* eldest, 1396.

**Elde**, *n.* age, 2713. **Helde**, 128, 174, 387, 1435. In *Sc. Eild*. It was subsequently restricted to the sense of *old age*, as in *Chauc.*

**Eles**, *n. pl.* eels, 897, 918. And *see* l. 755.

**Elles**, *adv.* else, 1192, 2590.

**Em**, [*æam*] uncle, 1326. *Sir Tr.* p. 53. *See* Nares. *Prov. Eng. Eam.*

**Ende**, *n.* a duck, 1241. *See* Hende.

**Endinge**, *n.* end, death, 3001.

**Er**, *adv.* before, 684. *Her*, 541. *See* Arc, Or.

**Er**, *conj.* before, 15, 317, 1261, 2680. **Her**, 229.

**Erchebischop**, *n.* archbishop, 1178.

**Eritage**, *n.* heritage, 2836.

**Erl**, *n.* earl, 189, 206, 273, &c.

**Erles**, *gen.* 2898, earl's. **Herles**, 883. **Erlidom**, earldom, 2909.

**Ern**, *n.* [*earn*] eagle, 572.

**Erpe**, *n.* earth, 740; ground, 2657.

**Erpe** (*for Erde*), *v.* to dwell, 739. Cf. A.S. *earðian*.

**Es**, a plural pronoun signifying *them*, as in *don es on* = put them on, 970. Cf. ll. 784, 1174. See note to l. 1174; and *Gen. and Exod.* ed. Morris, pref. p. xix.

**Et**, a singular pronoun, equivalent to *it*, used in *hauenet* = hauen et, have it, 2005; *hauedet* = hauled et, had it, 714; *bihetet* = bihete et, didst promise it, 677; *younet* = yeuen et, given it, 1643.

**Ete**, **Eten**, *v.* to eat, 791, 800, 911, &c. **Hete**, **Heten**, 146, 317, 457, 641. **Et**, *imp.* eat (thou), 925. **Et**, **Het**, *pa. t.* ate, 653, 656, 1879. **Etes**, *2 p. fut.* thou shalt eat, 907. **Eteth**, *fut.* shall eat, 672. **Eten**, *pp.* eaten, 657.

**Epen**. See **Heþen**.

**Eper**. See **Ayper**.

**Euere**, **Eure**, *adv.* [*æfre*] ever, 207, 424, 704, &c. **Heuere**, 17, 327, 830.

**Euere-ich**, *adj.* every, 137. **Euere il** (*for Euere-ilk*), 218, 1334, 1644. **Euere ilc**, 1330. **Eueri**, 1070, 1176, 1383. **Eueril**, 1764, 2318, &c. **Euerilk**, 2258, 2432. **Euerilk-on**, every one, 1062, 1996, 2197. See **Il**.

**Euere-mar**, *adv.* evermore, 1971.

**Eyen**, **Eyn**, **Eyne**. See **Eic**.

**Eyr**. See **Eir**.

**Fader**, *n.* father, 1224, 1403, 1416.

**Faderles**, *adj.* fatherless, 75.

**Fadmede**, *pa. t.* fathomed, embraced, 1295. A.S. *fapmian*, *utraque manu extensa complecti*.

**Falle**, *v.* to fall, 39, &c. **Falles**, *imp. pl.* fall ye, 2302. **Fel**, *pa. t.* happened, 1009; fell, 1815; appertained, 2359. **Fellen**, *pa. t. pl.* fell, 1303. **Felle**, *pa. t. subj.* should fall, 1673.

**Fals**, *adj.* false, 2511.

**Falwes**, *n. pl.* fallows, fields, 2509. **Chauc.** C. T. 6238.

**Fare**, *n.* journey, 1337, 2621.

**Faren**, *v.* to go, to fare, 120, 264. **Fare**, *ger.* 1392, &c. **Fare**, *2 p. pr. t.* farest, behavest, 2705. **Fares**, *pr. t.* goes, rushes, 2690. **For**, *pa. t.* (went), 2382, 2943. **Foren**, *pa. t. pl.* went, 2380, 2618. A.S. *faran*.

**Faste**, *adv.* attentively, earnestly, 2148; fast, 83, 144.

**Fastinde**, *part. pr.* fasting, 865.

**Fauth**. See **Fyht**.

**Fawen**, *adj.* faint, glad, 2160. **Fawe**, **Chauc.** C. T. 5802. O.S. *fagan*.

**Fe**, *n.* possessions or money, 44, 386, 563, 1225, 2213, &c.

**Feble**, *adj.* Fr. feeble, poor, scanty, 323, 2457.

**Feblelike**, *adv.* scantily, 418.

**Feden**, *v.* to feed, 906; **Fede**, 100. **Feddes**, *2 p. pa. t.* feddest, 2907.

**Fel**. See **Falle**.

**Felawes**, *n. pl.* fellows, companions, 1338.

**Feld**, *n.* field, 2634, 2685, 2911.

**Felde**, *pa. t.* felled, 1859, 2694. **Feld**, *pp.* felled, 1824.

**Felden**, *pa. t. pl.* fell, 2698. **Wycliffe** has *felden*, fell, in Mark iii. 11. See note.

**Fele**, *adj.* many, often, 778, 1277, 1737, &c. A.S. *fela*.

**Fele**, *adv.* very, 2442.

**Felede**, *pa. t.* followed, pur-

- sued, 67. For *folwede*, see note.  
*See* Folwes.
- Fen**, *n.* mud, 872, 2102.
- Fend**, *n.* fiend, 506, 1411, 2229.
- Fer**, *adv.* far, 359, 1863, 2275, &c.
- Ferd**, *n.* army, 2384, 2548, 2602, &c. **Ferde**, 2535. **Ferdes**, *pl.* 2683. A.S. *fyrð*.
- Ferde**, *pa. t.* went, 447, 1678, &c.; behaved, 2411. **Ferden**, *pl.* went, came, 151. A.S. *fēran*, to travel.
- Fere**, *n.* companion, wife, 1214. A.S. *gēfara*.
- Ferlike**, *n.* wonder, 1258.
- Ferlik**, 1849. Cf. A.S. *fērlīc*, sudden.
- Ferne**, *adv.* far, 1864; *dat. adj.* foreign, distant, 2031. Cf. Chauc. *Prolog.* l. 14.
- Ferpe**, *adj.* fourth, 1810.
- Ferping**, *n.* farthing, 878.
- Ferpinges**, *gen.* farthing's, 820.
- Feste**, *n.* Fr. feast, 2344, &c.
- Feste**, *ger.* Fr. to feast, 2938.
- Festen**, *v.* to fasten (used passively), 82, 1785. **Fest**, *pp.* fastened, 144.
- Fet**. *See* Fot.
- Fete**, *v.* to fetch, bring, 642, 912, 937, &c. Used passively, 316, 1715, 2037. **Fetes**, *pr. t. s.* fetch, 2341.
- Fetere**, *v.* to fetter, chain, 2758. Used passively.
- Feteres**, *n. pl.* fetters, 82, 2759.
- Fey**, *n.* Fr. faith, 255, 1666.
- Feyth**, 2853.
- Fif**, five, 213.
- Fifte**, fifth, 1816.
- Fiht**, *n.* fight, 2668, 2716.
- Fikel**, *adj.* fickle, inconstant, 1210, 2799.
- File**, *n.* vile, worthless person, 2499. So in *R. Br.* p. 237.
- Fille**, *n.* fill, 954.
- Finden**, *v.* to find, 1083.
- Finde**, 220. **Fynde**, 42. **Funde**, *pa. t.* 49. **Funden**, *pa. t. pl.* found, 56, 602. **Funde**, *pp.* found, 2376. **Funden**, 1427.
- Fir**, *n.* fire, 585, 1162, &c.
- Fyr**, 915. **Fir-sticke**, faggot, 966.
- Firrene**, *adj.* made of fir, 2078.
- Firryn**, Doug. *Virg.* ii. 5. 17.
- Flaunes**, *n. pl.* Fr. custards or pancakes, 644. *See* Way's note in *Prompt. Parv.*
- Flawen**, *pp.* flayed, 2476. *See* Flo.
- Fle**, *v.* flee, 1195. **Fledde**, *pa. t.* fled, 1431. **Fledden**, *pa. t. pl.* 2416.
- Flemen**, *v.* to drive away, banish, 1160. R. Gl., R. Br., Chauc. A.S. *flyman*.
- Flete**, *pres. s. subj.* float, swim, 522. A.S. *flēotan*.
- Fleye**, *v.* to fly, 1791, 1813, 1827, 2751. **Fley**, *pa. t.* flew, 1305.
- Fleys**, *n.* flesh, 216. **Flesh**, 781.
- Flintes**, *pl.* flints, 1863.
- Flo**, *v.* to flay, 612, 2495.
- Flow**, *pa. t.* flayed, 2502. **Flowe**, *pa. t. pl.* 2433. Icel. *flā*.
- Flod**, *n.* flood, 522, 669. **Flode**, *dat.* sea, 1222.
- Flok**, *n.* flock, troop, 24. *See* Trome.
- Flote**, *n.* company, troop, 738. O.F. *flote*; *see* N.E.D.
- Flour**, *n.* Fr. flower, 1719, 2917.
- Fnaste**, *v.* to breathe, 548. Cf. A.S. *fnāst*, a blast, breath.
- Fo**, *n.* foe, 1363, 2849. **Foos**, *pl.* 67.
- Fol**, *n.* Fr. fool, 298. **Foles**, *pl.* 2100.
- Folo**, **Folk**, *n.* men, collectively, people, 89, 438, &c.
- Folwes**, *imp.* follow ye, 1885, 2601. *See* Felede.
- Fonge**, *v.* to take, receive, 763; 2 *p. pres. subj.* 856. Chauc.
- For**, *prep.* *For to* is prefixed to the inf. of verbs in the same

manner as the Fr. *pour*, or Sp. *por*. It is so used in all the old writers, and in the vulgar translation of the Scriptures, and is still preserved in the North of England. Cf. 17, 38, 102, &c. *For* = on account of, 1670.

*For*, Foren. See Faren.

*Forbere*, *v.* spare, abstain from, 352. *Forbar*, *pa. t.* spared, abstained from, 764, 2623.

*Forfaren*, *v.* to perish, 1380.

*Forgat*, *pa. t.* forgot, 2636, &c. *Foryat*, 249.

*For-henge*, *v.* to kill by hanging, 2724. Cf. Du. *verhangen zich*, to hang one's self.

*Forlorn*, *pp.* utterly lost, 770, 1424. *Forloren*, 580.

*Forpi*, *adv.* on this account, therefore, because, on that account, 1194, 1431, 2043, 2500; *error for* Forhwl, wherefore, 2578.

*Forthwar[d]*, *adv.* forthward; i. e. as we go on, 731, 1640.

*For to*. See *For*.

*Forw*, *n.* furrow, 1094.

*Forward*, *n.* promise, word, condition, covenant, 486. *Forwarde*, 554.

*Foryat*. See *Forgat*.

*Fostred*, *pp.* nourished, 1434, 2239.

*Fot*, *n.* foot. Euerilk fot, 2432, every foot or man. *Fote*, *dat.* 101, 1199. *Fet*, *pl.* 616, 1022, 1303, 2479. *Fote*, feet (in measuring), 1054.

*Fouhten*. See *Fyht*.

*Fourtenith*, *n.* fortnight, 2284.

*Fre*, *adj.* free, 262.

*Freedom*, *n.* freedom, 631.

*Fre[man]*, *n.* a free man, 628.

*Fremde*, *adj. pl.* (used as a *n.*) strangers, 2277. A.S. *fremde*.

Ther ne moste libbe

The fremde ne the sibbe.

K. Horn, 64.

*Freme*, *v.* [*fremian*] to perform, 441.

*Frend*, *n. pl.* friends, 326, 2068, 2585.

*Frest*, *n.* delay, 1337. See note.

*Fri*, *adj.* a Southern form of *fre*, free, liberal, 1072; but really an error for *sley*.

*Frie*, *ger.* to blame, 1998. *Icel. frýja*, to blame. Cf. *Ormulum*, 16513.

*Fro*, *prep.* from, 265, 692, &c.

*Frusshe*. See *To-frusshe*.

*Ful*, *adv.* very, much, completely, 6, 82, 141, &c. *Ful wo*, 2589, very sorrowful.

*Ful*, *adj.* foul, 555, 626, 965, &c. That fule (*or* foule), 506, 1158. *Fule*, *voc.* 2401.

*Fulde*, *pp. pl.* filled, complete, 355.

*Ful[like]*, *adv.* foully, shamefully, 2749.

*Funde*, *Funden*. See *Finden*.

*Fyht*, *ger.* to fight, 2361. *Fauth*, *pa. t.* fought, 1990. *Fouhten*, *pa. t. pl.* fought, 2661.

*Fyn*, *n.* Fr. ending, 22.

*Ga*, *v.* to go. See *Ouer-ga*.

*Gad*, *n.* [*icel. gaddr*] goad, 279. *Gaddes*, *pl.* 1016.

*Gadeling*, *n.* an idle vagabond, low fellow, 1121. *Chauc. Rom. Rose*, 938. The word originally meant a comrade. See *Beowulf*, l. 2618.

*Gadred*, *pp.* gathered, 2577.

*Gaf*. See *Yenc*.

*Galle*, *n.* (bitter) gall, 40.

*Galwe-tre*, *n.* the gallows, 43, 335, 695. *Galues*, 689; cf. 2508.

*Gamen*, *n.* game, sport, 980, 1716, 2135, 2250, 2577; joy, 2935, 2963.

*Gan*, *pa. t.* did, 2443. Cf. *bi* for *bigan*, 1358.

*Gangen*, *v.* to go, walk, 370, 845, &c. *Gange*, 796, 2059. *Gon-*



gen, 855. Gonge, 1185, 1739, &c. Gonge, 2 *p. pr. t. subj.* mayst go, 690, 843. Gangande, *part. pr.* on foot, walking, 2283.

Garte, *pa. t.* made, 189, 1857, &c. Gart, 1001, 1082. Icel. *gera*, Swed. *göra*.

Gat, Gaten. See Geten.

Gate, *n.* (1) way, road, 846, 889, 2509; (2) manner, fashion (*in comp.* pus-gate), 785, 2419, 2586. Icel. *gata*.

[Geet, *n. pl.* goats; see 1. 701.]

Genge, *n.* family, company, 786, 1735; gang, retinue, 2353, 2362, 2383.

Gent, *adj.* Fr. neat, fair, 2139.

Gere. See Messe-gere.

Gest, *n.* Fr. tale, adventure, 2984. Gestes, *pl.* 2328.

Gete, *v.* to guard, watch, keep, 2762, 2960. Icel. *gata*, to guard. Cf. *Ormulum*, 2079. [Suggested by Garnett; see Stratmann, s. v. *gätan*.]

Geten, *v.* to get, take, 792. Gete, 1393. Gat, *pa. t.* begot, got, 495, 730. Gaten, Geten, *pa. t. pl.* begot, 2893, 2934, 2978. Getes, 2 *p. fut. t.* shalt get, 908.

Ghod (for God), good, 255.

Girde, *pa. t.* girt, 2922.

Girt, *pp.* girt, 2385.

Gisarm, *n.* Fr. a bill or halberd, 2553. See Gl. Rits. M. R., Spelm. in v., Jam. Dict., and Merrick's Gl. in v. *Gesa*, *Gesum*. ['Distinguished from other weapons of the axe kind by a spike rising from the back. There were two kinds, viz. the *glaive-gisarme*, with a sabre-blade and spike; and the *bill-gisarme*, in shape of a hedging-bill with a spike.' Godwin's *Archæol. Handbook*, p. 254.]

Giue. See Yeue.

Giue, *n.* gift, 2880. Gyue, 357. Cf. *Yeft*, 2336.

Giueled, heaped up, 814. See the note.

Gladlike, *adv.* gladly, 805, 906, 1760.

Glede, *n.* a burning coal, 91, 870. See note on 1. 91.

Gleue, Gleyue, Fr. a spear, lance, 1770, 1844, 1981. Gleines, Gleyues, *pl.* 267, 1748, 1864. Dr. Merrick explains it, 'A weapon composed of a long cutting blade at the end of a staff'; but this is a late use; see N. E. D. The O.F. *glaive* also meant 'a sword,' and is from L. *gladius*; as shown in my Notes on Eng. Etymology, p. 119.

Glem, *n.* gleam, ray, 2122. See Stem.

Gleu, *n.* game, amusement, 2332. A.S. *glīw*, music, minstrelsy, mirth, pleasure; E. *glee*.

Glewmen (for Gleumen), *n. pl.* gleemen, 2329. Glewemen, *Sir Tr.* l. 1851.

Glides, *pr. s.* flows, 1851.

Glutuns, *n. pl.* Fr. gluttons, wicked men, 2104.

Guede, *adj.* niggardly, frugal, 97. Nearly equivalent to *chiche*, l. 1763. Cf. *Guede* in N. E. D.; and A.S. *gnēap*, frugal.

Go, *v.* walk, 125. See Gon.

God, *n.* property, wealth, goods, 797, 2034; *pl.* Gode, 1221.

God, Gode, *adj.* good, excellent, 1, 7, 22, 34, &c.

Goddot, Goddoth, *interj.* God wot! 606, 642, 796, 909, 1656, 2543; cf. 2527. The word before us appears to have been limited to the North. Other instances are in the *Cursor Mundi*, 773, &c. and in MS. Cott. Galba E. ix. fol. 61. It also occurs in *Dame Siris*, l. 439.

Gol (for Gold), gold, 357; Gold, 44, 47, 73.

Gome, *n.* man, 7. A.S. *guma*.

Gon, *v.* to go, walk, 113, 1045.  
Goth, *imp. pl.* go ye, 1780. Gon,  
*pp.* gone, 2692.

Gongo, Gongen. See Gange.

Gore, 2496. See Grim.

Gos, *n.* goose, 1240. Gees, *pl.*  
702.

Gouen. See Yeue.

Goulen, 2 *p. pr. t. pl.* howl,  
cry, 454. Gouleden, *pa. t. pl.*  
howled, cried, 164. Cf. *Hule* and  
*Nihtingale*, l. 970.

Gram, *adj.* angry, 2469.

Graten, *v.* [*grātan*] to weep,  
cry, cry out, 329. Grete, *pres. pl.*  
454. Gret, *pa. t.* wept, 615, 1129,  
2159. Greden, *pa. t. pl.* wept,  
164, 236, 415, 449, 2796. Gro-  
tinde, *part. pr.* weeping, 1390.  
Graten, *pp.* wept, 241. Igroten,  
285.

Graue, *v.* to bury, 613. Grauen,  
*pp.* buried, 2528. Web., Chauc.

Graunted, *pa. t.* granted,  
agreed to, 1154.

Grave, *n.* grave, 408.

Grede, *v.* to call out, 96, 2703.  
Gredde, *pa. t.* 2417. A.S. *grædan*.

Greme, *v.* to irritate, anger,  
grieve, 442. A.S. *gremian*.

Grene, *adj.* wan, sickly, 470.

Grene, *n.* green space, 996,  
2828, 2840.

Gres, *n.* grass, 2698.

Gret, *adj.* great, heavy, loud,  
807, 1860. Greth, 1025; *pl.* Grete,  
1437, 1862. Grette, *comp.*  
greater, 1893.

Grete, Greden. See Graten.

Greyed, 2003. See Greyþe.

Grethet, 2615. See Greyþe.

Greting, *n.* weeping, 166.

Grette, *pa. t.* accosted, greeted,  
452, 1811, 2625. Gretten, *pa. t. pl.*  
1212. Gret, *pp.* accosted, greeted,  
2290. I-gret, 163.

Grew, *pa. t.* grew, prospered,  
2333; *pl.* Grew, arose, 2975.

Groue, *v.* to grieve, 2953.

Greyþe, *v.* [*Icel. grœða*] to pre-  
pare, 1762. Greyþede, *pa. t.* pre-  
pared, 706. Greyþed, *part. pa.*  
prepared, made ready, 714. Gre-  
thet, 2615. Greyþed, treated, 2003;  
*but read* greued, i. e. grieved.

Greyue, *n.* [*gerefa*] greave,  
magistrate, 1771. Greyues, *gen.*  
greave's, 1749. Greyues, *pl.* 266.

Grim, *adj.* cruel, savage, fierce,  
155, 680, 2398, 2655, 2761.

Grim, *n.* smut, dirt (!), 2496.  
See the note. Perhaps it means:  
he began to flay him as if he were  
mere dirt or mud. This curious  
expression is supposed to have the  
meaning here assigned to it by  
observing (1) that *grim* and *gore*  
must be substantives, and (2) that  
they must be of like signification.  
Note that, in l. 682, Godard calls  
Grim 'a foul dirt-churl, and a  
thrall.' The author clearly uses  
*dirt* as a term of reproach. Cf.  
Dan. *grim*, soot, smut, dirt, an-  
swering to the English *grime*.  
*Gore* is the A.S. *gor*, wet mud, or  
clotted blood. Except here, *grime*  
is a word not known before the  
fifteenth century (N. E. D.); but it  
may well have been in early use.

Grip, *n.* griffin, 572. Swed. *grip*.

Grip, *n.* [*grýpe*] ditch, trench,  
2102. Gripes, *pl.* 1924.

Gripeth, *imp.* gripe ye, seize,  
1882. Grop, *pa. t.* grasped, 1776,  
1871, 1890, &c. Gripen, *pa. t. pl.*  
seized, 1790.

Grith, *n.* peace, security, 61,  
511. Grith-sergeans, 267, legal  
officers to preserve the peace. Cf.  
*Icel. gríð*.

Grom, *n.* lad, youth, 790;  
young man, 2472. E. *groom*.

Gronge, *n.* Fr. grange, farm,  
village, 764.

Grop. See Gripen.

Grotes, *n. pl.* [*grof*] small  
pieces, 472, 1414. Cf. E. *groats*.

- Grotinde. *See* Graten.  
 Grund - stalwrpe, extremely stalwart, 1027. *See* Grundlike.  
 Grunde, *n. dat.* ground, 1979, 2675.  
 Grunden, *pp.* ground, 2503.  
 Grundlike, *adj.* strong, 2013; *adv.* heartily, 651, 2659; deeply, 2268, 2307, where it is equivalent to *Deplike*, *q. v.*  
 Gyuē. *See* Giue.  
 Hal (*for* Half), half, 2370. Cf. Twel.  
 Halde, *v.* to hold, take part, 2308. Holden, to keep or observe, 29, 1171. Haldes, *pr. t.* holds, 1382. Hel (*for* Held), *pa. t.* held, 109. Helden, *pa. t. pl.* held, 69, 1201. Halden, *pp.* held, holden, 2806.  
 Halle, *s.* hall, 157, 239.  
 Hals, *n.* [heals] neck, 521, 670, 2510.  
 Halte, *adj. pl.* lame, 543.  
 Halue, *n.* side, part; bi bothe halue, on both sides, 2682. *See* Bi-halue.  
 Haluendel, *n.* the half part, 460.  
 Hamer, *n.* hammer, 1877.  
 Hand-bare, *adj.* empty-handed, 766.  
 Hand-dede, *n. dat.* handiwork, 92. *See* Hond.  
 Handlen, *v.* to handle, 347.  
 Handel, 586.  
 Hangen, *v.* to hang, 335, 695.  
 Hengen, 43. Henge, 2486. Honge, 2807. Henged, *pp.* hung, 1429, 1922, 2480. Cf. For-henge.  
 Harping, *n.* playing the harp, 2325.  
 Harum (*for* Harm), 1983, 2409.  
 Hasard, *n.* Fr. game at dice, 2326. *See* note on l. 2320.  
 Hatede, *pa. t.* hated, 1188.  
 Hauen, *ger.* to have, 78, &c.  
 Haues, Hauest, 2 *pr. t.* hast, 688, 848. Haues, Haueth, *pr. t.* haveth, hath, has, 1266, 1285, 1952, 1980, &c. Hauet, hath, 564. Hauen, *pr. t. pl.* have, 1227.  
 Hauenet, have it, 2005. Hauede, *pa. t.* had, 649, 775, &c. Hauedet, had it, 714. Haueden, *pa. t. pl.* had, 238, &c. Aueden, 163. Hauede, Haueden, *subj.* would have, 1428, 1643, 1687, 2020, 2675.  
 Haul (*for* Haue I), 2002.  
 Hawe (*for* Awe), *pres. s. subj.* possess, own, 1188. Haue *for* Awe, *v.* 1298; *see* 1292.  
 Hayse, *n.* ease, peace, 59.  
 He, *pron.* Is sometimes understood, as in l. 1777, and hence might perhaps have been designedly omitted in ll. 860, 2311, but the metre requires *he* in 135 and 1089; cf. 1428. He, *pl.* they, 54, 57, 152, 156, &c.  
 Heo (*for* Ek), eke, 2348.  
 Heie, *n.* *See* Eie.  
 Heie, *adj.* tall, 987. *See* Hey.  
 Höl, Helden. *See* Halde.  
 Helde, Heldeste. *See* Eld, Elde.  
 Helen, *v.* [hēlan] to heal, 1836.  
 Hele, 2058. Holed (*for* Haled), *pp.* healed, 2039.  
 Heles, *n. pl.* heels, 898.  
 Helle, *s.* hell, 16; *gen.* 405.  
 Helm, *n.* helmet, 379, 624, 1653, &c. Helmes, *pl.* 2612.  
 Helpen, *v.* to help, 1712.  
 Helpes, *imp. pl.* help *ye*, 2596.  
 Holpen, *pp.* helped, 901.  
 Hem, *pron.* them, 367, 376, &c.  
 Hemp, *n.* hemp, 782.  
 Hond. *See* Hond.  
 Hende (*for* Ende), *end.* 247.  
 Hende (*for* Ende), *n.* a duck, 1241. A.S. *ened*; Lat. *anas* (*anatu is*); Du. *eend*; Icel. *önd*. 'Ende; dooke byrde, *Anas*. *Prolog.* *Parv.*  
 Hende, *adj.* courteous, gentle,

1104, 1421, 1704, 2877, 2914; skilful, 2628. Cf. Dan. *handig*, dexterous.

*Hende*, *adv.* near, handy, 359, 2275. Opposed to *fer*.

*Hendeleik*(e), *n. dat.* courtesy, 2793. Cf. *Allit. Poems*, ed. Morris, B. 860.

*Henged*, Hengen. See Hangen.

*Henne*, *adv.* hence, 843, 1780, 1799.

*Henne*, *n.* hen, 1240. *Hennes*, *pl.* 702.

*Her*. See Er.

*Her*, *adv.* here, 689, 1058, &c. *Her-offe*, 2585, hereof.

*Her*, *n.* hair, 1924. *Hor*, 235.

*Herboru*, *n.* habitation, harbour, lodging, 742. Of here h, as to their lodging.

*Herborwed*, *pp.* lodged, 742.

*Here*, *pron.* their, 52, 465, &c.

*Here*, *n.* army, 346, 379, 2153, 2580, 2942. A.S. *here*.

*Here*, *Heren*, *v.* to hear, 4, 732, 1640, 2279, &c. Y-here, 11. *Herde*, *pa. t.* heard, 286, 465, &c. *Herden*, *pa. t. pl.* 150.

*Hering*, *n.* herring, 758.

*Herinne*, *adv.* herein, 458.

*Herkne*, *imp. s.* hearken, 1285. *Herknet* for *Herkneth*, *imp. pl.* hearken ye, 1.

*Herles*. See Erl.

*Hermite*s, *n. pl.* hermits, 430.

*Hernes*, *n. pl.* brains, 1808; under *hernes*, close to the brains, on the head, 1917. Icel. *hjarni*.

*Hern - panne*, *n.* brain - pan, skull, 1991. See above.

*Hert*, *n.* hart, deer, 1872.

*Herte*, *n.* heart, 479, 2054, &c.

*Herte blod*, heart's blood, 1819. *Herte wille*, heart's desire, 70.

*Hertelike*, *adv.* heartily, 1347, 2748.

*Het*, *Hete*, *Hetan*. See Ete.

*Hetelike*, *adv.* fiercely, furiously, 2685. A.S. *hetelic*, full

of hate, hostile, malignant. (Perhaps an error for *hertelike*.)

*Heþede* (for *He yede*), he went, 551. [So in former editions; but the MS. can be read *he yede*.]

*Heþen*, *adv.* hence, 683, 845, 1085, 2727. *Eþen*, 690.

*Heu*, *n.* hue, colour, complexion, 2918.

*Heued*, *n.* [*hēafod*] head, 624, 1653, 1701, 1759, &c. *Heuedes*, *pl.* 1907.

*Heuene*, *n.* heaven, 62, 246.

*Heuene-riche*. See Rike.

*Heuere*. See Euere.

*Heul*, *adj.* heavy, 808; laborious, 2456.

*Hew*, *pa. t.* cut, 2729.

*Hexte*, *adj. sup.* highest, tallest, 1080. See Hey.

*Hey*, *adj.* high, 1289; tall, 1071, 1083. *Heye se*, high sea, 719.

*Heye curt*, high court, 1685. *Heye* and lowe, high and low, every one, 2431, 2471, &c.

*Heye*, *adv.* on high, 43, 335, 695, &c.

*Heylike*, *adv.* highly, honourably, 2319. *Heyelike*, 1329.

*Heyman*, *n.* nobleman, 1260.

*Heymen*, *pl.* 231. (But *hey men* in l. 958.)

*Hi*, *Hio*. See Ich.

*Hider*, *adv.* hither, 868, 885, 1431.

*Hides*, *n. pl.* hides, skins, 918.

*Hije*, *pron.* his, 47, 468. *Hise*, 34, 333, 794, 2395, &c. *Hyse*, 355. [The final *e* is most used with plural nouns.]

*Hile*, *v.* [*helan*] to cover, hide, 2082.

*Hine*, *n. pl.* hinds, bondsmen, 620. A.S. *hina*, orig. a gen. pl., treated as a nom.

*Hinne*. See Per-inne, s. v. Per.

*Hire*, *pron.* her, 127, 130, 131, &c. *Hire semes*, it beseeems her, 2916.

Hire, *n.* hire, pay, 908, 910.  
 His (*for* Is), 279, 1973, 2692.  
 Hise. See Hijs.  
 Hof, *pa. t.* heaved, 2750.  
 Hok, *n.* hook, 752, 1102.  
 Hol, *adj.* whole, well, 2075.  
 Hold, *adj.* [*hold*] firm, loyal, faithful, 74, 2781; Holde, 2816.

Ant suore othes *holde*.

*K. Horn*, 1259.

Hold, *adj.* old, 192, 417, &c.  
 Holde, *def.* former, 2460; *pl.* 30, 956.

Holden. See Halde.

Hole, *n.* socket of the eye, 1813.

Holed. See Helen.

Holi, *adj.* holy, 1361.

Holpen. See Helpen.

Hom, *n.* home (used as now), 778. At home, 789, 822.

Hond, *n.* hand, 2446. Hon, 1342. Hend, *pl.* hands, 505, 2069, 2444. Hondes, *pl.* 215, 333, 636. Handes, *pl.* 95, 235.

Honge. See Hangen.

Hor. See Her, *n.*

Hore, *n.* mercy, 153. See Ore.

Horn, *n.* 779. This probably refers to the *shape* of the *simnel*. Halliwell says, a *Simnel* is 'generally made in a *three-cornered* form.' Cracknels are still made with pointed and turned up ends, not unlike *horns*.

Hors, *n.* horse, 94, 2283; *pl.* 701, 1222. Horse, *dat.* 126. Horse-knaue, groom, 1019.

Hosen, *n. pl.* hose, stockings, 860, 969.

Hoslen, *v.* to administer or receive the sacrament, 212; *ger.* 362. Hoslon, 362. Hosled, *part. pa.* 364. Hoseled, 2598. A.S. *hustlian*.

Hoten, *pp.* called, named, 106, 284. A.S. *gehäten*.

Houes, *pr. t.* behoves, 582. [*Read* bi-houes.]

Hul, *n.* hollow, i. e. vale, 2687. A.S. *hol*. Cf. l. 2439. See Holl, *sb.* in N. E. D.

Hund, *n.* hound, 1994, 2435. Hundes, *pl.* 2331.

Hungred for Hunger, 2454.

Hungroth, *pr. t. impers.*; Us h., we hunger, 455, 464. Hungrede, *pa. t.*; Him h., he hungered, 654.

Hure, *pron.* our, 338, 842, 1231, &c. A.S. *ure*.

Hus (*for* Us), 1217, 1409.

Hus, *n.* house, 740. Hws, 1141. Huse, *dat.* 2913. Milnehouse, mill-house, 1967.

Hyl, *n.* heap, 892. Hil, hill, 1287.

Hw, *adv.* how, 288, 827, 960, 1646, &c. W, 120. Hwou, 2411, 2946, 2987, &c.

Hwan, *adv.* when, 408, 474, &c. See Quan.

Hware, *adv.* where, 1881, 2240, 2579. Hwere, 1083. Hwar-of, whereof, 2976.

Hwat, *pron.* what, 596, 635, 1137; why, 2547. Wat, 117, 541, &c. Wat is yw, what is the matter with you, 453. Hwat or Wat is be, 1951, 2704.

Hwat. See Quath.

Hwel, *n.* 755. Perhaps for *hel* = *el*, eel; see note. See Eles.

Hweper, *adv.* whether, 294, 2098. Hwere, 549.

Hwi, *adv.* why, 454. See Qui.

Hwil, *adv.* whilst, 301, 363, 538, 2437.

Hwile, *n.* a short time, 722, 1830.

Hwil-gat, *adv.* how, lit. which way, 836. For *hwilkgat*.

Hwit, *adj.* white, 1729. See With.

Hwo, *pron.* who, 296, 300, 368, 2604, &c. See Wo.

Hwor (*for* Hweper), *adv.* whether, 1119.

Hwore-so, wheresoever, 1349.  
Hwo-so, whosoever, 4, 76, 83.  
Hwou. See Hw.  
Hws. See Hus.  
Hyse. See Hys.

Ioh, *prom.* I, 167, &c. Ihc, 1377. Hic, 305. Hi, 487. I, 686. Y, 21, 2038, &c.

Id (*for* It), 2424.

I-gret, 163. See Grette.

I-groten. See Graten.

Il (*for* Ilk), *adj.* each, every, 818, 1740, 2112, 2483, 2514. Ilc, 1056, 1921. Ilke, *dat.* 821, 1861, 2959; *pat ilke* (= the same), 1087, 1215, 2674, 2679, &c. Ilker = ilk here, each (of them), 2352. Ilkan, each one, 1770, 2357. Ilkon, 1842, 2108. See Eueri.

Ille, *adv.* Likede hire swithe ille, 1165, it displeased her much. Ille maked, ill treated, 1952.

I-maked. See Maken.

Inch, *n.* inch, 1034.

Inne, *adv.* [innan] in, 762, 807. See perinne, s. v. per.

Inow, *adv.* enough, 706, 911, 931, &c. Ynow, 904, 1795. Ynou, 563. Y-nowe, *pl.* 2682.

Intill, *prep.* unto, into, 128, 251, &c. See Til.

Ioie, *n.* Fr. joy, 662, 1209, 1237, 1278, &c. Ioye, 1315.

Ioupe, *n.* Fr. a doublet, 1767. Roquefort gives the form *jupe*, but *jupon* or *Gipoun* is more usual.

Ioy[i]nge, *n.* gladness, 2087.

Is (*for* His), 735, 2254, 2479.

Iuel, *adj.* poor, bad; Ful iuele o-bone, very lean, 2505; cf. 2525.

Iuele, *n.* *dat.* evil, injury, 50, 1689. Yuel, 2221. Yuele, *dat.* 994. Iuel, sickness, 114. Yuel, 144, 155.

Iuele, *adv.* evilly, 2755. Me iuele like, displease me, 132. Cf. Ille liken.

Iustice, *n.* a justice, 1628, 2202. Iustises, *pl.* 263.

Kables, *n.* *pl.* cables, 710.

Kalde, *pa. t.* called, 884.

Kam. See Komen.

Kare, *n.* anxiety, 121, 1377.

Kaske, *adj.* strong, vigorous, 1841. Icel. *karskr*, pronounced *kaskr*.

Kayn, *n.* 31, 1327. Evidently miswritten for *cayn*, a misread form of *layn*, which is a Norman spelling of *thayn*; for which see ll. 2184, 2194, 2260, 2466. See Thayn.

Kaysere. See Cayser.

Keft, *part. pa.* purchased, 2005. Sure keft = sourly (bitterly) purchased it. Keft is miswritten for *Koft* = *coft*, bought. See Coff in N. E. D. and E. D. D. See Sure.

Keling, *n.* 757, cod of a large size, Jam. q. v. The *kelyng* appears in the first course of Archb. Nevill's Feast, 6 Edw. IV. Cotgrave explains *Merlus*, A Melwall or *Keeling*, a kind of small cod, whereof stockfish is made.

Keme. See Komen.

Kempe, *n.* knight, champion, 1036. A.S. *cempa*.

Kene, *adj.* keen, bold, eager, 1832, 2115. A term of very extensive use in old Engl. and Sc. poetry, and the usual epithet of a knight. A.S. *cine*.

Kesten, *v.* to cast in prison or in chains, 81, 1784 (used passively); Keste, *cast.* place, 2611. Casten, *cast.* throw, 2101. Keste, *pa. t.* cast, 2449.

Keuel, *n.* a gag, 547, 637. See *Kevel* in Hall., *Keul* in Jam. Icel. *kefi*.

Keyes, *n.* *pl.* keys, 1303.

Kichin, *n.* kitchen, 936.

Kid, *pp.* made known, dis-

covered, 1060. From *cýpan*, notum facere.

**Kilping** (*for* Ilk ping), each thing, 1736.

**Kin**, *Kyn*, *n.* kindred, 393, 414, 2045.

**Kindlen**, *v.* kindle, 915.

**Kines**, *n. gen.* kind, 861, 1140, 2691. *None kines* = of no kind; *nevere kines* = of never a kind.

**Kinneriche**. See *Cunniche*.

**Kippe**, *v.* [*Icel. kippa*] to take up hastily, 894. **Kipte**, *Kipt*, *pa. t.* snatched up, 1050, 2407, 2638.

**Kirke**, *n.* church, 36, 1132, 1355. **Kirkes**, *pl.* 2583. *Icel. kirkja*.

**Kiste**. See *Chiste*.

**Kiste**, *pa. t. s.* kissed, 1279.

**Kisten**, *pa. t. pl.* kissed, 2162.

**Knaue**, *n.* lad, 308, 409, 450, &c.; attendant, servant, 458. **Cokes knaue**, scullion, 1123.

**Knawe**, *v.* to know, 2785.

**Knawe**, *pr. t. pl.* know, 2207.

**Kneu**, *pa. t.* knew, 2468.

**Knawe**, *v.* (*causal*), to make to know; **Knawed**, *pp.* made known, declared, 2057.

**Knele**, *v.* kneel, 1320.

**Knes**, *n. pl.* knees, 1902.

**Knioth**, **Knith**, *n.* knight, 77, 345, &c. **Knict**, 343. **Knictes**, *pl.* 239. **Knithes**, 1068. **Knihes**, 2706.

**Knif**, *n.* knife, 479, 498, 2493. **Knives**, *pl.* 1769.

**Kok**, *n.* a cook, 873, 880, 891, 903, 921, 2898. See *Cok*.

**Komen**, *v.* to come, 1001. **Comes**, **Cometh**, *imp. pl.* come ye, 1798, 1885, 2247. **Kam**, *pa. t.* came, 766, 863. **Kom**, 1309. **Cam**, 2622. **Komen**, *pa. t. pl.* came, 1012, 1202. **Comen**, 2790. **Keme**, 1208. **Comen**, *part. pa.* come, 1714.

**Kope**, *n.* Lat. cope, 429. **Copes**, *pl.* 1957.

**Koren**, *n.* corn, 1879. **Korn**, 825.

**Kouel**. See *Couel*.

**Koupen**. See *Coupe*.

**Kradel-barnes**, *n. pl.* children in the cradle, 1912.

**Kraken**, *v.* to crack, break, 914.

**Krake**, 1857. **Crake**, 1908.

**Crakede**, *pa. t.* cracked, broke, 568. **Kraked**, *pp.* 1238.

**Kranes**, *n. pl.* cranes, 1726.

**Krike**, *n.* creek, 708.

**Kuneriche**, **Kunerike**. See *Cunniche*.

**Kunne**. See *Canst*.

**Kunrik**, *n.* a royal mark, i.e. a birth-mark, 2143. (*Distinct from Kuneriche*.) See below.

**Kyne-merk**, *n.* mark or sign of royalty, 604. In the same manner are compounded *kine-helm*, *kine-stol*, &c.

**Lac**, *n.* fault, reproach, 191, 2219.

**Ladde**, *n.* lad, 1786. **Ladden**, *pl.* 1038. **Laddes**, 1015, 1024, &c. A term subsequently applied to persons of low condition.

'When *laddes* weddeth leuedis—' Prophecy of Tho. of Essedoune, MS. Harl. 2253, f. 127; ed. Murray, p. xix, l. 8.

**Lame**, *adj.* lamed, 1938.

**Large**, *adj.* Fr. liberal, bountiful, 97, 2941.

**Late**, *adv.* late; to late, too late, 691, 845.

**Late**, *v.* [*lātan*] (1) 2 *p. pres. subj.* let, suffer, 486. **Late**, *pr. t.* let, permit, 1741. **Late**, *imp.* let, suffer, 17, 1376, 2422. **Leth**, *pa. t.* let, suffered, 2651; caused, 252. **Let**, 2062. **Late**, *inf.* (*in pass. sense*), put, 2611: (2) **Laten**, *v.* leave, 328. **Lat be**, *imp.* leave, relinquish, 1265; **Late be**, *inf.* 1657. **Laten**, *pp.* abated, 240; left, 1925.

Lath, *n.* injury, 76. Lathe, 2718, 2976.

Latus (*for* Lat us), let us, 1772.

Lauhwinde, *part. pr.* laughing, 946.

Laumprei, *n.* Fr. lamprey, 771. Laumprees, *pl.* 897. Lampreys, 1727.

Laute, *pa. t.* [*laccan*, *pa. t.* *lahte*] received, took, 744. Lauthe, 1673. Lauth, *pp.* received, taken, 1988.

Lawe, Lowe, *adj.* low, 2431, 2471, 2767, &c.

Lax, *n.* [*Icel. lax*] salmon, 754, 1727. Laxes, *pl.* 896.

Layke, *v.* [*Icel. leika*] to play, 1011. Leyke, Leyken, 469, 950, 997. Leykeden, *pa. t. pl.* played, 954.

Leche, *n.* physician, 1836, 2057.

Led, a caldron, kettle, 924. Chauc. *Prolog.* 202.

Lede, Leden, *v.* to lead, 245, &c.; ut lede, lead out, 89; cf. 346, 379. Ledes, *pr. t. 3 p.* uses, carries, 2573. Ledde, *pa. t. led*, 1686. Ledden, *pa. t. pl. led*, 2451.

Lef, *adj.* agreeable, willing; lef and loth, willing and unwilling, 261, 440, 2273, 2313, 2379, 2775. A very usual phrase. Leuc, *def.* dear, 431; *voc.* 909. Leuere, *comp.* more agreeable, rather, 1193, 1423, 1671, &c. Lef, used as *adv.* willingly, in the phrase 'Ye! lef, ye! l' = yes, willingly, yes, 2606; cf. l. 1888.

Leidest. See Leyn.

Leite, *v.* to seek, i.e. hard to find, 2441. *Icel. leita*.

Leman, *n.* mistress, lover, 1191. Lemman, 1283, 1312, 1322. Used by all the old writers, and applied equally to either sex.

Leme, *n.* limb, 2555. Lime, 1409. Limes, *pl.* 86.

Lende, *v.* to land, 733.

Lene, *v.* [*lênan*] to lend, grant, 2072.

I sal lene the her mi ring.  
*Yw. and Gaw.* 737.

Lenge, *n.* the fish called ling, 832.

Lenge, *v. or ger.* to prolong, 1734, 2363.

Lengere, *adv.* longer, 809.

Leoun, *n.* lion, 573. Leun, 1867; cf. 2690.

Lepe, *pres. s. subj.* overleap, escape from, 2009. Loupe, to leap, 1801. Lep, *pa. t.* leapt, 891, 1777, 1942. Lopen, *pa. t. pl.* 1896, 2616.

Ler, *n.* [*hlzor*] cheek, 2918.

Lere, Leren, *v.* to learn, 797, 823; to teach, 2592. Y-lerre, 12.

Lese, *imp. s. 3 p.* loose, 333.

Loth. See Late.

Lette, *v.* [*lettan*] to hinder, retard, 1164, 2253, 2819; to stop, cease, 2445, 2627. Let, *pa. t.* stopped, stayed, 2447, 2500. Leten, *pa. t. pl.* stopped, delayed, 2379.

Leue, *n.* leave, 1387, 1626, 2952, &c.

Leue, *adj.* See Lef.

Leue, *v.* [*liefan*] *imp. s.* grant, 334, 406, 2807. [The true distinction between *leue* and *lene* is, that the former is the A.S. *liefan*, G. *erlauben* = grant in the sense of *allow, permit*, and is invariably intransitive; whilst *lene* is the A.S. *lênan*, G. *leihen* = grant in the sense of *give*. The confusion between the senses of *grant* has led to confusion between *lene* and *leue* in many passages of M.E. authors. See the use of *lefe* in the *Ormulum*, ed. White.]

Leued, *pp.* left, 225.

Leuedi, *n.* lady, 171, 293, 1120, &c. Leuedyes, *pl.* 239.

Leuere. See Lef.



Leues, *pr. t.* believes, 1781, 2105.

Leyn, *n.* lightning, 2690. (*But read leun, i. e. lion.*)

Lewe, *adj.* warm, 498, 2921. A.S. *hlzowe*.

Leyd, Leyde. See Leyn.

Leye, *n.* lie, falsehood, 2117.

Leye, 1 *pr. s.* lie, speak false, 2010.

Leyk, *n.* game, 1021, 2326. Icel. *leikr*. In Lanc. a player is still called a *laker*.

Leyke, Leyken. See Layke.

Leyn, *v.* to lay, 718. Leyde, *pa. t.* laid, 50, 994, &c.; stopped, 229. Leidest, *pa. t. 2 p.* laidest, 636. Leyden, *pa. t. pl.* laid, 1907. Leyd, *part. pa.* laid, 1689, 1722, 2839.

Lieh, *adj.* like, 2155.

Lict, Lith, *n.* light, 534, 576, 588, &c.

Lift, *adj.* left (*lævus*), 2130, 2635.

Liften, *v.* lift, 1029, 1031.

Ligge, Liggen, *v.* to lie down, 802, 876, 882, 1374. Liggeth, *pr. s.* lies, 330. See Lyen.

Lime, Limes. See Leme.

Line, *n.* line, cord, 539.

Lite, *adj.* little, 276, 1730, 1855. Litel, 1858, &c. Litle, *pl.* 2014.

Lith, *n.* See Lict.

Lith, *imp.* light (thou), 585.

Lith, *adv.* lightly, 1942.

Lith, *n.* (*perhaps*) help, 1338. Cf. Icel. *lið*, help, assistance. The sense seems to be—'helpfulness and success are companions.' Hazlitt has the proverb—'Industry is fortune's right hand, and frugality her left.' See Selthe.

Lith, *n.* people, men, tenants, 2515. Icel. *lyðr*, people; allied to A.S. *lȝod*, G. *leute*.

No asked he lond no *lithe*.

*Sir Tristr.* l. 1640.

Ther wille wille not be went, ne lete ther lond ne *lithe*.

*R. Brunne*, p. 194.

where it answers to the Fr. Ne volent lesser tere ne *tenement*.

Who schall us now geve londes or *lythe*. *Le Bone Flor.* 841.

Here I gif Schir Galerion, quod Gaynour, withouten ony gile, Al the londis and the *lithis* fro laver to layre.

*Sir Gaw. and Sir Gal.* ii. 27.

Lithes, *n. pl.* the extreme points of the toes, lit. articulations, 2163. *Fingres lith*, extremum digiti, Lac. 16, 24.

Lipes, *imp. pl.* listen, 1400, 2204. Lypes, 2576. The verb in the Sax. is *hlystan*, but in Su.-G. *lyda*, and Icel. *hlýða*, which approaches nearer to the form in the poem.

Littene, *inf.* (*passively*), to become diminished, 2701. From A.S. *lyt*, few.

Liue, *n. dat.* life, 281; brouth of liue, dead, 513, 2129. Of liue do, kill, 1805. Liues, *gen. as adv.* alive, 509, 1003, 1307, 1919, 2854. See Onliue.

Liuen, *v.* to live, 355. Liuede, Liueden, *pa. t. pl.* lived, 1299, 2044.

Lof, *n.* loaf, 653.

Loke, Loken, *v.* to look after, take care of, to behold, 376, 2136. Lokes, *pr. t. 2 p.* lookest, 2726. Loke, *imp.* look, 1680, 1712. Lokes, *imp. pl.* look ye, 2240, 2292, 2300, 2579, 2812. Lokede, *pa. t.* looked, 679, 1041.

Loken, Lokene, *part. pa.* fastened, locked, closed, 429, 1957. So also in the *Ancren Riwle*, p. 56—'gif he haueð enne widne hod and one *ilokene cope*.'

Lond, *n.* land, 64. Londe, *dat.* 721, &c. Lon, 340.

- Long**, *adj.* tall, 988, 1063, 1648.  
**Longe**, *adv.* long, 172.  
**Longes**, *pr. t.* 3 *p.* belongs, 396.  
**Lopen**. *See* Lepe.  
**Loth**, *adj.* loath, unwilling, 261, 440, &c. *See* Lef.  
**Loude**, *adv.* loudly, 96.  
**Louede**, *pa. t.* loved, 30, 71.  
**Loueden**, *pa. t. pl.* 955.  
**Louerd**, *n.* lord, master, 96, 483, &c. Lowerd, 621.  
**Louerdinges**, *n. pl.* lordings, masters, 515, 1401. *See* note in Warton's *Hist. Engl. Poet.* V. i. p. 19; ed. 1840 [ii. 61, ed. 1871].  
**Loupe**. *See* Lepe.  
**Low**, *pa. t.* laughed, 903.  
**Lowen**, *pa. t. pl.* 1056.  
**Lowe**. *See* Lawe.  
**Lowe**, *n.* [hlāw] hill, 1291, 1699.  
**Lurken**, *n.* lurk, hide, 68.  
**Luue**, *n.* love, 195. *Luue-drowrie* is here a compound word, meaning *love-courtship*. *Lufe-drowrie* also = *love-token*; *Lynde-say's Sq. Meldrum*, 1003. *See* Drurye.  
**Lyen**, *ger.* to lie (in bed), 2134.  
**Leyen**, *pl. pl.* lay, 475.  
**Lype**, *n.* alleviation, comfort, ease, 147. Cf. A.S. *līpe*, soft.  
  
**Mad**, *pp.* made, 1953. *See* Maken.  
**Maght**, *Mait*. *See* Mowe.  
**Make**, *n.* mate, companion, wife, 1150.  
**Maken**, *v.* to make, 29, &c.  
**Make**, 676. **Makeden**, *pa. t. pl.* made, 554. **I-maked**, *pp.* made, 5. **Maked**, 23, 365.  
**Makerel**, *n.* mackerel, 758.  
**Male**, *n.* Fr. a budget, bag, wallet, 48.  
**Malisun**, *n.* Fr. malediction, curse, 426.  
**Manrød**, *Manrede*, *n.* homage, fealty, 484, 2172, 2180, 2248, 2265, 2312, 2774, 2816, 2847, 2850. A.S. *manrāden*.  
**Marz**, *n.* March, 2559.  
**Mast**, *n.* mast, 709, 986.  
**Maugre** pin, in spite of thee, 1128, 1789.  
**Maydnes**, *n. pl.* maidens, 2, 33, 467, 2222. **Maydne**, *dat. s.* 83.  
**Mayster**, *n.* Fr. master, 1135; chief, 2028, 2385.  
**Mayt**, *Mayth*. *See* Mowe.  
**Mede**, *n.* reward, 102, 119, 685, 1635, 2402, 2901.  
**Meiné**, *n.* Fr. family, 827.  
**Meyne**, 834.  
**Meke**, *adj.* meek, 945, 1066.  
**Mele**, *n.* oat-meal, 780.  
**Mele**, *v.* [mēlan] to speak, make a harangue, 2059.  
**Memo**, 2201, *miswritten* for *neme*; *see* Nime.  
**Men** (used with a sing. vb. like the Fr. *on*), men, people, 390, 647, 2610.  
**Mene**, *v.* to mean, signify, 2114.  
**Menes**, *pr. t.* means, 597.  
**Mere**, *n.* mare, 2449, 2504; *gen.* 2478.  
**Messe**, *n.* Fr. the service of the mass, 243, 1176. **Messe-bok**, mass-book, 186, 391, 2710. **Messe-gere**, all the apparel, &c., pertaining to the service of the mass, 188, 389, 1078, 2217.  
**Moste**, *adj. sup. def.* greatest, 233. **Moste**, 1287. **Meate**, *pl.* tallest, 983.  
**Moster**, *n.* Fr. trade, 823. *K. Horn* (ed. Lumby), 229.  
**Met**, *pp.* [mētan] dreamt, 1285.  
**Mete**, *n.* meat, 459, &c. **Metes**, *pl.* 1733.  
**Meynie**. *See* Meine.  
**Michel**, *adj.* much, 510, 660. **Mik** (*for* Mikel), 2342. **Mike** (*for* Mikel), large, tall, great, 960, 1744, 1761, 2336. **Michel**, *adv.* much, 60; **Mikel**, *adv.* much, 122.

**Micte, Micten, Micthe, Mithe, Mithest, Mithen.** *See* Mowe.

**Mieth, n.** might, power, 35.

**Middelerd, n.** the earth, world, 2244. *Lit.* 'middle earth.'

**Mik, Mike, Mikel.** *See* Michel.

**Miloe, n.** [*mildse*] mercy, 1361.

**Mile, n.** mile, 721, 1831, 2498.

**Milk, n.** milk, 643.

**Milne-hous.** *See* Hus.

**Mine, n.** the name of a game, 2326. *See* note; and *see* Godefroy.

**Miracle, n.** a wonder, 500.

**Mirke, adj.** dark, 404.

**Misdede, pa. t.** did amiss, 337; injured, 992, 1371. **Misdo, pp.** misdone, offended, 2798.

**Misferde, pa. t.** behaved or proceeded ill, 1869. *See* Faren.

**Misgos, pr. t. 2 p.** goest or behavest amiss, 2707.

**Misseyd, pp.** spoken to reproachfully, 1688. **Misseyde, pa. t.** 49.

**Mithe, Mythe, v.** [*miðan*] to conceal, hide, dissemble, 652, 948, 1278.

**Mixed, adj.** vile, base, 2533. From A.S. *mix, meox*, *finus*.

**Mo, adj. comp.** more (in number), 1742, 1846.

**Mod, n.** mood, humour, 1703.

**Moder, n.** mother, 974, 1388, &c.

**Mone, n.** moon, 373, 403, 1314. **Mone-liht**, moonlight, 534.

**Mone, n.** opinion, 816. Cf. A.S. *mānan*, to mean.

**Mone, pr. pl.** [*Icel. mun*] must, shall, 840.

**Monekes, pl.** monks, 2521. **Monkes**, 2584.

**Morwen, n.** morning, morrow, 811, 1131, 2669, &c. **To-morwen**, to-morrow, 530, 810.

**Moste.** *See* Meste.

**Mote, pr. t.** may, 19, 406, 1743, 2545. **Moten, pl.** 18.

**Moun.** *See* Mowe.

**Mowe, v.** to mow, 1852.

**Mowe, pres. sing.** may, be able, 175, 394, 675. **Mowen, pl.** 11. **Moun**, 460, 2587. **Mait, 2 p.** *pr. t.* mayest, 689. **Mayt**, 845, 852, 1219. **Mayth**, 641. **Maght, 2 p.** *pa. t.* mightest, 1348. **Mithe, Mithest**, 855, 1218. **Micte, Micthe, Mithe, pa. t.** might, 42, 233, 1030, 1080. **Mouchte, Moucte, Moucthe, Mouthe, Mowcte**, 145, 356, 376, &c. **Micte, Micten, Mithen, pl.** 516, 1929, 2017. **Mouhte, Mouthe, Mouthen**, 1183, 2019, 2039, 2328, 2330, &c. (The forms are confused.)

**Na, adv.** no, 2530. **Namore**, no more, 2363.

**Naked, adj.** naked, 6, 853, 1949, 1953.

**Nam.** *See* Nime.

**Nayles, n.** *pl.* nails, 2163. **Nayl, sing.** 712.

**Ne, adv.** nor, 44, 49, 56, &c.

**Nede, n.** need, 9, 25, 87, &c. **Nedes, pl.** 1692.

**Neme.** *See* Nime.

**Ner, adv.** near, 990, 1949.

**Nese, n.** nose, 2450.

**Nesh, adj.** [*hnesce*] soft, tender, 2743. **Neys**, 217.

**Neth, n.** net, 752; *pl.* netes, 783.

**Neth, n.** neat, cattle, 700, 1222. **Net (nēt)**, young ox, 808, 1026, 1891. **Netes, gen.** neat's, 781.

**Nepeles, conj.** nevertheless, 1108, 1658.

**Neue, n.** fist, 2405. **Neues, pl.** 1917. *Icel. hnefi*.

**Neure, adv.** not, never, 80, 672; *neuere a polk*, ne'er a pool, 2685. **Neuere kins**, of no kind, 2691.

**Newhen, v.** [*nēhwian*] to approach, 1866.

**Ney, adv.** nigh, near to, nearly, 464, 640, 2919.

**Ney.** See Nesh.

**Neyper, Nepe, pron.** neither, not either, 458, 764, 2970, &c. **Noþer, 2623. Noyþer, 2697.**

**Nicht, Nicth, n.** night, 533, 575. **Niht, 2669. Nith, 404, 1247, 1754. Nithes, gen.** of night, 2100. **Nithes, adv.** by night, 2353; **Nihtes, pl.** 2999.

**Nime, v. pr. s.** take my way, go, 1931. **Nim-in, imp.** let us take, 1336. **Nam, pa. t.** took, 900; went, 1947, 2930. **Neme, pl.** went, 1207; cf. l. 2201. **Nomen, took, 2790. Nomen, Numen, part. pa.** taken, 2265, 2581. **Nimes, imp. pl.** go ye, 2594; **Nime, go we, 2600.** In the sense 'to take' this verb is common in all the Glossaries, but in the latter sense 'to go' it occurs nowhere but in 'Genesis and Exodus,' ed. Morris, and in the Gl. to Rob. Brunne, who, from being a Lincolnshire man, approaches nearer to the language of the present poem than any other writer.

**Nis (for Ne is), is not, 462, 1998, 2244.**

**Nither-tale, n.** night-time, 2025. See Chaucer, *Prol.* l. 97.

**Noblelike, adv.** nobly, 2640.

**Nok, n.** nook, corner, 820; **nouth a ferthinges nok,** not the value of a farthing. The same phr. is in the *Handlyng Synne* of Rob. of Brunne, l. 5812.

**Nomen.** See Nime.

**Non, adj.** no, 518, 685, 1019; no one, 934, 974.

**Note, n.** nut, 419. **Nouth, 1332.**

**Noþer.** See Neyþer.

**Nou, adv.** now, 328, 1362, &c. **Nu, 2421, 2460, 2650, &c.**

**Nout, Nouth, Noutht, n. or adv.** not, naught, nothing, not at all, 249, 505, 566, 648, 1733, 2051, 2822. **Nowt, Nowth, 770, 2168, 2737.**

**Nouth.** See Note.

**Noyþer.** See Neyþer.

**Nu.** See Nou.

**Numen.** See Nime.

**Nunnes, n. pl.** nuns, 2584.

**Nytte, v.** make use of, require for use, 941. **A.S. nytian, G. nützen, Du. nuttigen, nutten.**

**O.** See On.

**Of, prep.** of, 436; off, 216, 603, 857, 1850, 2444, 2626, 2676, 2751, &c. **Of londe, out of the land, 2599. Ofte, of, 435.**

**Of-fleye, v.** fly off, 2751. See Fleye.

**Offrende [Fr. offrande], offering, 1386.**

**Of-plette, v.** strike off, 2444. See Plette.

**Of-slawen, pp.** struck off, 2676.

**Of-spring, n.** offspring, 2565.

**Ofte, adv.** often, 226, 227, &c.

**Ok.** See Ek.

**On, adj.** one, 425, 761, 1800, 2028, 2263, &c.

**On, in** But on. See But.

**On, prep.** in, on. **On liue, alive, 281, 363, 694, 793, &c. O liue, 2865. On two, On to, 471, 1823, 2730, in two; A-two, 1413, 2643. O londe, 763, on or in land. On knes, 1211, 1302, 2710, on knees; O knes, 2252, 2796. On brenne, in flame, on fire, 1239. O nith, in the night, 1251. On nithes, 2048. O worde, 1349, in the world (see Werd). O mani wise, in many a manner, 1713. On gamen, in sport, 1716. On lesse hwile, in less time, 1830. O bok, on the book, 2307, 2311. Wel o bon, strong of body, 2355, 2571. Iuele o bone, lean, 2505. On hunting, a-hunting, 2382. O stede, on steed, 2549. Up-o the dogges, on the dogs, 2596. From these examples, added to those which occur in every Glossary, it is evident that the A.S.**

prep. *on* was subsequently corrupted to *o* and *a*.

*One*, *adj.* alone, singly, 815, 936, 1153, 1710, 1742, 1973, 2433. Al him one, all by himself, 936.

*Ones*, *adv.* once, 1295.

*Onlepi*. See *Anilepi*.

*Onne for On*, *prep.* on, 347.

*Onne*, *adv.* upon, 1675, 1689, 1940, 2105. [An incorrect form, imitated from *inne*, A.S. *innan*.]

*On-on*, *adv.* anon, speedily, 136, 447, 1964, 2790.

*Or*, *adv.* previously, before, 728, 1043; *conj.* 1356, 1688, &c. *Or* outh longe, 1789, before any long time.

*Ore*, *n.* [*ār*] favour, grace, mercy, 211, 2443, 2797. *Hore*, 153.

*Ore*, *n.* oar, 718, 1871, &c. *Ores*, *pl.* 711.

*Osed* (for *Hosed*), provided with hose, 971.

*Oth*, *n.* oath, 313, 2009, 2272, &c. *Oþes*, *pl.* 2013, 2231, &c.

*Oþe* (for *Oþer*), 861, 1986, 2970.

*Oþer*, *conj.* either, or, 94, 787, &c. See *Ayther*.

*Oþer*, *adj.* second, 879. *þe oþer* day, the following day, 1755.

*Oþer*, other, 2490. *Oþre*, *pl.* others, 1784, 2413, 2416.

*Ouer-al*, *adv.* everywhere, 38, 54.

*Ouer-fare*, *v.* to pass over, 1378; cease, 2063. See *Fare*.

*Ouer-ga*, *v.* to be disregarded, 314. *Ouer-go*, 2220.

*Ouer-gange*, *v.* to get the superiority over, 2587.

*Ouer-take*, *v.* overtake, 2695.

*Ouer-þwert*, *adv.* across, 2822. Chaucer, *C. T.* 1993 (A 1991).

*Oune*, *adj.* own, 375, 2428.

*Oure*, *n. dat.* bank, shore, 321. *G. ufer*; A.S. *ofer*. Cf. 'to þan castle of Deoure on þere sæ oure'; *Lazamon*, l. 31117.

*Outh*, *n.* [*āwihl*] any space

of time, aught, 1189; cf. l. 1789. *Outh* douthe, was worth anything, was of any value, 703.

*Page*, *n.* page, 1730.

*Palefrey*, *n.* Fr. saddle-horse, 2060.

*Paniera*, *n. pl.* baskets, 760, 805. *Panier*, *sing.* 813.

*Pappes*, *n. pl.* breasts, 2132.

*Parlement*, *n.* parliament, 1006, 1179.

*Parred*, *part. pa.* confined, fastened in, barred in, 2439. *Ritson* leaves it unexplained.

*Yn al this* [tyme] was sir Ywayn *Ful* straitly *parred* with *mekil* payn.

*Yw. and Gw.* 3227.

[It is equivalent to M.E. *sparren*. Halliwell, s. v. *Parred*, quotes 'þe are *parred* in . . . þe are so *spered* in.' Cf. A.S. *spearrian*, O.N. *sperra*, Sc. *spar*; A.S. *pearroc*, an enclosure.]

*Passé*, *v.* cross, 1376.

*Pastees*, *n. pl.* Fr. pasties, patés, 644.

*Paternoster*, *n.* the Lord's prayer, 2997.

*Pateyn*, *n.* paten, the plate used in the service of the Mass, 187.

*Pape*, *n. dat.* path, road, 2381, 2390. *Papes*, *pl.* 268.

*Patriark*, *n.* patriarch, 428.

*Payöd*, *pp.* Fr. satisfied, content, 184.

*Pelle*, *v.* drive forth (*intr.*), hurry forth, 810. Deriv. uncertain, unless it be connected with Lat. *pello*, Eng. *impel*. Cf. Eng. *pelt*.

*Peni*, *n.* penny, 705, 2147. *Penies*, *pl.* 776, 1172.

*Per*, *n.* Fr. peer, equal, 989, 2241, 2792.

*Pike*, *v.* to pitch (used passively), 707. A.S. *þician*, *v.*; from *þic*, *s.* pitch.

Pine, *n.* pain, grief, 405, 540, 1374.

Pine, *v.* to grieve, 1958.

Piping, *n.* playing on the pipe, 2325.

Plat. *See* Plette.

Plattinde, *part. pr.* tramping along, moving noisily or hurriedly, 2282. From the beating noise of the feet, like *Sc. platch* (q. v. in *Jam.*). *See* Plette.

Plawe, *v.* to play, 950; *Icel. plaga*. *See* Pleye; and see note.

Playoes, *n. pl.* plaice, 896.

Pleinte, *n.* Fr. complaint, 134.

Pleynte, 2961.

Plenté, *n.* plenty, 1173, 1242.

Plette, *v.* [*plattan*] to strike, 2444. *Plat, pa. t.* struck, 2755. Plette, 2626; *pl.* hurried, moved noisily, 2613. Cf. *Plattinde*, and note the double use of *Sc. skelp*, to beat, to hurry, and M.E. *strike*, to beat, to move along.

Pleye, *v.* to play, 951.

Plith, *n.* [*plith*] harm, 1370, 2002.

Plow, *n.* plough, 1017.

Poke, *n.* a bag, 555, 769.

Pokes, *pl.* 780.

Poles, *n. pl.* pools, ponds of water, 2101.

Polk, *n.* pool, puddle, 2685.

So in *Sir Tr.* ll. 2865, 2886. *Pulk*, Somersetsh.

Pouere, Poure, *adj.* Fr. poor, 58, 101, 2457, &c. (*u = v*).

Pourellike, *adv.* poorly, 323.

Prangled, *pp.* compressed, 639.

Cf. *Du. prangen*, to pinch; *Dan. prange Seil*, to crowd sail.

Preie, *pr. t.* pray, 1440. Prey,

*imp.* pray (thou), 1343. Preide, *pa. t.* prayed, 209.

Prest, *n.* priest, 429, 1029, 1829. Prestes, *pl.* 33, 2583.

Priken, *v.* to spur a horse, ride briskly, 2639.

Priorie, *n.* priory, 2522, 2581.

Prud, *adj.* proud, 302.

Pulten, so in the MS. l. 1023, instead of *putten*. *See* Putten. Cf. *Pult* in *Gl. to Will. of Palerne*, and E. *pelt*.

Pund, *n. pl.* pounds, 1633; *sing.* 2615.

Put, *n.* cast, throw, 1055. Cf. But, 1040.

Putten, *v.* to cast, throw, propel forward, 1033, 1044. Puten, 1051. Putte, *pa. t.* cast, 1052. Putten, *pa. t. pl.* cast, threw, 1023, 1031, 1844. *See* note on l. 1022. The word is still retained in the North and Sc.

Puttingge, Puttinge, *n.* casting, 1042, 1057, 2324.

Pymment, *n.* spiced wine, 1728. *See* note on l. 1726.

Quaked, *pa. t.* quaked, 135.

Qual, *n.* [*hwal*] whale, 753.

Quan, Quanne, *adv.* when, 134, 204, 240, &c. *See* Hwan.

Quath, *pa. t.* quoth, 606, 642, &c. Hwat, 1650, 1878. Wat, 595. Quod, 1888. Quodh, 1800. Quot, 1954, 2808. Couth, 2606.

Queme, *adj.* agreeable, 130, 393. A.S. *ge-cwēme*.

Quen, *n.* queen, 1274, 2760, 2783, &c. Quene, 183. Quenes, *pl.* 2982.

Qui. *See* Hwi.

Quie, Quik, *adj.* alive, 612, 613, 2476, &c.; quik and ded, 1405, 2210. Quike, *pl.* quick, alert, 1348. Al quic wede, 2641; cf. l. 2387; *see* Wede. The word is preserved in the A.V. of the Scriptures, and in the Creed.

Quiste, *n.* bequest, will, 219, 365.

Quod, Quodh, Quot. *See* Quath.

Radde. *See* Rede.

Ban. *See* Renne.

**Rang**, *adj.* [*ranc*] proud, rebellious, 2561.

**Rath**, *n.* counsel; hence, an adviser, 75. *Dat.* rathe, in the phrase To rathe, 2542; for the meaning of which, *see* Red.

**Rathe**, *v.* [*rādan*] to advise, 1335. A provincial pronunciation of *Rede*. In l. 2817, it is spelt *rothe*. Cf. ll. 1681, 2585, of the present poem, where it rhymes with *bethe* or *bothe*.

**Rape**, *adv.* speedily, readily, quickly, 358, 2380, 2391, &c. (In l. 1335, it may be a verb; *see* below.)

**Recke**, *pr. t. subj.* may reckon, may care, 2047, 2511.

**Red**, *n.* advice, counsel, 148, 180, 518, 826, 1194, 1833, 2871, &c. To rede, lit. for a counsel, i.e. advisable for me (to do), 118, 693; spelt To rathe, 2542.

**Rede**, *adj. def.* red, 1397. Red, 1686.

**Rede**, *v.* to direct, advise, 104, 361. Reden dede, caused to be read, 244; Rede, *pr. s. subj.*, advise, 687. Radde, *pa. t.* advised, 1353.

**Reft**, Refte, Reftes. *See* Reue.

**Regne**, *pr. s. subj.* Fr. reign, assume the superiority, 2586.

**Renne**, *v.* to run, 1161, 1831, 1904. Ran on blode, ran with blood, *pa. t.* 432.

**Reue**, *n.* magistrate, 1627. *See* Greyue.

**Reue**, Reuen, *ger.* [*rēafian*] to take away, bereave, rob, 480; *v.* 2590, 2991. Refte, *pa. t.* took away, bereaved, 94, 2223, 2485. Reftes, *pa. t. 2 p.* tookest away, 2394. Reft, *pp.* taken away, bereaved, 1367, 1672, 2483; spoiled, 2004.

**Reures**, *n. pl.* robbers, be-reavers, 2104.

**Rewe**, *ger.* to have pity, to compassionate, 497, 967. Rewede, *pa. t. (impersonal)* 503.

**Rewnesse**, Reunesse, *n.* compassion, 502, 2227.

**Ribbes**, *n. pl.* ribs, 1900.

**Richelike**, *adv.* richly, 421.

**Bieth**, Ricthe. *See* Rith, Rithe.

**Biethwise**, *adj.* [*rihtwis*] righteously, just, 37. [MS. has rirth wise.]

**Riden**, *v.* to ride, 10, 26, &c.

**Rig**, *n.* back, 1775.

**Rike**, *n.* kingdom, 290. Heuene-riche, kingdom of heaven, 133, 407. *See* Cunrliche.

**Rim**, Rym (for Ryme), *n.* rhyme, poem, 21, 2995, 2998. So Chaucer. From O.F. *rime*.

**Ring**, *n.* ring, 1632, 1637.

**Ringen**, *v.* to ring, 242, 1106.

**Ringes**, *pr. t. sing.* ring, 390.

**Rungen**, *pp.* rung, 1132.

**Ringes**, *n. pl.* rings of mail, 2740. *See* Brini.

**Bippe**, *n.* fish-basket, 893. Hence a *Rippar*, Low Lat. *ripārius*, is a person who brings fish from the coast to sell in the interior. V. Spelm. in *v.* *Rip* is still provincial for an osier basket. *See* Jam. and Moore. So also in a curious Latin and English Vocabulary, written out by Sire John Mendames, Parson of Bromestroke [Broomsthorp, Co. Norf.] in the middle of the fifteenth century, and now preserved in the valuable MSS. library of T. W. Coke, Esq., *Cophinus* is explained *A beryng lepe*, or *ryppe*; terms still retained in the county. Icel. *kríp*, a peat-basket.

**Rith**, Ricth, *n.* right, justice, inheritance, 36, 395, 1099, 1383, 2717.

**Rith**, *adj.* right (*dexter*), 604, 1812, 2140, 2545, 2725.

**Rith**, Rithe, *adv.* rightly, 420, 2611, &c.; exactly, just, 872, 1701, 2494, 2506.

**Rithe**, Ricthe, *adj.* right (*rectus*), 772, 846, 1201, 2235, 2473.

**Ritte**, *v.* to rip, make an incision, 2495.

The breche adoun he threst,  
He *ritt*, and gan to right.

*Sir Tristr.* l. 479.

**Cf. G. *ritzen*.** Connected also with Du. *rijten*, G. *reissen*, to tear, and with E. *write*.

**Robben**, *ger.* to rob, 1958.

**Rode**, *n.* the rood, cross, 103, 431, 1357, &c.

**Rof**, *n.* roof, 2082.

**Romans-reding**, *n.* reading of romances, 2327.

**Rome**, *v.* to roam, travel about, 64.

**Rop**, *n.* a rope, 2507; Ropes, *pl.* ropes, 783.

**Rore**, *v.* to roar, 2497, 2499.

**Rorede**, *pa. t.* roared, 2438.

**Roser**, *n.* Fr. rose-bush, 2919.

**Rothe**. See *Rathe*.

**Rowte**, *v.* [*hrutan*] to roar, 1911. Cf. Icel. *hrjola*, Sw. *ryla*.

**Runoi**, *n.* a horse of burden, 2569. V. Du Cange and Spelman. The word is common both in Fr. and Engl. writers. Cf. Span. *Rosin-ante*.

**Bungen**. See *Ringén*.

**Rym**. See *Rim*.

**Sal** (*for* Shall), 628.

**Salte**, *adj. def.* salt, 1305.

**Salve**, *n.* salve, healing ointment, 1835.

**Same** (*for* Shame), 1941.

**Samen**, *adv.* together, 467, 979, 1717, &c. Icel. *saman*.

**Samened**, *pp.* assembled, united, 2890.

**Sare**, *adv.* sore, grievously, 401.

**Sat** (*for* At-sat), *pa. t.* opposed, 2567. See *At-sitte*.

**Sauteres**, *n. pl.* Fr. psalters, psalms for the dead, 244.

**Sawe** (*for* Say we), i. e. say we, let us say, 338.

**Sawe**, *Sawen*, *Say*. See *Se*.

**Sayse**, *v.* (*passively*) to be seised, to be taken possession of, 251; *pres. s.* seise, give seisin or livery of land, invest, 2518. Seysed, *pa. t.* seised, took possession of, 2931; *pp.* 2513.

**Scabbed**, *Skabbed*, *adj.* scabby, scurvy, 2449, 2505.

**Scape**, *n.* harm, injury, 1352.

**Scapes**, *pl.* 269.

**Schifte** (*for* Shrift), absolution, 1829.

**Scho**, *Sho*, *pron.* she, 112, 126, 649. *Sche*, 1721.

**Schoten**, *Shoten*, *pa. t. pl.* cast, 1864; rushed, 1838. *Scuten*, 2431.

**Schulle**, *n.* a plaice, 759. Cf. Sw. *skälla*, a plaice.

**Se**, the, but due to a mistake of the scribe, 534.

**Se**, *n.* sea, 535, 719, 784, &c.; *gen. seis*, 321.

**Se**, *Sen*, *v.* to see, 1021, 1273, &c. *Sest*, *pr. t. 2 p.* seest, 534.

**Sen**, *pr. t. pl.* see, 168, 1217. **Sawe**, *Sowe*, *pa. t. subj.* might see, 1182, 1323. *Say*, *pl. t.* 881. **Sawen**, *Sowen*, *pa. t. pl.* 957, 1055, 2255.

**Seokes**, *n. pl.* sacks, 2019.

**Segges**, *n. pl.* [Fr. *sèches*] 896.

In *Cotgr.* the *Seche* is explained the Sound or Cuttle-fish. The *Seches de Coutance* were held in the highest estimation. From Lat. *sēpia*. (Pronounced *sedges*.)

**Sei**, *v.* See *Seyen*.

**Seis**. See *Se*, *n.*

**Seken**, *v.*; an error for *Sellen*, to sell, 1629.

**Selcouth**, *n.* wonder, strange thing, 124. *Selkouth*, 1059.

**Selcuth**, 2119. It was originally an *adj.*; cf. *Selkuth*, strange, wonderful, 1284.

**Sele**, *n.* seal, 755. A.S. *seolh*.

**Seli**, *adj.* simple, harmless,

477, 499. A.S. *sælig*.

**Selthe**, *n.* success, 1338. A.S.



*szib.* The line seems to be a proverb, and the meaning is—'Help and success are companions.' Goldborough tells him to avoid delay, since effort must precede success.

**Sembling**, *n.* Fr. assembling, 1018.

**Semes**, *pr. t.* in the phrase, *hire semes* = it becometh her, it becomes her, 2916. **Semedede**, *pa. t.* was suitable, was fit, 976.

**Sendes**, *pr. t.* sendeth, sends, 2392. **Sende**, *pa. t.* sent, 136, 358, &c.

**Sene**, *adj.* evident, 656.

**Serf**, *error for* Self, 1667.

**Sergans**, *n. pl.* Fr. attendants, officers, 2088, 2091, 2116. **Sergaunz**, 1929, 2361, 2371. **Seriaunz**, 2066.

**Serges**. See **Cerges**.

**Serk**, *n.* sark, shirt, 603.

**Seruen**, *v.* to serve, 1230.

**Seruede**, *pa. t. pl.* deserved, 1914.

**Sest**. See **Se**, *v.*

**Seten**, *pp.* sat, 1738; *pa. t. pl.* 1766. See **Site**.

**Sette**, *ger.* to set, descend, 2671; *v. (passive)* to be placed, 2612.

**Sette**, *pa. t.* set, placed, 2405; appointed, 2571. **Setten**, *pa. t. pl.* set, 1211.

**Seyen**, *v.* to say, 2886. **Seyst**, *pr. t. 2 p.* sayest, 2008. **Seyde**, *pa. t.* said, 117, 159, &c. **Seyden**, *pa. t. pl.* said, 376, 456, 1213. **Sey for Seyd**, *pp.* said, 2993.

**Seyl**, *n.* sail, 711, 854, 2507. **Sayl**, 858.

**Seysed**. See **Sayse**.

**Seyst**. See **Seyen**.

**Seyt**, *pr. t. s. for* Seyth, i. e. say, 647.

**Shaltou**, shalt thou, 1800. **Shaltow**, 1322. **Shaltu**, 2180, 2186, 2882, 2901.

**Sham**, *n.* shame, 56. **Shame**, 83. **Same**, 1941.

**Shamelike**, *adv.* shamefully, disgracefully, 2825, 2827.

**Shankes**, *n. pl.* legs, 1903.

**Shaped**, *pp.* created, 424.

**Shar**, *pa. t.* shore, cut, 1413.

**Shauwe**, **Shawe**, *v.* to shew, 2206, 2784. **Sheue**, 1401. See **Shewe**.

**Shel**, **Sheld**, *n.* shield, 489, 624, 1653, &c.

**Shende**, *v.* to ruin, destroy, 1422. **Shente**, *pa. t.* shamed, disgraced, 2749. **Shend**, *pp.* 2845.

**Shep**, *n. pl.* sheep, 700.

**Shere**, miswritten for she were, 1250.

**Sheres**. See **Shres**.

**Sheue**. See **Shauwe**.

**Shewe**, *v.* perceive, see, 1853. **Shewed**, *pp.* looked at, 2056.

**Shides**, *n. pl.* cleft pieces of wood, 917. **A.S. scid**, a piece of wood split thin.

**Shilde**, *pr. s. subj.* may (he) shield, 16.

**Shir**, *adj.* [scir] bright, 588, 916, 1253, &c.

**Shireue**, *n.* sheriff, 2286. **Schireues**, *pl.* 266.

**Shirte**, *n.* shirt, 768.

**Sho**, *pron.* See **Scho**.

**Sho**, *v.* to shoe, 1138. **Shod**, *pp.* provided with shoes, 971.

**Shof**, *pa. t.* shoved, pushed, 871, 892.

**Shol**, *1 p. s.* (if I) shall, 1782. **Sal**, I shall, 628. **Shole**, *pl.* shall, 562, 645, 1788. **Shul**, 328. **Sholen**, 621, 1127, 1230, &c. **Shulen**, 731, 747, &c. **Shoren** (so in MS.), 1640. **Sule**, shall ye, will ye, 2419. **Shu[l]de**, I should, 1079. **Sholdest**, shouldst, 2712. **Sholden**, *pl.* 1020, 1195. **Shulden**, 941.

**Sholdre**, *n.* shoulder, 2738. **Shuldre**, 604, 1262. **Shu[l]dre** - blade, shoulder - blade, 2644. **Sholdres**, *pl.* shoulders, 1647, 1818. **Shuldren**, 982.

**Shon**, *n. pl.* shoes, 860, 969.  
**Shon**, *pa. t.* shone, 2144.  
**Shop**, *pa. t.* shaped, made; but perhaps for *shok*, i. e. shook, overthrew, 1101.  
**Shoten**. See *Schoten*.  
**Shotshipe**. See *Sotshipe*.  
**Shrede**, *n.* a fragment, piece cut off, 99. As it was given off the 'board,' to 'feed the poor,' it must mean a piece of bread or meat.  
**Shres** (*for* *Sheres*), *n.* shears, 857.  
**Shride**, *ger.* to clothe (himself), 963. *Shrid*, *part. pa.* clothed, 978. *A.S. scryðan*.  
**Shriue**, *Shriuen*, *ger.* to confess, make confession, 362. *Shriue*, *Shriuen*, *pp.* 227, 364, 2489, 2598.  
**Shrud**, *n.* clothing, 303.  
**Shude**, *Shul*, *Shulen*. See *Shol*.  
**Shuldre**, *Shuldren*. See *Sholdre*.  
**Shuldreden**, *pa. t. pl.* shouldered, 1056.  
**Sibbe**, *adj.* related, allied, 2277.  
**Siden**, *n. pl.* sides, 371.  
**Sike**, *v.* to sigh, 291.  
**Sikerlike**, *adv.* surely, 422, 625, 2301, 2707, 2871. *Sikerly*, *Sir Tr. l.* 534.  
**Sikernessee**, *n.* surety, security, 2856.  
**Siking**, *n.* sighing, 234.  
**Siluer**, *n.* money, 73, 818, 1223.  
**Simenels**, *n. pl.* *Fr.* *simnells*, 779; a finer sort of bread, 'q. a *simila*, h. e. puriori farinae parte'; *Spelman*. *Assis. pan.* 51 Hen. III: '*Symnellus* vero de quadrante ponderabit 2 sol. minus quam Wastellum.' It elsewhere appears to be a sort of cake. *V. Nares* in *v.*  
**Sinne**, *n.* fault, pity, 1976. *Ne for loue ne for sinne*, 2375. *Wolde he nouth for sinne lette*, 2627.  
**Sire**, *Syre*, *n.* seignior, *Fr.* The term in *ll.* 310, 1229, is used not

only to express respect, but command. It also simply means *Sir*, *ll.* 909, 2009.  
**Site**, *v.* to sit, 366, 2809. *Sittes*, *pr. t. 2 p.* sittest, 1316. *Sitten*, *pr. t. pl.* sit, 2098. *Site* on *knes*, i. e. kneel, 2709.  
**Sipe**, *n. dat.* time, 1052. *Sipe*, *Sipes*, *pl.* 213, 778, 1737, 2189. *Sype*, *Sypes*, 2162, 2843.  
**Sipe**, *Sipen*, *adv.* then, afterwards, after, 399, 472, 1414, 1814, 1988, &c.  
**Skabbed**. See *Scabbed*.  
**Sket**, *adv.* quickly, soon, 1926, 1960, 2303, 2493, 2513, 2574, 2736, 2839. *Cf.* *Icel. skjött*, quickly, from *skjötr*, quick, swift. The *adj.* is still preserved in the surname *Skeat* or *Skeet*.  
**Skirming**, *n.* *Fr.* skirmishing, 2323. See note on *l.* 2320.  
**Slawe**, *Slawen*. See *Slo*.  
**Slenge**, *v.* to sling, cast out, 2435. *Slenget*, *pp.* slung, 1923.  
**Slep**, *n.* sleep, 1282.  
**Slepes**, *pr. t. 2 p.* sleepest, 1283.  
**Slep**, *pa. t.* slept, 1280; *pl.* Slepen, 2128.  
**Sleues**, *n. pl.* sleeves, 1957.  
**Sley**, *adj.* skilful, expert, 1084.  
**Sleie**, *pl.* 2116. *Cf.* *Icel. slagr*.  
**Slike**, *adv.* or perhaps *adj.* smoothly or smooth, 1157. '*Slyke*, or smothe: *Lenis*.'—*Prompt. Parv.*  
**Slo**, *n.* sloe, berry, 849, 2051.  
**Slo**, *v.* to slay, 512, 1364, 1412, 1745, &c. *Slon*, 2543. *Slos*, *pr. t. 2 p.* slayest, 2706. *Slos*, *imp. pl.* strike ye, 2596. *Slou*, *Slow*, *pa. t.* slew, 501; struck, 2633. *Slowe*, *Slowen*, *pa. t. pl.* slew, 2414, 2427, 2432; struck, fought, 2683. *Slawe*, *Slawen*, *part. pa.* slain, 1803, 1928, 2000, &c. In *l.* 2747 (as in 2596, 2633, 2683) it has only the sense of *struck*, wounded, agreeably to the signifi-

- cation of the original word, Icel. *slá*, A.S. *slæm*, *cædere*, *ferire*.  
*Smerte*, *adj. pl.* painful, 2055.  
*Smerte*, *adv.* sharply, 215.  
*Smerte*, *v.* to smart, 2647.  
*Smot*, *pa. t.* smote, 2654.  
*So*, a large tub, 933. See *So* in Halliwell. Dan. *saa*, a pail.  
*So*, *conj.* as, 279, 349, *et pass.*  
*So* as, although, 337.  
*Sobbing*, *n.* sobbing, 234.  
*Softe*, *adj.* of a mild disposition, 991.  
*Softe*, *adv.* gently, 2618.  
*Somdel*, *adj.* somewhat, in some measure, 240. Sumdel, 450, 497, 1054, 2306, 2950.  
*Sond*, *n.* sand, 708, 735.  
*Sone*, *n.* son, 660, 839. Sones, *pl.* 2980.  
*Sone*, *adv.* soon, 78, &c.; so soon as, 1354.  
*Sor*, *n.* grief, 234; pain, sore, 1988.  
*Sor* (*for* *Sori*), *adj.* bad, wretched, 2229.  
*Sorful*, *adj.* sorrowful, 151, 2541.  
*Sori*, *adj.* grieved, sad, 151, 477.  
*Sorwe*, *n.* sorrow, 57, 1374.  
*Soth*, *n.* truth, 36, 647, 2008, &c.  
*Soplike*, *adv.* truly, 276.  
*Sotshiþe*, *n.* folly, 2099. The line means 'or participate in any folly'; and the word is miswritten *shotshiþe*. For *sotschiþe* see *sot-schiþe* in Stratmann; and cf. St. Kath. 322, 1937.  
*Soule*, *n.* soul, 245, 1422.  
*Soupe*, *v.* Fr. to sup, 1766.  
*Southe*, *pa. t. subj.* should seek, 1085.  
*Sowe*, *Sowen*. See *Se*, *v.*  
*Sowel*, *n.* victuals, 767, 1143, 2905. Properly, anything eaten with bread as a relish. See *Sool* in Halliwell. A.S. *sufel*, Dan. *suul*.  
*Span-newe*, *adj.* quite new, 968. It occurs in Chauc. *Troil.* iii. 1665.  
*Sparkede*, *pa. t.* sparkled, 2144.  
*Spede*, *v.* to speed, prosper, 93, 1634. *Spedde*, *pa. t.* 756.  
*Speke*, *n.* speech, 946, 1065.  
*Speke*, *Speken*, *v.* to speak, 113, 125, 326, 369, 548, 1070, &c. *Spak*, *pa. t.* spoke, 2389, 2968. *Speken*, *pp.* spoken, 2369.  
*Spelle*, *n.* story, relation, 338.  
*Spelle*, *v.* to relate, tell forth, 2530; 1 *p. pr. s.* 15.  
*Spen* (*for* *Spende*), *spent*, 1819.  
*Sperd*, *pp.* barred, bolted, 414; *Sperde*, *pl.* 448.  
*Spere*, *n.* spear, 380, 489, 624; *Speres*, *pl.* 2322.  
*Spille*, *v.* to perish, 2422. Of limes spille, suffer the loss of limbs, 86.  
*Spired*, *pp.* speired, inquired, 2620.  
*Spore*, *n.* spur, 2569; *Spures*, *pl.* 1676.  
*Sprauleden*, *pa. t. pl.* sprawled, 475.  
*Sprede*, *v.* spread out, extend, 95.  
*Sprong*, *pa. t.* sprang, 91, 959. See the note. *Sprongen*, *pl.* 870. *Sprungen*, *pp.* risen, 1131.  
*Sprote*, *n.* sprout, twig, 1142.  
*Spuse*, *Spusen*, *v.* to espouse, marry, 1123, 1170; 2 *pr. s. subj.* 2875. *Spusede*, *pa. t. s.* espoused, 2887. *Spused*, *pp.* 1175, 2928. *Spuset*, 1266.  
*Spusing*, *n.* espousals, marriage, 1164, 1177, 2886, 2888.  
*Stac*, *n.* a stack or heap, 814.  
*Staf*, *n.* staff, 2517.  
*Stake*, *n.* stake, post, 2830.  
*Stalworpi*, *Stalworpe*, *Stalwrthe*, *adj.* strong, valiant, courageous, 24, 904, 1027, 2027, &c. *Stalworpeste*, *sup.* 25.  
*Stan-ded*, *adj.* dead as a stone,

completely dead, 1815; cf. l. 928.

**Star**, *n.* Icel. a species of sedge, 939. Icel. *stórr*; Sw. *starr*; Dan. *stær*. See the note.

**Stareden**, *pa. t. pl.* stared, 1037. *Hardly miswritten for Stradden*, contended. Cf. Swed. dial. *strida*, to contend, *pa. t. stred*.

**Starinde**, *part. pr.* staring, 508.

**Stark**, *adj.* stiff, stout, strong, 341, 380, 608, 988, &c.

**Stede**, *n.* steed, horse, 10, 88, &c.

**Stede**, *n.* place, 142, 744. **Stedes**, *pl.* 1846.

**Stel**, *n.* steel, 2503, 2759.

**Stem**, *n.* a ray of light, beam, 591. It is equivalent to Glem, l. 2122. Cf. Brockett's Gl. in v. *Stime*.

**Sternes**, *n. pl.* stars, 1809. *Ageyn þe sternes* = exposed to the sky or to the open air. Icel. *stjarna*.

**Stert**, *n.* leap, 1873. Chaucer has *a stert* for immediately, C. T. 1707 (A 1705).

**Stert**, *n.* [steort, cauda] tail, 2823. *Start* is still retained in the North.

**Steuene**, *n.* voice, 1275. A.S. *stefn*.

**Sti**, *n.* road, way, 2618. A.S. *stig*.

**Stille**, *adj. pl.* quiet, 955, 2309.

**Stille**, *adv.* in a low voice, secretly, 2997.

**Stirte**, *Stirt*, *pa. t.* started, leaped, 398, 566, 873, 1049, &c. **Stirte**, *Sirten*, *pa. t. pl.* started, hurried, 599, 1964, 2609.

**Stith**, *n.* anvil, 1877. Chaucer.

**Stiward**, *n.* steward, 666.

**Ston**, *n.* stone, 1023; gem, 1633.

**Stonden**, *v.* to stand, 689.

**Stondes**, *pr. t. 3 p.* standeth, stands, 2240, 2983. **Stod**, *pa. t.* stood, 591, 679. **Stoden**, *pa. t. pl.* 1037.

**Stor**, *adj.* hardy, stout, 2383. A.S. *stōr*.

**Storie**, *n.* story, 1641.

**Stra**, *n.* straw, 315, 466. A.S. *strāw*.

**Strangest**, *adj.* strongest, 200, 1081.

**Stream**, *n.* stream, 2687.

**Strenes**, *pr. t. 3 p.* begets, 2983. From *strēonan*, gignere.

**Strie**, *n.* a hag, 998. O.F. *estrie*, Lat. *striga*, a hag, an old witch (Stratmann).

**Stronglike**, *adv.* strongly, greatly, 135.

**Strout**, *n.* dispute, contention, 1039. See below.

**Stroute**, *v.* to make a disturbance, 1779.

**Stunde**, *n.* short space of time, 2614. See *Vmbe stonde*.

**Sturgium**, *Sturgun*, *n.* sturgeon, 753, 1727.

**Suere**, *Suereth*. See *Sweren*.

**Suete**, *adj.* sweet, 1388. Cf. l. 2927.

**Sueyn**, *Sweyn*, *n.* swain, villain, 343, 1328, &c. *Sweynes*, *pl.* 371, 2195. It is generally used in opposition to *knight*.

**Suilk**, *adj.* such (things), 644. See *Swilk*.

**Sule**. See *Shol*.

**Sumdel**. See *Somdel*.

**Sunne**, *n.* sun, 436.

**Sunne-bem**, *n.* sun-beam, 592, 2123.

**Supe**, *v.* sup, 1765.

**Super**, *n.* supper, 1762.

**Sure**, *adv.* sourly, bitterly, 2005.

**Svich**, *adj.* such, 60.

**Swannes**, *n. pl.* swans, 1726.

**Sword**, *n.* sword, 1759, 2625, 2631, &c. *Swerdes*, *pl.* 1769, 2659.

**Sweren**, *v.* to swear, 494. **Suereth**, *pr. t. s.* swear, 647. **Swor**, *pa. t.* swore, 398, 2367. **Suere**, *pr. subj. 2 p. s.* 388.

**Sweyn.** See Sueyn.  
**Swike**, *n.* deceiver, traitor, 423, 551, 626, 1158, 2401, 2451, &c.  
**Swikes**, *pl.* 2834, 2990. A.S. *swica*.  
**Swike**, *adj.* deceitful, 2468.  
**A.S. swice.** [Or read *swikel*.]  
**Swikel**, *adj.* deceitful, 1108.  
**A.S. swicol.**  
**Swilen**, *v.* [*swilian*, Ps. vi. 6] to swill, to wash, 919.  
**Swilk**, *adj.* such, 1118, 1625, 2123, 2684, 2783. *Suilk*, 644.  
**Swin**, *pl.* swine, 701, 1227.  
**Swinge**, *v.* to beat, chastise (used *passively*), 214. *Swngen*, *part. pa.* beaten, 226.  
**Swink**, *n.* labour, 770, 801, 2456.  
**Swinken**, *v.* to labour, toil, 798. *Swank*, *pa. t.* laboured, 788.  
**Swire**, *n.* neck, 311. A.S. *swira*, *swōra*.  
**Swipe**, *Swype*, *adv.* very, exceedingly, 111, 217, 341. Quickly, 140, 682, 690; ful swithe, 2436, appears a pleonasm. *Swithe* forth and rathe, quickly forth, and soon, 2594.  
**Swot**, *n.* sweat, perspiration, 2662.  
**Swngen.** See *Swinge*.  
**Syre.** See *Sire*.  
**Sype**, *Sypes.* See *Sipe*.  
**Sype**, *n.* scythe, 2553, 2699.  
**Tabour**, *n.* Fr. *tabor*, 2329.  
**Tale**, *n.* number, 2026; tale, 3, 5.  
**Talevaces**, *n. pl.* Fr. large shields, 2323. See the note on l. 2320.  
**Tarst** (so in MS.), 2688; almost certainly an error for *faste*, which appears in the next line. Also, the movements of Godard are compared to the course of a lion. Stratmann takes *tarst* as an abbreviation of *at arst*, at first;

for which see Chaucer, *C. T.*, E 985.

**Tauhte**, *pa. s.* committed, 2214; but an error for *bitauhte*. See *Bitaken*.

**Tayl**, *n.* tail, 2478, 2506.

**Tēl**, *n.* deceit, reproach, 191, 2219. A.S. *tēl*.

**Telle**, *v.* to count, number, 2615; to tell, 3. Told, *pp.* numbered, 776, 1172; esteemed, 1036.

**Tene**, *n.* grief, affliction, 729.

**Ter**, *n.* tear, 285.

**Tere**, *v.* to tar (used *passively*), 707.

**Teth**, *n. pl.* teeth, 2406.

**Teyte**, *adj. pl.* 1841, 2331. Explained 'lively' by Coleridge and Morris, as if from Icel. *teitr*, hilari. The same explanation is given by Stratmann, who refers to *Allit. Poems*, ed. Morris, B. 871; and to *Gawain and the Grene Knight*, 988, 1377.

**Pa**, written for *pat*, 175.

**Panne**, *pan*, *adv.* then, 51, 1044, &c.; when, 226, 248, *et sapius*; than if (*quām*), 944, 1867.

**Par**, *pr. t. s.* need, ought, 801 (miswritten *pat* because the scribe did not understand it). Short for *tharf*; see *purte*, the *pa. tense*.

**Par** (for *pat*), 130. See the note.

**Paro**, *adv.* there, 2481, 2739. Cf. *per*, *þore*.

**Parne**, *v.* to lose, be deprived of, 2492, 2835. *Parnes*, *pr. t.* lacks, is deprived of, 1913. *Parned* the ded, 1687; [clearly miswritten for *þoled þe ded*, suffered death. The scribe was thinking of *þarned þe lif*; cf. l. 2492.] The verb only exists in the Sax. in the *pt. t.* *þarnode*, *Chron. Sax. An.* 1119. From Icel. *parna*, *parfna*, to lose, lack; see *þarnask* in Icel. Dict., or *þarnenn* in Gl. to *Ormulum*.

**Paue**, *v.* [*þafian*] to grant

296; bear, sustain, 2696. *Ormulum*, 5457.

**Thayn**, *n.* nobleman, 2184.  
**Thein**, 2466. **Thaynes**, *pl.* 2260.  
**Theynes**, 2194. See **Kayn**.

**þe**, *n.* thigh, 1950. **þhe**, 1984.  
**þes**, *pl.* 1903.

**þe**, *adv.* (*written for þere*), there, 142, 476, 863, 933. **þe** with, therewith, 639. See **þer**.

**þede**, *n. dat.* country, 105; place, 2890. A.S. *þeod*.

**þef**, *n.* thief, 2434; cf. 2289.  
**þhes**, *pl.* 41, 1780.

**þei**, *pron.* they, 1020, 1195, &c.

**þei**, *conj.* though, 1966. **þey**, 807, 992, 1165, 2501. **þe**, 1682. See **pou**.

**þenke**, *pr. subj.* think, 2393.  
**þenkeste**, *pr. t. 2 p.* thinkest thou, 578.

**þenne**, *adv.* thence, 777, 1185.

**þer**, *adv.* where, 318, 448, &c.; there, *passim*; the place whence, 1740. **þerafter**, after that, 135. **þerfore**, on account of it, 776, 819. **þerinne**, therein, 535, &c. **þerhinne**, 322. **þerof**, **þeroffe**, thereof, 372, 466, 1068, &c. **þerþoru**, by that means, 1098. **þertil**, **þerto**, thereto, 396, 1041, 1045. **þer-ute**, outside, exposed, 1809. **þerwit**, **þerwith**, therewith, 1031, 1046. See **þe**, **pore**.

**þere**, *pron.* there, 1350.

**þerl** (*for þe erl*), the earl, 178.

**þerne**, *n.* a servant, maid-servant, as a term of contempt, 298. Icel. *þerna*, G. *diene*; allied to A.S. *þiwen*, a maid-servant; see *Dirne* in *Kluge*.

**þerteken**, *adv.* moreover, 2878. From **þer**, there, and *to eken*, in addition, shortened to *teken*. We again find *teken* (i.e. in addition) in *Old English Homilies*, ed. Morris, Part I. p. 287, l. 2. Cf. *St. Marherete*, ed. Cockayne

(E. E. T. S., 1866), s. v. *teken*, p. 110.

**þer-yen**, there against, 2271.

**þet**, *conj.* that (*quidd*), 330.

**þet**, *pron.* that, 879.

**þepen**, **þepe**, *adv.* thence, 2498, 2629.

**þeu**, *n.* one in a servile condition or station, 2205; **þewe**, *pl.* 262.

**þeues**. See **þef**.

**þewes**, *n. pl.* manners, 282.

**þey**. See **þei**.

**þhes** (*for þef*), *n.* a thief, 2289.

**þi**. See **Forþi**.

**þi** (*for þy*), thy, 2725.

**þicke**, *adv.* thickly, fully, in great number, 1172.

**þicke**, *adj.* thickly made, stout, 1648.

**þider**, *adv.* thither, 850, 1012, 1021, &c.

**þigge**, *v.* [*þigan*] to receive, accept; hence, to beg, 1373. This word is chiefly preserved in the Sc. writers. 'Thyggyng or beggyng, *Mendicacio*.' — *Prompt. Parv.*

**þis** (*for þis is*), 606.

**þis** (*for þise*), these, 1145.

**þisternesne**, *n.* darkness, 2191.

**þhit** (*for þiht*), *pp.* intended, purposed, designed, 2990. The rhyme shows that the word should have been written *tiht*, which is equivalent to *ticht* or *tiht*, a *pp.* signifying *intended, purposed, designed*, which is the exact sense here required. Stratmann, s. v. *tihien*, gives five instances of it, of which one is—'To brew the Crystene mennys banys Hy hadden *tyght*'; Octovian, 1476. See the note.

**þo**, *pron.* those, 1918, 2044.

**þo** (*for þou*), *pron.* thou, 388.

**þo**, *adv.* then, 930; when, 1047.

**pore**, *adv.* there, 742, 922, 1014, &c. **þortil**, thereto, 1443. **þorwit**, therewith, 100. See **þe**, **þer**.

pornebakke, *n.* thornback (fish), 759, 832.

poru, *adv.* and *prep.* through, 627, 774, 848, &c. poruth, 1065, 2786. porw, 264, 367, 2646. puruth, 52.

poruthlike (for purh-üt-like), *adv.* searchingly, 680.

pou, *conj.* though, 124, 299, &c. po, 1020. Thow (for Althow), although, 1669. See *pei*.

pouote, *pa. t.* thought, 507, &c. Pouthte, 1073. Powthe, 1869. pouthe, 1166.

Pouote, *pa. t.* seemed, 256; read 'bat god him poucte,' 'that seemed good to him'; cf. l. 197.

Pouth, *n.* thought, 122, 1190.

pral, *n.* slave, villain, 527, 684, 1097, 1158, 2564, 2589. In an opprobrious sense, 1408.

prawe, *n.* space of time, moment, 276, 1215. A.S. *þræg*.

predde. See *Priddle*.

prette, *pa. t.* threatened, 1163.

Priddle, *adj.* third, 867; *predde*, 2633.

prie, 730. The usual meaning of *prie* is *thrice*, which gives no sense; we must read *yete* = yet.

prinne, *num.* three, 716, 761, 1977, 2091.

pristen, *priste*, *prist*, *v.* to thrust, 1152, 2019, 2725. *prist*, *part. pa.* thrust, 638.

Thriue, *v.* thrive, 280, 514.

protes, *n. pl.* throats, 471, 1413.

pu, *pron.* thou, 532, &c. pou, 527, &c. po, 388. pw, 1316.

Tow, 1322. Tu, 2903. It is often joined to the verb which precedes, as *Shaltow*, *Wiltu*, &c. The *gen.* is *þin*, 1128; the *acc.* is *þe*, 529.

purte, *pt. t. s.* need, might, 10. It answers to the A.S. *þurfan*, *pt. t. ic þorfte*, Icel. *þurfa*, *pt. t. þurfii*, Mæso-Goth. *þaurban*, *pt. t. þaurfta*. See *Ormulum*, l. 116164. See *par*.

puruth. See *poru*.

pus (for pis), 785, 2419, 2586; only in comp. *pus-gate*; see *Gate*.

Tid, *n.* time, hour, 2100.

Tiding, *n.* news, a message, 1926.

Til, *prep.* to, 141, 761, 864, &c. See *Intil*, *þertil*.

Til (for Telle), *v.* to tell, 1348.

Tilled, *part. pa.* obtained, acquired (lit. drawn, enticed), 438. Cf. A.S. *for-tyllan*.

Tinte, *pa. t.* lost, 2023. From Icel. *þyna*, to lose.

Tirnedon, *pa. t. pl.* rolled back, 603. See note on *terve* in my *Gloss.* to Chaucer, vi. 258; and see *To-turuen*.

Tipandes, *n. pl.* tidings, 2279. Icel. *þibindi*.

To-, in composition with verbs, usually has the force of the Lat. *dis-*.

To-brised, *part. pa.* very much bruised, 1950. (See *Brisen*.)

To-cruhse, *inf.* crush in pieces, 1992. To-deyle, *pr. pl.* take part in, 2099. (See *Deled*.)

To-drawn, *pp.* dragged or pulled to death, 2001. (See *Drou*.)

To-frusshe, *inf.* break in pieces, 1993. To-hewen, *pp.* hewn in pieces, 2001.

To-riuen, *pp.* torn or riven in pieces, 1953. To-rof, *pa. t.* burst open, 1792.

To-shiuere, *inf.* shiver in pieces, 1993. To-shiuered, *pp.* shivered to pieces, 2667.

To-tere, *inf.* tear in pieces, 1839. To-torn, *pp.* torn in pieces, 1948, 2021.

To-tused, *pp.* entirely rumpled or tumbled, 1948. In one case only we find it to be merely the *prep.*

to in composition; viz. in To-yede, *pa. t.* went to, 765. (See *Yede*.)

To, *adv.* too, 304, 689, 691, &c. To, *n.* toe, 1743, 1847, &c.

Tos, *pl.* 898, 2163.

To, *num.* two, 2664.

To, *prep.* follows its case in ll. 325, 526.

To-früsshe, *v.* [Fr. *froisser*] to dash or break in pieces, 1993.

He suld sone be to-fruschyt all.  
*Barbour*, x. 597.

Togidere, Togydere, *adv.* together, 1128, 1181, 2683, 2891.

Tok, *pa. t.* took, 354, 467, 537.  
Toke, *pa. t.* 2 *p.* 1216. Token, *pa. t. pl.* 1194. Token under fote, 1199, marched over.

To-morwen, to-morrow, 2011.

To-nicht, to-night, 533, 1955.  
Tonith, 2003.

Totede, *pa. t.* peeped, looked, 2106. This verb is thrice found in *P. Ploughman's Crede*, ll. 142, 168, 339. A.S. *tōtian*.

To-turuen, *v.* skin, 918. See *Tirueden*.

To-tused, *pp.* entirely rumbled or tumbled, 1948. See *Nares*, in *v. Tose*, and *Tousle* in *Jamieson*. Cf. *G. sausen*.

Toun, *n.* town, 1750, &c. Tun, 764, 1001, &c. Tunes, *pl.* 397, 1444, 2277.

Tour, *n.* Fr. tower, 448, 2073.

Trayson, *n.* treason, 312, 444.  
Traysoun, 1090.

Traytour, *n.* traitor, 692, 2757.

Tre, *n.* a bar or staff of wood, 1022, 1821, 1843, 1882, &c. Dorette, 1806, 1968, bar of the door.

Trechery, *n.* treachery, 443, 1089.

Trewe, *adj.* true, 179, 1756.

Tristen, *v.* to trust, 253.

Tro. See *Trowe*.

Trome, *n.* [*truma*] a troop, company, 8.

Trone, *n.* throne (of heaven), 1316.

Trowse, *n.* to believe, trust, 1656. Tro, 2862. Trowede, *pa. t.* believed, 382.

Trusse, *v.* [Fr. *trousser*] to pack, to truss, 2017.

Tuenti, *num.* twenty, 259.

Tumberel, *n.* a porpoise, 757.

The Sw. *tumlare*, a porpoise, *lit.* a tumbler, suggests that the name may be given from its *tumbling* or *rolling*. The Dan. *tumler* is a dolphin, or a tumbler-pigeon.

Tun. See *Toun*.

Turbut, *n.* turbot, 754.

Turnen, *v.* to turn, recover, 154.

Turues, *n. pl.* turf, peat, 939.

Twel (for Twelve), 1054, 2455.

Ueneysun, *n.* Fr. venison, 1726.

Umbe stonde, *adv.* once upon a time, formerly, 2297. It is equivalent to *umbe-while* or *umwhile*, Sc. *umquhile*. See *Stunde*. Cf. A.S. *ymbe*, about, after.

Umbistode, *pa. t.* stood around, 1875. See *Bistode*, *Stonden*.

Vn-bi-yeden (for *Umbl-yeden*), *pa. t. pl.* surrounded, 1842. See above, and see *Yede*.

Vnblithe, *adj.* unhappy, 141.

Unbounden, *pa. t. pl.* unbound, 601.

Underfong, 115. Miswritten for *underfond*, *pa. t.* of *underfinden*, to find out; *Virtues and Vices* (E.E.T.S.), p. 99, l. 32. See note, p. 106.

Understonde, *v.* to receive, 2814. Understod, *pa. t.* received, 1760. Understonde, *pr. subj.* receive, 1159. So in *K. Horn*, 245, ed. Ritson:—

Horn child thou *understond*,

Tech him of harpe and song:

where the MS. *Land* 108 reads *underfonge*. See Hall's ed., pp. 14, 15.

Under-toke, *pa. t. subj.* would take in charge, receive, keep, 377.

Undo, *v.* unfasten, 2739.

Unker, *pron. g. c. dual*, of you two, 1882. A.S. *uncer*.



Vnkeueleden, *pa. t. pl.* un-  
gagged, 601. See Keuel.

Unkyndelike, *adv.* unsuitably,  
1250.

Vnornelike, *adj.* basely, or de-  
gradingly, 1941. The only word  
in the Sax. remaining to which it  
can be referred, is *unornlic*, tritus,  
Jos. 9. 5; cf. A.S. *unorne*, old,  
worn out. The following instances  
also approach the same stock:

Ne speke y nout with Horne,  
Nis he nout so *vnorne*.

*K. Horn*, 337 (Harl. MS.).

Mi stefne is bold & noȝt *vnorne*,  
Heo is ilich one grete horne,  
& þin is ilich one pipe.

*Hule and Nizgingale*, l. 317.

[Ihre shows that Icel. and Su-  
Goth. *orna* mean to acquire vital  
heat, to grow warm. Hence, per-  
haps, *unorne* means unfervent,  
spiritless, feeble, old. Thus, in  
the *Hule and Nizgingale* it means  
*feeble, weak*; in Jos. 9. 5, it is used  
of old, worn-out shoes. In the  
*Ormulum*, *unorne* occurs fre-  
quently, in the sense of *poor, mean*,  
*feeble*; see ll. 828, 3668; also  
*unornelig*, meaning *meanly*,  
*humbly, obscurely*, in ll. 3750,  
4858, 7525, 8251. See A.S. *orne*  
in Toller.]

Unride, *adj.* [*ungerȳde*]. It is  
here used in various significations.  
Large, cumbersome or rough (of a  
garment), 964; unwieldy (of the  
bar of a door), 1795; deep, wide  
(of a wound), 1981, 2673; nume-  
rous (of the nobility), 2947. Un-  
rīdeste, *sup.* deepest, widest, 1985.  
In the second sense we find it in  
*Sir Tristram*, l. 2773:

• Dartes wel *unride*  
Beliagog set gan.

And in *Guy of Warwick*, ap. Ellis,  
*M. R.*, v. 2, p. 79:

A targe he had ywrought full well,  
Other metal was ther none but  
steel,

A mickle and *unrede*.

In the fourth sense we have these  
examples:

Opon Ingland for to were  
With stout ost and *unride*.

*Horn Childe*, ap. Ritson,  
*M. R.*, v. 3, p. 283.

Schir Rannald rough to the renk  
ane rout wes *unryde*.

*Sir Gaw. and Gol.* ii. 25.

The soudan gederet an ost *unryde*.

*K. of Tars*, 142.

Cf. also *Sir Guy*, Ec. iv. in Gar-  
rick's Collect.: 'Amerant drue  
out a swerde *unryde*.' In the  
sense of huge, or unwieldy, we may  
also understand it in *Sir Tr.* ll.  
2366, 2722; *Guy of Warw.* ap.  
Ellis, *M. R.*, v. 2, p. 78; *Horn*  
*Childe*, ap. Ritson, v. 3, p. 295.  
In R. Brunne, p. 174, it expresses  
loud, tremendous.

Vnrith, *n.* injustice, 1369.

Unwrast, Unwraſte, *adj.* [*un-  
wräst*] feeble, worthless, 2821;  
rotten, 547. This word occurs in  
the *Saxon Chron.* an. 1052 (E),  
ed. Thorpe, p. 321, applied to a  
rotten ship. Cf. A.S. *wräst*, firm.

Uoys, *n.* voice, 1264.

Up-drow, *pa. t.* drew up, 932.

Vre, *pron.* our, 13, 596, &c.

Vt, *prep.* out, 89, 155, &c. Uth,  
346, 1178. A.S. *ut*.

Ut-bidde (*for* Ut-bede), *v.* sum-  
mon out, 2548. See Bede.

Vt-drow, *pa. t.* out-drew, 1794,  
2632. Ut-drawe, Ut-drawn, *pp.*  
1802, 2631. See Drou.

Uten, *adv.* out (exhausted), 842.  
But it is doubtful if *uten* can be  
thus used; hence Zupitza proposed  
to read *eten*, i.e. eaten up.

Uten, *adv.* without, foreign,

as in *Uten-laddes*, 2153, 2580, foreigners.

*Ut-lawes*, *n. pl.* outlaws, 41.

*Ut-lede*. See *Lede*.

*Utrage*, *n. Fr.* outrage, 2837.

*W*. See *Hw*.

*Wa*, *n.* woe, wail, 465.

*Wade*, *v.* to pass, go, 2645.

*Wagge*, *v.* to wield, brandish, 89.

*Waiten*, *Wayten*, *Wayte*, *v. Fr.* to watch, 512, 1754, 2070.

*Waken*, *v.* to watch, 630.

*Waked*, *pp.* watched, kept awake, 2999.

*Wakne*, *v.* to wake, awaken, 2164.

*Wan*, *adv.* when, 1962.

*Wantede*, *pa. t.* lacked, 712, 1243.

*War*, *adj.* aware, 788, 2139.

*Warant*, *n.* warrant, surety, 2067.

*Ware*, *n.* ware, merchandise, 52, 765.

*Warie*, *pr. s. subj.* curse, 433.

*Waried*, *pp.* cursed, 434.

*Warne*, *ger.* to warn, 2834.

*Warp*, *pa. t.* threw, cast, 1061.

*Washen*, *v.* to wash, 1233.

*Was te* (*for Was þe*), 87.

*Wastel*, *n. Fr.* cake, or loaf made of finer flour, 878. *Wastels*, *pl.* 779. See *Chaucer*.

*Wat*, *pron.* See *Hwat*.

*Wat*, said?, 1674. (A false form; cf. l. 595.)

*Wawe*, *v. wall*, 474, 2470.

*Wowe*, 1963, 2078. By the aid of Moor's Suffolk Gl. we are enabled to ascertain the meaning of an expression which is not yet obsolete. 'By the walls: Dead and not buried. "A' lie bi' the walls"—said, I believe, only of a human subject.' (This remark only applies to l. 474. In ll. 1963, 2470,

the phrase refers to the benches placed round the walls in the great hall, whereon men slept at night, and sat in council by day.)

*Waxen*. See *Wex*.

*Wayke*, *adj. pl.* weak, 1012.

*Wayte*, *Wayten*. See *Waiten*.

*We*, 115, 287, 392, 772. An error of the scribe for *wel*; but its frequent repetition may cause it to be doubted, whether the *l* may not have been purposely dropped.

*Wede*, *v.* rush furiously, run madly, gallop, 2387, 2641. *A.S. wēdan*, to be mad; cf. *wind wēdende fareþ*, the wind is furious.

*Wede*, *n.* clothing, garments, 94, 323, 861, 2825. In very general use formerly, and still preserved in the phrase, a widow's *weds*.

*Weddeth* (*for Wedded*), 1127; cf. l. 2770.

*Wei*, *n.* way, road, 772; *Weie*, *dat.* 952.

*Weilawa*, *Weilawei*, *interj.* woe! alas! 462, 570. Cf. *A.S. wā lā wā*, woe, lo! woe; now corrupted into *wellaway*.

*Wel*, *adv.* full, *passim*. *Wel* sixti, 1747. *Wel o-bon*; see *On*.

*Wel* with me, 2878. *Wol*, 185.

*Wel*, *n.* weal, wealth, prosperity (*for wel ne for wo*), 2777.

*Welde*, *v.* to wield, govern (a kingdom), 129, 175; (a weapon), 1436; (possessions), 2034. *Weldes*, *pr. t. 2 p.* wieldest, governest, 1359.

*Welcome*, welcome, 1213.

*Welle*, *n.* a well, 1851.

*Wende*, *v.* to go, 1346, 1705, 2629. *Wenden*, *pr. t. pl. subj.*

1344. *Wende*, *pr. t. pl. 2 p.* go,

1440. *Wend*, *part. pa.* turned, 2138.

*Wene*, *i pres. sing.* ween, think, 655, 840, 1260, &c. *Wenes*, *pr. t. 2 p.* thinkest, 598. *Wenestu*, thinkest thou, 1787. *Wend*, *Wende*, *pa. t.* thought, supposed, 374, 524,

1091, 1803, &c. Wenden, *pa. t. pl.* 1197, 2547.

Wepen, *pa. t. pl.* wept, 152, 401.

Wepne, *n.* weapon, 89, 93, 490, 1436, &c.

Wer (*for Were*), 1097.

Werd, *n.* world, 1290, 2241, 2335, 2792, 2968. O worde, in the world, 1349. Cf. *Ward* = world, in *Lancelot of the Laik*, and *Werd* in *Gen. and Exod.*, ed. Morris, ll. 280, 591.

Were, *v.* [*werian*] to defend, 2152, 2298.

Were, should be, 2782. Weren, 3 *p. pl.* were, 156, &c.

Weren, 784. The MS. can hardly be right; *se-weren* = sea-pools (lit. sea-weirs) is unsatisfactory; omit *weren*. See note.

Werewed, *part. pa.* worried, choked, killed, 1915. We should probably repeat *pore*, and insert a mark of interrogation, thus—'Hwat didde he pore? pore weren he werewed,' i.e. 'What did they there? There were they slain.' Spelt *wirwed*, 1921. Cf. *Du worgen*, and see *wurzen* in *Stratmann*.

Werkes, *pl.* works, deeds, 34.

Werne, *v.* to refuse, deny, 1345. Werne, *pr. t.* 3 *p. s. subj.* refuses, forbids, 926.

Wessey1, *n.* wassail, 1246.

Wesseylen, *pr. t. pl.* wassail, 2098. Wosseyled, *part. pa.* drunk their healths, 1737.

Weper (*for Hweper*), whether, 292.

Wex, *pa. t.* waxed, grew, 281.

Waxen, *pp.* grown, 302, 791.

Wicke, Wikke, Wike, *adj.* wicked, vile, 66, 319, 425, 665, 688, &c. Swithe wicke, 965, very mean. Swipe wicke clothes, 2458, very mean clothing. Wicke wede, 2825, mean clothing.

Wieth, With, *n.* [*wiht*] whit, bit, small part, 97, 1763, 2500.

Wieth, *adj.* courageous, stout, active, 344. With, 1008, 1064, 1651, 1692, &c. Wicteste, *sup. 9.* An epithet used universally by the ancient poets. See *Wiht* in *Stratmann*.

Wider, *adv.* whither, where, 1139.

Wif, *n.* wife, 2860; woman, 1713. Wiues, *pl.* 2, 2855.

Wike, Wikke. See *Wicke*.

Wil, *adv.* while, 6.

Wil, *adj.* at a loss, uncertain how to proceed, 863; at a loss, without experience, 1042. V. Jam. who derives it from *Su.-G. wild*, *Icel. villr*. It is radically the same with *wild*.

Wile, will, *pr. s.* 352, 485, &c. Wilte, 528, 1135, wilt thou; Wiltn, 681, 905. Wilen, *pl.* 732, 920, 1345, 2817, &c.

Wille, *n.* will, 528, 953.

Wimman, *n.* woman, 1139, 1168, 1720, 2713, &c. Wman, 174, 281. Wymman, 1156.

Win, *n.* wine, 1729. Wyn, 2341.

Winne, *n.* joy, happiness, 660, 2965.

Wirchen, *v.* to work, cause, 510.

Wirwed. See *Werewed*.

Wia, *adv.* wise, prudent, 180, 1421, 1635; skilled, 282.

Wislike, *adv.* wisely, 274.

Wisse, *v.* to direct, ordain, advise, 104, 361. A.S. *wissian*.

Wissing, *n.* advice, 2902.

Wiste, *pa. t.* knew, 115, 358, 541, 1280, &c. Wisten, *pa. t. pl.* 1184, 1187, 1200, &c.

Wit (*for With*), *prep.* with, 52, 505, 700, 905, 1090, 2517, &c.; by, 2489. Wituten, without, 179, 247, 2860. Withuten, except, 425. With than, provided that, 532. With that, provided that, 1220.

Wit, *pron.* we two, 1336.  
 Wit-drow (*for* With-drow),  
*pa. t.* withdrew, 502. *See* With-drow.  
 Wite, [*witan*] *pres. subj.* or *imp.* provide, *see* (to it), 1316.  
 Wite, *pres. subj.* or *imp.* preserve, guard, defend, 405, 559. *See* below.  
 Wite, Witen, *v.* [*witan*] to know, 367, 626, 2201, 2786; to recollect, 2708. Wite, *pr. t. pl.* 2 *p.* know, 2808; *imp.* 3 *p.* Wite, know, 517. Wite, 3 *p. s. subj.* (if) he know, 694. Witen, *pr. t. pl.* 2 *p.* know, 2208. *See* Wot; and *see* above.  
 Witer-like, *adv.* certainly, 671.  
 Icel. *vitrliga*.  
 With, *prep.* *See* Wit.  
 With, *n.* *See* Wicth.  
 With, *adj.* *See* Wicth.  
 With, *adj.* white, 48, 1144.  
 With-drow, *pa. t.* withdrew, 498. *See* Wit-drow.  
 With-held, *pa. t.* retained, 2356, 2362.  
 With-sitten, *v.* to oppose, 1683. *And see* At-sitte.  
 With-than, provided that, 532.  
 Wlf, *n.* wolf, 573.  
 Wluine, *n.* she-wolf, 573. Dan. *ulvinde*, a she-wolf.  
 Wman. *See* Wimman.  
 Wnden, *pp.* wound, 546.  
 Wo, *pron.* who, whoso, 76, 79, 83, &c. *See* Hwo, Wom.  
 Wo, *n.* woe, sorrow, 124, 510, &c.  
 Wod, *adj.* mad, 508, 1777, 1848, &c. Wode, *pl.* 1896, 2361.  
 Wodes, *n. pl.* woods, 397, 1444.  
 Wok, *pa. t.* awoke, 2093.  
 Wol. *See* Wel.  
 Wold, *s.* meaning, significance, 1932. *See* the note.  
 Wole, *pr. s.* will, 1150. Wolde, would, 354, 367, &c. Wode, 951, 2310. Wolden, *pl.* 456, 514, 1057.

Wombes, *n. pl.* bellies, 1911.  
 Wom so, *pron.* whomso, 197.  
 Won, Wone, great number, plenty, in *phr.* *ful god won*, in great quantity (*in* 1791 *it seems to mean* with great force), 1024, 1791, 1837, 1907, 2325, 2617, 2729. *See* Wān in Stratmann.  
 Wone, *n.* (probably the same as *wene*, *Sir Tr.* ll. 1048, 1814), opinion, conjecture, 1711, 1972. Cf. l. 816, and *see* wān and wēne in Stratmann.  
 Wone, *v.* to dwell, 247, 406.  
 Woneth, *pr. t.* dwelleth, 105.  
 Wone, *pr. pl.* 1325. A.S. *wunian*.  
 Wone, *n.* custom, wont, 2151; *adj.* wont, 2297. A.S. *wuna*.  
 Wonges, *n. pl.* fields, plains, 397, 1444. Cf. l. 1360. A.S. *wang*.  
 Wore, 2 and 3 *p. s.* were, 504, 684, &c. Wore, Woren, *pl.* 237, 448, &c. It is not merely a licentious spelling.  
 Worpe, *v. imp.* may he be, 1102, 2873. Wrthe, 434. Wurpe, be, 2221.  
 Wosseyled. *See* Wesseylen.  
 Wot, Woth, *pr. t.* 1 *p.* know, 119, 213, 653, 1345, &c. Wost, *pr. t.* 2 *p.* knowest, 527, 582, 1384, 2715, &c. Woth, *pr. t.* 3 *p.* knows, 2527. Wot, 2803.  
 Wounde. *See* Wunde.  
 Woundeden, *pa. t. pl.* wounded, 2429.  
 Wowe. *See* Wawe.  
 Wrastling, *n.* wrestling, 2324.  
 Wrathe, *n.* wrath, anger, 2719, 2977. *See* Wroth.  
 Wreieres, *n. pl.* betrayers, traitors, 39. Cf. A.S. *wrēgan*, to accuse.  
 Wreken, Wreke, *v.* to avenge, revenge, 327. Wreke, *imp.* revenge (thou), 1363. Wreken (*mis-written for wreke*), 3 *p. imp.* 544. Wreke, Wreken, *pp.* revenged, 1884, 1901, 2368, 2849, 2992.

- Wringen**, *v.* to wring, 1233.  
**Wrungen**, *pa. t. pl.* 152.  
**Wringing**, *n.* wringing, 235.  
**Writ**, *n.* writing, 2486. **Writes**, *pl.* writs, letters, 136, 2275. *See* note to l. 136.  
**Wrobberes** (*for* Robberes), *n.* *pl.* robbers, 39.  
**Wronge**, *dat.* wrong, injury, 2806.  
**Wros**, *n. pl.* corners, 68. So in the *Leg. of S. Margrete*, quoted by Dr. Leyden:  
 Sche seije a wel fouler thing  
 Sitten in a wro;  
 which Jamieson derives from the Su.-G. *wraa*, angulus. Cf. Dan. *vraa*, a nook, corner; Icel. *rā*.  
**Wroth**, *adj.* wrath, angry, 1117. **Wroþe**, *pl.* 2973.  
**Wrouht**, *pp.* wrought, 2810.  
**Wrowth**, 1352. **Wrowth**, 2453.  
**Wrth**. *See* Worthe.  
**Wunde**, *n.* wound, 1980, 2673, &c. **Wounde**, 1978. **Wundes**, *pl.* 1845, 1898, 1986. **Woundes**, 1977, &c.  
**Wurpe**. *See* Worþe.  
**Wydues**, **Widuen**, *n. pl.* widows, 33, 79.  
**Y**, *pron.* I. *See* Ich.  
**Ya**, *adv.* yea, yes, 1888, 2009, 2607. **Ye**, 2606. In answer to questions *not* containing a negative.  
**Yaf**. *See* Yeue.  
**Yare**, *adj.* ready, 1391, 2788, 2954. A.S. *gearu*.  
**Yaren**, *v.* to make ready, 1350.  
**Yede**, *pa. t.* went, 6, 774, 821, &c. **Yeden**, *pa. t. pl.* 101, 889, 952.  
**Yeft**, *n.* gift, 2336. *See* Giue.  
**Yelde**, *v.* to yield, 2712; *imp.* 3 *p.* requite, 803. Very common formerly in this sense. **Yeld**, *imp.* yield (thou), 2717.  
**Yeme**, *v.* to take charge of, take care of, govern, 131, 172, 182, 209, 324, &c. **Yemed**, *pa. t.* governed, 975, 2276. **Yemed**, *pp.* 305. A.S. *gieman*.  
**Yen**. *See* Agen.  
**Yerd**, *n.* yard, 702.  
**Yerne**, *adv.* eagerly, anxiously, 153, 211, 880, 925, 1346, 1865.  
**Yerne**, 3 *p. pr. s. subj.* desire earnestly, 299.  
**Yete**, *adv.* yet, 495, 973, 996, 1043, 1288, 2334. A.S. *gieta*.  
**Yeue**, *v.* to give, 298, &c. **Yeueþ**, *pr. t.* giveth, 459. **Yif**, *imp.* give (thou), 674; 3 *p.* **Yeue**, 22; *pl.* **Yeueþ**, 911. **Yaf**, *pa. t.* gave or gave heed, 315, 419, 1174, &c. **Gaf**, 218, 418, 1311, &c. **Gouen**, *pa. t. pl.* 164 (in phr. *gouen hem ille*, gave themselves up to grief). **Giue**, *pp.* 2488; **Gouen**, 220. *Younet* = *Youn it*, *yeven it*, given it, 1643.  
**Y-here**. *See* Here, *v.*  
**Yif**, *prep.* if, 126, 377, 1974, &c. **Yf**, 1189.  
**Yif**. *See* Yeue.  
**Y-lere**. *See* Lere.  
**Ynow**, **Ynou**. *See* Inow.  
**Younet**. *See* Yeue.  
**Yours**, *pron.* yours, 2801.  
**Ys**. *See* note to l. 1174.  
**Y-se**, *v.* see, 334.  
**Yuel**, **Yuele**. *See* Iuele.  
**Yunder**, *adv.* yonder, 922.  
**Yung**, **Yunge**, *adj.* young, 30, 112, 368, 956, &c.  
**Yure**, *pron.* your, 171.

# INDEX OF NAMES TO 'HAUELOK'

[In this Index, the references under words in large capitals are in general to the *pages* of the book ; otherwise, the references are to the *lines* of the poem.]

**Adam**, 2287.

**ATHELWOLD** (*spelt* Apelwald, l. 1077), is king of England, and governs wisely, pp. 2, 3 ; feels he is dying, p. 5 ; bequeaths his daughter to the care of Godrich, pp. 7, 8 ; dies, p. 9. (Mentioned again in ll. 2709, 2803.)

**Auelok**, *another spelling of* Havelok, 1395, 1793.

**Austin**, Augustine, 1773.

**BERNARD BRUN** (i. e. Bernard Brown ; so called in ll. 1751, 1945), provides a supper for Havelok, p. 58 ; his house attacked by thieves, p. 59 ; fights against them, p. 62 ; tells Ubbe how well Havelok fought, p. 65.

**BERTRAM** (*named in* l. 2898), is cook to the Earl of Cornwall, and employs Havelok, pp. 33, 34 ; is made Earl of Cornwall, and marries Leive, Grim's daughter, p. 99.

**BIRKABEYN** (*spelt* Bircabein, l. 494 ; *gen.* Birkabeynes, 2150, 2209, 2296), is king of Denmark, p. 13 ; commends his three children to Godard, p. 15 ; dies, p. 15 ; his son Havelok's resemblance to him, p. 72.

**Cestre** (Chester), 2607, 2859, 2896.

**Cornwayle** (Cornwall), 178, 2532, 2908 ; Cornwalie, 884.

**Crist**, 16, &c. ; — **Krist**, 22 ; *gen.* Kristes, 2797.

**Dauy**, saint, St. David, 2867.

**Denemark** (Denmark), 340, 381, 386, &c.

**Denshe**, *sing. adj.* Danish, 1403 ; *pl.* 2575, 2693, 2938, 2945. **Danshe**, 2689.

**Douere** (Dover), 139, 265. **Doure**, 320.

**Elfred**. See **Helfed**.

**Engelond** (England), 59, 202, 250, &c. ; — **Engellond**, 1093 ; — **Engelonde**, 208 ; — **Englond**, 1270 ; — **Engeland**, 108, 610 ; — **Hengelond**, 999 ; *gen.* Engelandes, 63.

**Englishe**, *pl. adj.* (*followed by men*), 2766, 2795 ; — **Englis** (*used absolutely*), 254 ; — **Henglishe**, 2945.

**Eue**, Eve, 2287 ; **Eues**, Eve's, 2045.

**Giffin** [*Qu.* Griffin] Galle, 2029.

**GODARD** (*gen.* Godardes, l. 2415), is made regent of Denmark, pp. 15, 16 ; shuts up Birkabeyn's children in a castle, p. 16 ; kills Swanborow and Helfed, p. 18 ; spares Havelok, p. 19 ; but after-

wards hires Grim to drown Havelok, p. 20; is attacked by Havelok, p. 80; is taken prisoner, p. 82; condemned, flayed, drawn, and hung, pp. 83, 84.

GODRICH (*spelt* Godrich, l. 178), is Earl of Cornwall, p. 7; is made regent of England, pp. 8, 9, 10; shuts Goldborough up in Dover castle, p. 12; makes Goldborough marry Havelok, p. 41; raises an army against Havelok, p. 86; excites his men, p. 87; marches to Grimsby, p. 88; fights with Ubbe, p. 89; fights with Havelok, p. 92; is taken prisoner, p. 93; taken to Lincoln, and burnt alive, pp. 95, 96.

GOLDEBORU (*or* Goldeborw, l. 2985), is daughter of King Athelwold, p. 5; is committed to the care of Godrich, p. 8; shut up in Dover castle, p. 12; is sent for to Lincoln, p. 40; is married to Havelok, p. 43; hears an angel's voice, p. 46; encourages Havelok to go to Denmark, p. 48; rejoices at Godrich's death, p. 96; is queen of England, p. 101. *See* Havelok.

GRIM, a fisher, is hired by Godard to drown Havelok, p. 20; discovers Havelok to be the right heir to the crown, p. 22; takes Havelok over to England, p. 26; founds Grimsby, p. 27; sends Havelok to Lincoln, p. 31; dies, p. 44. [In l. 2333, there seems to be an allusion to a spectacle, in which the history of Grim is represented.]

Grimes, *gen. c. of* Grim, 1343, 1392, 2867.

Grimesbi, 745, 2540, 2579, 2617, 2619;—Grimesby, 1202, 2866.

Gunnild (daughter of Grim, marries Earl Reynier of Chester), 2866, 2896.

Gunter (an English earl), 2606.

HAUELOK, son of king Birkabeyn of Denmark, p. 14; spared by Godard, p. 19; but given over by him to Grim to be drowned, p. 20; spared and fed by Grim, p. 23; goes to England, p. 26; sells fish, p. 30; works as a porter, p. 33; puts the stone, p. 38; marries Goldborough, p. 43; returns to Grimsby, p. 44; his dream, p. 47; returns to Denmark, p. 52; trades there, p. 53; is noticed by Ubbe, p. 55; defends Bernard's house against thieves, pp. 59–63; is known to be heir of Denmark by a miraculous light, p. 69; is dubbed knight by Ubbe, p. 77; is king of Denmark, p. 78; defeats Godard, p. 81; invades England, p. 85; defeats Godrich, p. 93; rewards Bertram and others, p. 98; lives to be a hundred years old, p. 99; is crowned king of England at London, p. 100; is king for sixty years, p. 100. [The story is called 'pe gest of Hauelok and of Goldeborw,' l. 2985.]

Helfed, i. e. Elfed (Havelok's sister), 411.

Hengelonde (England), 999.

Henglishe (*pl.* English), 2945.

Humber (the river), 733.

Huwe Rauen (one of Grim's sons), 1398, 1868, 2349, 2636, 2677; *spelt* Hwe, 1878.

Iohan, seint; the patron saint to whom Havelok commits his Danes, 2957; bi seint Iohan! 1112, 2563. *Spelt* Ion, 177.

Iudas, 319, 425, 482, 1133.

Kaym (*for* Kaymes), Cain's, 2045.

Lazarus (= Lazarus, *acc.* of Lazarus), 331. Cf. 'Lord'—seyd Gij—'that rered *Laseroun*,' &c. *Guy of Warwick*, ed. Zupitza, p. 592.

**Leue** (Grim's wife), 558, 576, 595, 618, 642.

**Leuiue** (Grim's daughter, married to Bertram), 2914.

**Lincolne**, 773, 847, 862, 980, 1105, 2558, 2572, 2824.

**Lindeseye** (N. part of Lincolnshire), 734.

**Lundone** (London), 2943.

**Mars** (March), 2559.

**Reyner** (earl of Chester), 2607.

**Robert þe rede** (Grim's eldest son), 1397, 1686, 1888, &c.;—Robert, 2405, 2411, &c.; *gen.* Roberdes, 1691.

**Rokesborw** (explained by Prof. Morley to mean Rokeby, but it is surely Roxburgh), 265;—Rokesburw, 139. Roxburgh is spelt

*Rokesburgh* in Walsingham, ed. Riley, i. 340, &c.

**Sathanas** (Satan), 1100, 1134, 2512.

**Swanborow** (Havelok's sister), 411.

**UBBE**, a great Danish lord, p. 53; entertains Havelok, p. 54; takes him to his castle, p. 56; does homage to Havelok, p. 75; dubs him knight, p. 77; his combat with Godrich, p. 89; is sorely wounded, p. 90.

**Willam Wendut** (one of Grim's sons), 1690, 1881, 1892, 2348, 2632;—Willam Wenduth, 1398.

**Winchestre**, 158, 318.

**Yerk** (York), 1178.

**Ynde**, India, 1085.



OXFORD  
PRINTED AT THE CLARENDON PRESS  
BY HORACE HART, M.A.  
PRINTER TO THE UNIVERSITY

## CLARENDON PRESS, OXFORD.



## ENGLISH LANGUAGE &amp; LITERATURE.

[All books are in extra foolscap octavo, bound in cloth, and are edited with Introduction, Notes, &c., unless otherwise described.]

## NEW ENGLISH DICTIONARY, ON HISTORICAL

PRINCIPLES: founded mainly on the materials collected by the Philological Society. Imperial 4to. Edited by Dr. MURRAY. Half-bound, 52s. 6d. each vol.

Vol. I. A, B By Dr. MURRAY.

Vol. II. C By Dr. MURRAY.

Vol. III. { D By Dr. MURRAY.

{ E By Mr. HENRY BRADLEY.

Vol. IV. F, G By Mr. HENRY BRADLEY.

Vol. V. H-K By Dr. MURRAY.

Vol. VI. L-N By Mr. H. BRADLEY.  
(In the Press.)

Vol. VII. O, P By Dr. MURRAY.  
(In the Press.)

Vol. VIII. Q-S By Mr. W. A. CRAIGIE.  
(In the Press.)

BOSWORTH and TOLLER. Anglo-Saxon Dictionary, based on the MS. Collections of the late JOSEPH BOSWORTH, D.D. Edited and enlarged by Prof. T. N. TOLLER, M.A.

Parts I-III, A-SÁR. 4to, 15s. each.

Part IV, Section I, SÁR-SWÍDRÍAN. 4to, 8s. 6d.

" " II, SWÍP-SNEL-YTMEST. 4to, 18s. 6d.

BRIGHT. The Gospel of St. Luke in Anglo-Saxon. Edited from the MSS. By JAMES W. BRIGHT, Ph.D. Extra fcap. 8vo, 5s.

MAYHEW, A. L., and SKEAT, W. W. Concise Dictionary of Middle English, from A.D. 1150 to A.D. 1580. Crown 8vo, half-roan, 7s. 6d.

SKEAT, W. W. Concise Etymological Dictionary of the English Language. New Edition. Re-written and re-arranged. Crown 8vo, 5s. 6d.

SWEET, H. Student's Dictionary of Anglo-Saxon. Sm. 4to, 8s. 6d. net.

EARLE, J. Philology of the English Tongue. By J. EARLE, M.A. Fifth Edition. 8s. 6d.

— Book for the Beginner in Anglo-Saxon. 4th Ed. 2s. 6d.

MORRIS and SKEAT. Specimens of Early English—

Part I. From Old English Homilies to King Horn (A.D. 1150 to A.D. 1300). By R. MORRIS, LL.D. Third Edition. 9s.

Part II. From Robert of Gloucester to Gower (A.D. 1298 to A.D. 1395). By R. MORRIS, LL.D., and W. W. SKEAT, Litt.D. Third Edition. 7s. 6d.

SKEAT, W. W. Specimens of English Literature, from the 'Ploughmans Crede' to the 'Shepheardes Calendar.' 7s. 6d.

— Principles of English Etymology—

*First Series.* The Native Element. Second Edition. 8vo, 10s. 6d.

*Second Series.* The Foreign Element. 8vo, 10s. 6d.

— Notes on English Etymology. Crown 8vo. 8s. 6d. net.

— Primer of English Etymology. 1s. 6d.

— Twelve Facsimiles of Old-English Manuscripts. 4to, 7s. 6d.

SWEET, H. New English Grammar, Logical and Historical—

Part I. Introduction, Phonology, and Accidence. Crown 8vo, 10s. 6d.

Part II. Syntax. Crown 8vo, 3s. 6d.

— Short Historical English Grammar. 4s. 6d.

— Primer of Historical English Grammar. 2s.

— History of English Sounds from the Earliest Period. 8vo, 14s.

— First Steps in Anglo-Saxon. 2s. 6d.

— Anglo-Saxon Primer, with Grammar, Notes, and Glossary. Eighth Edition. 2s. 6d.

— Anglo-Saxon Reader. In Prose and Verse. Seventh Edition, Revised and Enlarged. Crown 8vo, 9s. 6d.

— A Second Anglo-Saxon Reader. 4s. 6d.

— Old English Reading Primers—

Selected Homilies of Ælfric. Stiff covers, 2s.

Extracts from Alfred's Orosius. Stiff covers, 2s.

— First Middle English Primer, with Grammar and Glossary. Second Edition. 2s. 6d.

— Second Middle English Primer. Extracts from Chaucer, with Grammar and Glossary. 2s. 6d.

— Primer of Spoken English. 3s. 6d.

— Primer of Phonetics. 3s. 6d.

— Manual of Current Shorthand, Orthographic and Phonetic. Crown 8vo, 4s. 6d.

TANCOCK, O. W. Elementary English Grammar and Exercise Book. Third Edition. 1s. 6d.

— English Grammar and Reading Book for Lower Forms in Classical Schools. Fourth Edition. 3s. 6d.

## A SERIES OF ENGLISH CLASSICS.

CHAUCER. Prologue; Knights Tale; Nonne Prestes Tale.

Edited by R. MORRIS, LL.D. New Edition, with Collations and Additional Notes, by W. W. SKEAT, Litt.D. 2s. 6d.

EDITED BY W. W. SKEAT, LITT.D., ETC.

— Prologue to the Canterbury Tales. (School Edition.) 1s.

— Prioresses Tale; Sir Thopas; Monkes Tale; Clerkes Tale; Squieres Tale, &c. Seventh Edition. 4s. 6d.

— Tale of the Man of Lawe; Pardoner's Tale; Second Nonnes Tale; Chanouns Yemannes Tale. New Edition, Revised. 4s. 6d.

— Minor Poems. Crown 8vo, 10s. 6d.

- CHAUCER.** Legend of Good Women. Crown 8vo, 6s.  
 — Hous of Fame. Crown 8vo, 2s.
- LANGLAND.** Vision of William concerning Piers the Plowman, by W. LANGLAND. By W. W. SKEAT, Litt.D. Sixth Ed. 4s. 6d.
- HAVELOK.** The Lay of Havelok the Dane. By W. W. SKEAT, Litt.D. With two Facsimiles. 4s. 6d.
- GAMELYN, THE TALE OF.** By W. W. SKEAT, Litt.D. 1s. 6d.
- WYCLIFFE.** New Testament in English according to the Version by WYCLIFFE, c. A.D. 1380. Revised by J. PURVEY, c. 1388. With Introduction, &c., by W. W. SKEAT, Litt.D. 6s.
- Job, Psalms, Proverbs, Ecclesiastes, and Song of Solomon: according to the Wycliffite Version made by N. DE HEREFORD, c. A.D. 1381. Revised by J. PURVEY, c. A.D. 1388. By the Same. 3s. 6d.
- MINOT.** The Poems of Laurence Minot. By JOSEPH HALL, M.A. Second Edition. 4s. 6d.
- SPENSER.** The Faery Queene. Books I and II. By G. W. KITCHIN, D.D., with Glossary by A. L. MAYHEW, M.A. 2s. 6d. each.
- HOOKER.** Ecclesiastical Polity, I. By R. W. CHURCH, M.A. 2s.
- MARLOWE.** Edward II. By O. W. TANCOCK, M.A. Third Edition. Paper covers, 2s.; cloth, 3s.
- MARLOWE & GREENE.** MARLOWE's Dr. Faustus, and GREENE's Friar Bacon and Friar Bungay. By A. W. WARD, Litt.D. Fourth Edition, Revised. Crown 8vo, 6s. 6d.
- SHAKESPEARE.** Select Plays. Edited by W. G. CLARK, M.A., and W. ALDIS WRIGHT, D.C.L.  
 Merchant of Venice. 1s.  
 Richard the Second. 1s. 6d.  
 Macbeth. 1s. 6d.  
 Hamlet. 2s.  
 Edited by W. ALDIS WRIGHT, D.C.L.  
 Tempest. 1s. 6d.  
 As You Like It. 1s. 6d.  
 Midsummer Night's Dream. 1s. 6d.  
 Twelfth Night. 1s. 6d.  
 Julius Caesar. 2s.  
 Henry the Eighth. 2s.  
 Coriolanus. 2s. 6d.  
 Richard the Third. 2s. 6d.  
 Henry the Fifth. 2s.  
 King John. 1s. 6d.  
 King Lear. 1s. 6d.  
 Much Ado about Nothing. 1s. 6d.  
 Henry the Fourth, Part I. 2s.
- SHAKESPEARE AS A DRAMATIC ARTIST.** Third Edition. By R. G. MOULTON, M.A. Cr. 8vo, 7s. 6d.  
 — Chapters on Macbeth. Being an extract from *Shakespeare as a Dramatic Artist*. By R. G. MOULTON, M.A. Crown 8vo, 9d. net.
- BACON.** Advancement of Learning. By W. ALDIS WRIGHT, D.C.L. New Edition. Crown 8vo, 3s. 6d.
- The Essays. By S. H. REYNOLDS, M.A. 8vo, 12s. 6d.
- MILTON.** Areopagitica. By JOHN W. HALES, M.A. 3s.
- The Poetical Works of John Milton. Edited, after the Original Texts, by the Rev. H. C. BEECHING, M.A. Crown 8vo, with Portrait and Facsimile Title-pages. (a) Ordinary paper, cloth, 3s. 6d.; (b) India Paper, cloth extra, 8s.; and in leather bindings.
- Poems. By R. C. BROWNE, M.A. 2 Vols. 6s. 6d.  
 Separately, Vol. I. 4s.; Vol. II. 3s. Paper covers, Lycidas, 3d. Comus, 6d.  
 By OLIVER ELTON, B.A.  
 Lycidas, 6d. L'Allegro, 4d. Il Penseroso, 4d. Comus, 1s.

- MILTON. *Paradise Lost*. Book I. By H. C. BEECHING, M.A.  
Book II. By E. K. CHAMBERS, B.A., 1s. 6d. each. (Books I and II together, 2s. 6d.)  
— *Samson Agonistes*. By J. C. COLLINS, M.A. 1s.  
— *Prosody*. By ROBERT BRIDGES. Also, *Classical Metres in English Verse*. By W. J. STONE. Crown 8vo, 5s. net.
- BUNYAN. *Pilgrim's Progress*, *Grace Abounding*, *Imprisonment of Mr. John Bunyan*. Edited by B. VENABLES, M.A. Second Edition, Revised, by MABEL PEACOCK. Crown 8vo, with Portrait, 3s. 6d.
- *The Holy War*, and the *Heavenly Footman*. Edited by MABEL PEACOCK. 3s. 6d.
- CLARENDON. *History of the Rebellion*. Book VI. By T. ARNOLD, M.A. Second Edition. Crown 8vo, 5s.  
— *Selections*. By G. BOYLE, M.A. Crown 8vo, 7s. 6d.
- DRYDEN. *Select Poems*. By W. D. CHRISTIE, M.A. Fifth Edition. Revised by C. H. FIRTH, M.A. 3s. 6d.  
— *Essay of Dramatic Poesy*. By T. ARNOLD, M.A. Second Edition. 3s. 6d.
- LOCKE. *Conduct of the Understanding*. By T. FOWLER, D.D. Third Edition. 2s. 6d.
- ADDISON. *Selections from Papers in the Spectator*. By T. ARNOLD, M.A. Nineteenth Thousand. 4s. 6d.
- STEELE. *Selections from the Tatler, Spectator, and Guardian*. By AUSTIN DOBSON. Second Edition. Crown 8vo, 7s. 6d.
- SWIFT. *Selections from his Works*. With *Life*, *Introductions*, and *Notes*, by SIR HENRY CRAIK, K.C.B. 2 Vols. Crown 8vo, 7s. 6d. each.
- POPE. *Essay on Man*. Edited by MARK PATTISON, B.D. Sixth Edition. Stiff covers. 1s. 6d.  
— *Satires and Epistles*. Fourth Edition. 2s.
- THOMSON. *The Seasons*, and *The Castle of Indolence*. By J. LOGIE ROBERTSON, M.A. 4s. 6d.  
— *The Castle of Indolence*. 1s. 6d.
- BERKELEY. *Selections*. By A. C. FRASER, LL.D. Fifth Edition, Amended. Crown 8vo, 7s. 6d.
- JOHNSON. *Rasselas*. By G. BIRKBECK HILL, D.C.L. Limp, 2s.; in Parchment, 4s. 6d.  
— *Rasselas*; *Lives of Dryden and Pope*. By ALFRED MILNES, M.A. 4s. 6d.  
— *Lives of Dryden and Pope only*. Stiff covers, 2s. 6d.  
— *Life of Milton*. By C. H. FIRTH, M.A. 1s. 6d.; cloth, 2s. 6d.  
— *Vanity of Human Wishes*. By E. J. PAYNE, M.A. Paper covers, 4d.
- GRAY. *Selected Poems*. By EDM. GOSSE, M.A. Parchment, 3s.  
— *The same*, together with *Supplementary Notes for Schools*, by FOSTER WATSON, M.A. Stiff covers, 1s. 6d.  
— *Elegy*, and *Ode on Eton College*. Paper covers, 2d.

**GOLDSMITH.** *Selected Poems.* By AUSTIN DOBSON. 3s. 6d.  
In Parchment, 4s. 6d.

— *The Traveller.* By G. B. HILL, D.C.L. Stiff covers, 1s.

— *The Deserted Village.* Paper covers, 2d.

**COWPER.** *The Didactic Poems of 1782, with Selections from the Minor Pieces, A.D. 1779-1783.* By H. T. GRIFFITH, B.A. 3s.

— *The Task, with Tirocinium, and Selections from the Minor Poems, A.D. 1784-1799.* By the Same. 3s.

**BURKE.** *Thoughts on the Present Discontents; the two Speeches on America.* By E. J. PAYNE, M.A. 4s. 6d.

— *Reflections on the French Revolution.* 5s.

— *Four Letters on the Proposals for Peace with the Regicide Directory of France.* 5s.

**BURNS.** *Selected Poems.* By J. LOGIE ROBERTSON, M.A. Crown 8vo, 6s.

**KEATS.** *The Odes of Keats. With Notes, Illustrations, Analyses, and a Memoir,* by ARTHUR C. DOWNER, M.A. 3s. 6d. net.

— *Hyperion, Book I.* By W. T. ARNOLD, B.A. 4d.

**BYRON.** *Childe Harold.* By H. F. TOZER, M.A. 3s. 6d.

**SHELLEY.** *Adonais.* By W. M. ROSSETTI. Crown 8vo, 5s.

**SCOTT.** *Lady of the Lake.* By W. MINTO, M.A. 3s. 6d.

— *Lay of the Last Minstrel.* By the Same. 1s. 6d.

— *Lay of the Last Minstrel. Introduction and Canto I.* 6d.

— *Lord of the Isles.* By THOMAS BAYNE. 2s.; cloth, 2s. 6d.

— *Marmion.* By the Same. 3s. 6d.

— *Ivanhoe.* By C. E. THEODOSIUS, M.A. 2s.

— *The Talisman.* By H. B. GEORGE, M.A. Stiff covers, 2s.

**CAMPBELL.** *Gertrude of Wyoming.* By H. MACAULAY FITZGIBBON, M.A. Second Edition. Stiff covers, 1s.

**WORDSWORTH.** *The White Doe of Rylstone.* By WILLIAM KNIGHT, LL.D. 2s. 6d.

**COUCH.** *The Oxford Book of English Verse. 1250-1900.* Chosen and Edited by A. T. QUILLER-COUCH. Crown 8vo, cloth, gilt top, 7s. 6d.; Fcap. 8vo, on Oxford India Paper, cloth extra, gilt top, 10s. 6d.

*Also in leather bindings.*

**TYPICAL SELECTIONS** from the best English Writers. Second Edition. In Two Volumes. 3s. 6d. each.

**GEORGE and HADOW.** *Poems of English Country Life.* Selected and edited, with Introduction and Notes, by H. B. GEORGE, M.A., and W. H. HADOW, M.A. Crown 8vo 2s.

## GEOGRAPHY, HISTORY, &amp;c.

- BARNARD. Companion to English History (Middle Ages).  
By F. F. BARNARD, M.A. With ninety-seven Illustrations. Crown 8vo, 8s. 6d. net.
- A SCHOOL HISTORY OF ENGLAND, down to the death  
of Queen Victoria. With Maps, Plans and Bibliographies. By various writers.  
Crown 8vo, 3s. 6d.
- GEORGE. Relations of Geography and History. By H. B.  
GEORGE, M.A. With Two Maps. Crown 8vo, 4s. 6d.
- GRESWELL. History of the Dominion of Canada. By W.  
PARR GRESWELL, M.A. 1890. Crown 8vo, 7s. 6d.
- Geography of the Dominion of Canada and Newfound-  
land. 1891. 6s.
- Geography of Africa South of the Zambesi. 1892. 7s. 6d.
- HUGHES (Alfred). Geography for Schools. Part I, Practical  
Geography. With Diagrams. 2s. 6d.
- LUCAS. Historical Geography of the British Colonies. By  
C. P. LUCAS, B.A., C.B. Crown 8vo.  
Introduction. With Eight Maps. 1887. 4s. 6d.
- Vol. I. The Mediterranean and Eastern Colonies (exclusive of India). With  
Eleven Maps. 1888. 5s.
- Vol. II. The West Indian Colonies. With Twelve Maps. 1890. 7s. 6d.
- Vol. III. West Africa. Second Edition, Revised to the end of 1899 by H. B.  
EGERTON. With Five Maps. 7s. 6d.
- Vol. IV. South and East Africa. Historical and Geographical. With Eleven  
Maps. 1898. 9s. 6d.
- Part I. Historical. 6s. 6d. Part II. Geographical. 3s. 6d.
- Also Vol. IV, Part I, Separate Issue, with numerous Maps. 5s.  
The History of South Africa to the Jameson Raid.
- Vol. V. Canada. Part I (New France). With Maps. 6s.

## MATHEMATICS &amp; PHYSICAL SCIENCE.

- ALDIS. A Text Book of Algebra (with Answers to the  
Examples). By W. STEADMAN ALDIS, M.A. Crown 8vo, 7s. 6d.
- EMTAGE. An Introduction to the Mathematical Theory of  
Electricity and Magnetism. By W. T. A. EMTAGE, M.A. 2nd Ed. Cr. 8vo, 7s. 6d.
- FINN. The 'Junior' Euclid. By S. W. FINN, M.A. Crown 8vo.  
Books I and II, 1s. 6d. Books III and IV, 2s.
- FISHER. Class-Book of Chemistry. By W. W. FISHER, M.A.,  
F.C.S. Fourth Edition. Crown 8vo, 4s. 6d.
- FOCK. An Introduction to Chemical Crystallography. By  
ANDREAS FOCK, Ph.D. Translated and Edited by W. J. POPE. Crown 8vo, 5s.
- HAMILTON and BALL. Book-keeping. By Sir R. G. C.  
HAMILTON, K.C.B., and JOHN BALL. New and Enlarged Edition. 2s.
- Ruled Exercise Books, 1s. 6d.
- — (Preliminary Course only), 4d.
- HARCOURT and MADAN. Exercises in Practical Chemistry.  
By A. G. VERNON HARCOURT, M.A., and H. G. MADAN, M.A. Fifth Edition.  
Revised by H. G. MADAN, M.A. Crown 8vo, 10s. 6d.

**HARGREAVES.** Arithmetic. By R. HARGREAVES, M.A.  
Crown 8vo, 4s. 6d.

**HENSLEY, L.** Figures made Easy: a first Arithmetic Book.  
Crown 8vo, 6d. Answers, 1s.

— The Scholar's Arithmetic. Cr. 8vo, 2s. 6d. Answers, 1s. 6d.

— The Scholar's Algebra. An Introductory work on  
Algebra. Crown 8vo, 2s. 6d.

**JOHNSTON.** An Elementary Treatise on Analytical Geometry.  
By W. J. JOHNSTON, M.A. Crown 8vo, 6s.

**MINCHIN.** Geometry for Beginners. An easy Introduction  
to Geometry for Young Learners. By G. M. MINCHIN, M.A., F.R.S. 1s. 6d.

**NIXON.** Euclid Revised. Containing the essentials of the  
Elements of Plane Geometry as given by Euclid in his First Six Books. By  
R. C. J. NIXON, M.A. Third Edition. Crown 8vo, 6s.

Book I, 1s. Books I, II, 1s. 6d. Books I-IV, 3s. Books V, VI, 3s. 6d.

— Geometrical Exercises from Nixon's 'Euclid Revised,'  
with Solutions by A. LARMOR, M.A. Crown 8vo, 3s. 6d.

— Geometry in Space. Containing parts of Euclid's Eleventh  
and Twelfth Books. By the Same. Crown 8vo, 3s. 6d.

— Elementary Plane Trigonometry; that is, Plane Trigonometry  
without Imaginaries. By the Same. Crown 8vo, 7s. 6d.

**RUSSELL.** An Elementary Treatise on Pure Geometry. By  
J. WELLESLEY RUSSELL, M.A. Crown 8vo, 10s. 6d.

**SELBY.** Elementary Mechanics of Solids and Fluids. By  
A. L. SELBY, M.A. Crown 8vo, 7s. 6d.

**WILLIAMSON.** Chemistry for Students. By A. W. WILLIAMSON, M.A., Phil. Doc., F.R.S. 8s. 6d.

**WOOLLCOMBE.** Practical Work in General Physics. By  
W. G. WOOLLCOMBE, M.A., B.Sc. Crown 8vo, 2s. each part.

Part I. General Physics. } Second Edition Revised.  
Part II. Heat.  
Part III. Light and Sound.  
Part IV. Magnetism and Electricity.

## MISCELLANEOUS.

**BALFOUR.** The Educational Systems of Great Britain and  
Ireland. By GRAHAM BALFOUR, M.A. Crown 8vo, 7s. 6d.

**BUCKMASTER.** Elementary Architecture for Schools, Art  
Students, and General Readers. By MARTIN A. BUCKMASTER. With thirty-  
eight full-page Illustrations. Crown 8vo, 4s. 6d.

**COOKSON.** Essays on Secondary Education. By Various  
Contributors. Edited by CHRISTOPHER COOKSON, M.A. Crown 8vo, paper  
boards, 4s. 6d.

**FARMER.** Hymns and Chorales for Schools and Colleges.  
Edited by JOHN FARMER, late Organist of Balliol College, Oxford. 5s.

Hymns without the Tunes, 2s.



**FOWLER.** The Elements of Deductive and Inductive Logic.  
By T. FOWLER, D.D. 7s. 6d.

The Elements of Deductive Logic, designed mainly for the use of Junior Students in the Universities. With a Collection of Examples. 3s. 6d.

The Elements of Inductive Logic, designed mainly for the use of Students in the Universities. Sixth Edition. 6s.

**HULLAH, J.** The Cultivation of the Speaking Voice. 2s. 6d.

**SOMERVELL.** A Chart of the Rules of Harmony. By A. SOMERVELL. Crown 4to on a card. 1s. net.

**TROUTBECK and DALE.** A Music Primer for Schools. By J. TROUTBECK, D.D., and R. F. DALE, M.A., B.Mus. Crown 8vo, 1s. 6d.

**UPCOTT.** An Introduction to Greek Sculpture. By L. E. UPCOTT, M.A. Second Edition. Crown 8vo, 4s. 6d.

**HELPS TO THE STUDY OF THE BIBLE**, taken from the Oxford Bible for Teachers. New, Enlarged and Illustrated Edition. Pearl 16mo, stiff covers, 1s. net. Large Paper Edition, Long Primer 8vo, cloth boards, 5s.

**HELPS TO THE STUDY OF THE BOOK OF COMMON PRAYER.** Being a Companion to Church Worship. By W. R. W. STEPHENS, B.D., Dean of Winchester. Crown 8vo, 2s. 6d. net.

**THE PARALLEL PSALTER**, being the Prayer-Book Version of the Psalms, and a new Version arranged on opposite pages. With an Introduction and Glossaries by the Rev. S. R. DRIVER, D.D., Litt.D. 6s.

**OLD TESTAMENT HISTORY FOR SCHOOLS.** By T. H. STOKOE, D.D. 2s. 6d. each Part.

Part I. From the Creation to the Settlement in Palestine. Second Edition.

Part II. From the Settlement to the Disruption of the Kingdom.

Part III. From the Disruption to the Return from Captivity. (Completion.)

**MANUAL OF THE FOUR GOSPELS.** By T. H. STOKOE, D.D. Crown 8vo.

Part I. The Gospel Narrative. 2s. Part II. The Gospel Teaching. 2s. Or, combined, 3s. 6d.

**LIFE AND LETTERS OF ST. PAUL.** By T. H. STOKOE, D.D. Crown 8vo. Part I. The Life. 2s. Part II. The Letters. 2s. Or, combined, 3s. 6d.

**GRADUATED LESSONS ON THE OLD TESTAMENT.** By U. Z. RULE. Edited by L. J. M. BEBB, M.A. In three Volumes. Extra fcap. 8vo, with Maps. Each 1s. 6d. paper boards. 1s. 9d. in cloth.

**NOTES ON THE GOSPEL OF ST. LUKE, FOR JUNIOR CLASSES.** By Miss E. J. MOORE SMITH. Stiff covers, 1s. 6d.

OXFORD  
AT THE CLARENDON PRESS  
LONDON, EDINBURGH, AND NEW YORK  
HENRY FROWDE



1. The first part of the paper is devoted to the study of the

2. The second part of the paper is devoted to the study of the

3. The third part of the paper is devoted to the study of the

4. The fourth part of the paper is devoted to the study of the

5. The fifth part of the paper is devoted to the study of the

6. The sixth part of the paper is devoted to the study of the

7. The seventh part of the paper is devoted to the study of the



3 2044 019 10

THE BORROWER WILL BE CHARGED  
AN OVERDUE FEE IF THIS BOOK IS NOT  
RETURNED TO THE LIBRARY ON OR  
BEFORE THE LAST DATE STAMPED  
BELOW. NON-RECEIPT OF OVERDUE  
NOTICES DOES NOT EXEMPT THE  
BORROWER FROM OVERDUE FEES.

